

THE CONGO



BY
HENRY M. STANLEY



22101436790



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2017 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b29352459_0002

For my dear friend

Henry J. Will come.
from.

~~Henry J. Will come.~~

With best regards.

Dec 14th 1886.



H. M. STANLEY.

(From a Photograph by J. Thomson, 10a, Grosvenor Street, London, W.)

THE CONGO
AND THE
FOUNDING OF ITS FREE STATE
A STORY OF
WORK AND EXPLORATION

BY
HENRY M. STANLEY

WITH OVER ONE HUNDRED FULL-PAGE AND SMALLER ILLUSTRATIONS,
TWO LARGE MAPS, AND SEVERAL SMALLER ONES

IN TWO VOLUMES

VOL. II.

NEW YORK
HARPER & BROTHERS, FRANKLIN SQUARE

1885



O. T. H. G.
372

Copyright, 1885, by HARPER & BROTHERS.

All rights reserved.

CONTENTS.

(Vol. II.)

CHAPTER XXVI.

TO THE BLACK RIVER.

	PAGE
Bolobo trade—Wealth of the chiefs—Manguru the Rothsechild of Bolobo—Scenery of the Upper Congo— <i>Ennui</i> on the voyage—Comparison with travelling on other great rivers—Unvarying food—We lose our way—"Ho, Wy-yanzi, tribesmen of Lukolela!"—A poor reception—An improvised market—Tricked by the natives—Buying a crocodile—Cordial reception at Usindi—Irebu the home of the champion traders—Mangombo the chief—Excellent knowledge of trade—The war in Irebu—I am asked to negotiate for peace—Cause of the war—Difference between Stanley and Bula Matari—Medicine to make wealth grow—Cooking the big pot—Troublesome exploration—A threatening dance—"The river is free, but touch not the land"—The Batuki—A new station founded	1

CHAPTER XXVII.

FROM THE BLACK RIVER TO STANLEY POOL AND BACK TO EQUATOR STATION.

An embarrassing farewell—Chili pepper and tears—Success of a hypocritical stratagem—Sounds of war—Peace-making—Burying the war—The Lukanga river—Mantumba Lake—The Watwa dwarfs—Rescue of a shipwrecked crew—The Abbé Guyot—The lion and his prey—Léopoldville flourishing—Troubles at Bwabwa Njali's—A homicidal officer—Lieutenant Janssen and the Abbé Guyot drowned—Troubles at Kimpoko—Troubles at Bolobo—The station burnt—We are fired upon—War—A Krupp gun sent for—Weak effects of musketry—Peace restored—Settling the indemnity—Displaying the power of the Krupp—"I and my people will depart from Bolobo for ever!"—The river of Bunga—Lukolela—A magnificent forest—The superstition of Iuka—Excellent condition of Equator Station—My ideal achieved	39
---	----

CHAPTER XXVIII.

TO THE ARUWIMI OR BIYERRÉ.

	PAGE
Equipping for a long voyage—The Lulungu river—Bolombo— Bangala the terrible—Stirring memories—Boleko the chief— “Stop, thief!”—Mata Bwyki—A modern Hercules—“Is this Tandelay?”—Uncomfortable moments—The appeal of Yumbila —“Bula Matari and Mata Bwyki are one to-day!”—Luxuriant tropical scenes—Immense forest wealth—Unsheltered in a storm —Deserted districts—Ngauza—Old Rubunga—Langa-Langa women—The currency changing—Ndobo—Oyster-shells a sign of former population—Bumba and the chief Myombi—The dreaded Ibanza—A trick with a tiger’s skin—Yaminga—Itim- biri river—Yalulima armōurers—Hostile natives—War canoes on the look-out—The Aruwimi—Mokulu—An effective salutation— “Bravo, Yumbila!”	75

CHAPTER XXIX.

UP THE BIYERRÉ.

Yumbila returns with an interesting story—Slave kidnappers, pro- bably from the Soudan—Skilful workmanship—Umach and Yakui—Conical huts—The course of the river—Metropolitan Yambumba—A sham famine—The rapids—Supposed identity of the Biyerré and Wellé—Reasons for this opinion—Arabs in the neighbourhood—Again on the Congo	119
---	-----

CHAPTER XXX.

TO STANLEY FALLS.

Predatory Bahunga—An odd means for defence—Deserted villages— Enormous flotilla of canoes—Danger ahead—Ravages by the Arabs—“Cruel man has done his worst”—Remains of burnt villages—A shocking discovery—We overtake the Arab slave- traders—Meditations on retribution—Extent of territory ravaged by the Arabs—Their miserable captives—A harrowing scene— Captives all women and children; their number—The cause of the trade—Yangambi—The Chofu river—The Wenya fishermen —Cunning policy of the Arabs—Stanley Falls—Description of the cataracts—The district tribes—Their mode of fishing—A dangerous ferry—Drum signals—An industrious people—The fish of the waters—Palavers—Our farthest station founded— Binnie is appointed chief and left in charge—Homeward bound	134
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXI.

DOWN THE CONGO TO STANLEY POOL.

	PAGE
Going with the stream—The Arabs send their confidential men with us—Navigability of the Lumami and Lubilash—Wreck of the <i>Royal</i> —Beaching and repairing the wreck—Cold winds on the river—Iboko in confusion—Impudent thieving—A prisoner—"Fast bind, fast find"—A horrified father—Refusal of a ransom—Cordiality at Ukumira—Mata Bwyki in a passion—More prisoners—Restitution of our stolen property—Freeing the prisoners—A horrible massacre—Young Glave of Yorkshire—Bolobo station again burnt—News from the missionaries—Again at Léopoldville—Troublesome news from Vivi	168

CHAPTER XXXII.

RETURN TO VIVI.

Starting of our caravan—A promising farewell—Ngalyema's last words—Encouraging resolutions of the officers—Hospitality of the natives as we pass—Nselo ferry—Quarrel between Ngombi and Mbimbi—Peace-making—Forms of our treaties with native chiefs—List of districts and their chiefs—The eut-throat Lutété is changed for the better—An extending and dangerous <i>crevasse</i> —Lava at Kalulu Falls: "Whenee has it come?"—Manyanga "higgledy-piggledy"—Hospitality at the mission-house of Mr. and Mrs. Ingham—A pretty station—Luima and Lunionzo valleys—Climate and health—Congo la Lemba—View of Vivi—Unhappy reflections upon its neglect	189
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXIII.

TO OSTEND.

Climate and conduct—Vivi in confusion—A cure for sham illness—Removal of the station—Description of the changes at Vivi—General Gordon's probable work—I embark on the <i>Kinsembo</i> —Loango—Sette Camma—Coast trade—Gaboos Gulf—Fernando Po—The Cameroons—Duke Town—Exploring a great "oil" river—Native chiefs buying iron houses—Bonny—Lagos—Quetta—Sierra Leone—My arrival in London—Report to H.M. the King of the Belgians	220
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXIV.

EUROPEANS IN AFRICA.

European opinion of African life—Repelled by the absence of comforts—"Amour propre" and "susceptibilities"—Few heroes of labour—Extravagant hopes—"Bah! I did not come for work"—Types
--

	PAGE
of neglected and prosperous stations—Malingering—Unintelligent workers—“Nothing like whisky!”—“Sojering”—A happier thème—The earnest workers of the Expedition—New aspirants—Young officers in search of adventures—A sad accident—Our physician—A plucky Scot—The way to gain a good reputation	238

CHAPTER XXXV.

CLIMATE—PART I.

Value of reliable knowledge—A youth's welcome to the tropics, and its results—Wet flannels and fever—Intemperance—Carelessness in Europe—Inquiry into the causes of sickness at the stations on the Congo—The cases of some of our invalids—The best positions to build upon—Captain Burton's advice, “Beef and beer”—European opinion of Africa compared to African opinion of Europe—Banza Manteka: a missionary station—Dangers of low-lying localities—A fatal “pare”—“Observe the native custom”—Sickness not all due to miasma—Number of deaths in our Expedition—Instances of how the deaths occurred—Urgent advice to those who wish to thrive in the tropics ..	280
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXVI.

CLIMATE.—PART II.

Dr. von Danckelman's observations—Definition of heat—Cold—Exposure—Advantage of awnings—Equable temperature of the body—Temperature in South America—Inequality of the Congo climate—Long marches and gulps of cold water—A cool place—“He is only joking”—“The White Man's Grave”—Advice to doctors—Food and drink—Daily life—Medicine—Diseases—Meteorological Tables	312
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE KERNEL OF THE ARGUMENT.

Extent of the Congo River—Navigable stretches—The maritime region—The mountain region—Elevations, vegetation, and productions—Population—Interior basin of the Upper Congo: its extent and altitudes—Navigability of the tributaries—Tables of mileage of navigable waters—Area drained by the rivers—Tables of population of Upper Congo section—Opinions of Dr. Pogge and Lieut. Weissman, Tippu Tib, and Dr. Schweinfurth—The products of the land—Vegetable and animal richness—Minerals—Extent of the Webb-Lualaba section—Navigability of the

	PAGE
Webb-Lualaba—Characteristics of the Lualaba country—Livingstone's descriptions—The Tanganika territory—Ujiji markets—Table of the actual knowledge of the Congo basin: its area and population—Possibilities of trade—Table of the value of African produce in Liverpool—Prospects of factories—Advantages of a railway—Efforts to civilise Equatorial Africa—Comparison with other countries—Its future development and greatness	339

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE BERLIN CONFERENCE.

Strengthening the fabric—Precedents—Treaties with chiefs: their validity—The Anglo-Portuguese Treaty—United States action—Prince Bismarck's views—Position of Great Britain—German and French interests—Freedom of commerce—Berlin Conference—List of Plenipotentiaries—Deliberations and decisions at the Conference—Acquisitions of France and Portugal—Free Trade—A safe jurisdiction—The Royal Founder	378
--	-----

APPENDIX.



	PAGE
The Commercial Basin of the Congo, as described by the Author before the Berlin Conference	409
Protocol, No. 9	415
Declarations exchanged between the United States of America and the International Association of the Congo	419
Convention between the Empire of Germany and the International Association of the Congo	421
Declarations exchanged between the Government of Her Britannic Majesty and the International Association of the Congo	422
Convention between the Government of Her Britannic Majesty and the International Association of the Congo	423
Convention between the Netherlands and the International Associa- tion of the Congo	426
Convention between the Government of the French Republic and the International Association of the Congo	429
Convention between Portugal and the International Association of the Congo	431
Declarations exchanged between the Belgian Government and the International Association of the Congo	433
Protocol, No. 10	434
The General Act of the Berlin Conference	440

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

(Vol. II.)

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS.

NO.		PAGE
1.	H. M. Stanley. (<i>From a photograph</i>)	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
2.	An Interview before the Chief's House at Wangata	<i>To face</i> 38
3.	A Terrible Disaster	55
4.	Equator Station	71
5.	The Banks of the Upper Congo	95
6.	"Finally the 'Ibanza' emerged into view"	106
7.	View of Bondch	126
8.	Scene from the Covelet near our Station at Stanley Falls. The Seventh Cataract in the distance	157
9.	Still Haven, Stanley Falls	163
10.	A Street Scene in Iboko	173
11.	Execution of Slaves by the Bakuti near Equator Station	182
12.	Kinshassa Station (Stanley Pool)	185
13.	View of Léopoldville Station and Port, 1884. The Baptist Mission on the summit of Léopold Hill. (<i>From a photograph</i>)	186
14.	View down the Congo, a few miles above the confluence of the Lubamba with the Congo	192
15.	View down the river from nearly opposite Isangila	215
16.	A few of the Women and Children of our Coloured Employés	222
17.	Sanatorium at Bonny	234
18.	Mr. A. B. Swinburne, Chief of Kinshassa Station	257
19.	The Sectional Steamer <i>Le Stanley</i> leaving Vivi Beach	264
20.	Plan of Profile of the Country between the Sea and Ruanda across the Congo Basin	362

SMALLER ILLUSTRATIONS.

21.	A Specimen of the By-yanzi. (<i>By Mr. GLAVE.</i>)	3
22.	A very poor Native of Inganda and his Dress	31
23.	A Native issuing to the War	37
24.	View from the head of Bamu Island down the South branch at Stanley Pool	53
25.	A Native of Iboko	70

NO.	PAGE
26. Plan of the Bangala Settlements	81
27. One of the Bangala	83
28. Native of Langa-Langa	101
29. Old Chief in native-made Hat	108
30. A Type of the Basoko	123
31. View of Mpozo Station and River from Vivi	218
32. Mons. del Commune	225
33. <i>La Ville d'Auvers</i> steamer	226
34. Captain Haissens	228
35. Landana	229
36. From Ambriz to the Cameroons	230
37. Old Calabar Factories, near Duke Town	232
38. From the Niger to Ostend	235
39. Lieutenant Valcke	263
40. Lieutenant Vangelé	265
41. Lieutenant Coquilhat	267
42. Lieutenant Janssen	268
43. Lieutenant Parfoury	269
44. Lieutenant Grang	270
45. Dr. Allard	271
46. Lieutenant Liebrechts	278
47. The funnel-shaped Gorge of the Lower Congo	292
48. Plan to illustrate how the Gorge discharges its winds at Léopoldville	293
49. Political Divisions of the Congo Basin	365

 MAP.

A Map of the Congo Basin (second half) *In Pocket*

THE CONGO,

AND

THE FOUNDING OF ITS FREE STATE.

CHAPTER XXVI.

TO THE BLACK RIVER.

Bolobo trade—Wealth of the chiefs—Manguru the Rothschild of Bolobo—Scenery of the Upper Congo—*Ennui* on the voyage—Comparison with travelling on other great rivers—Unvarying food—We lose our way—"Ho, Wy-yanzi, tribesmen of Lukolela!"—A poor reception—An improvised market—Tricked by the natives—Buying a crocodile—Cordial reception at Usindi—Irebu the home of the champion traders—Mangombo the chief—Excellent knowledge of trade—The war in Irebu—I am asked to negotiate for peace—Cause of the war—Difference between Stanley and Bula Matari—Medicine to make wealth grow—Cooking the big pot—Troublesome exploration—A threatening dance—"The river is free, but touch not the land"—The Batuki—A new station founded.

THE By-yanzi have a tradition according to Ibaka that they came originally from Ubangi, a district situate south of and near the equator on the right bank. From the number of canoes that I have met hailing from Ubangi, this must be a populous district. Ibaka, who was once there on a trade expedition, believes it to be an island, as, according to him, "on one side is all white water, on the other side it is all black;" or it may mean that Ubangi is more likely to

1883.
May 24.
Bolobo.

1883.
May 24.
Bolobo.

be situated in a fork at a confluence of two rivers—the Congo and a white water affluent. He was much confused, he said, by the quantity of water and islands there—"there was no end to the water."

Two hours' journey inland from Bolobo there is a large market-place called Mpumbu, where dogs, crocodiles, hippopotamus meat, snails, iguanas, fish and red-wood powder are sold in great quantities. Little, however, that is of utility to Europeans and people of more refined tastes is sold at this particular place.

Bolobo is a great centre for the ivory and camwood powder trade, principally because its people are so enterprising. The native traders have agents residing at Stanley Pool, to whom the ivory collected here is delivered, and the merchandise from the coast lying in store is consigned to the wealthy traders at Bolobo.

One must not be hasty in judging from the poverty of their garb that the chiefs of this trading district are poor. They are frugally inclined, having a certain standard of wealth which they must endeavour to achieve before they bear on their persons in every day life the habit befitting their station and prosperity. Thus Mangi, residing at Kintamo, is the junior chief of Itimba, Bolobo. He visits Léopoldville daily, dressed in a cotton robe of dark blue baft, but he is lord of three villages, and may probably be worth £3000. Lugumbila, vizier to Ibaka and his oldest slave, is probably worth an equal amount. But Manguru, of Bolobo, is a nabob; if his worldly belongings were sold at auction in Bolobo, it is very possible his effects

would realise double this sum. His canoes and slaves exploit every creek and affluent as far as Irebu and Ubangi; at Kimbangu, on the south bank of Stanley Pool, and at Malima, on the north bank, he has a faithful factor; while at Bolobo he keeps a hundred armed slaves. Yet Manguru, now well advanced in years, paddles his own canoe along the river front of the district, trading from one place to another daily. It is this Rothschild of Bolobo who induced Gatula to

1883.
May 24.
Bolobo.



A SPECIMEN OF THE BY-YANZI
(By MR. GLAVE.)

choose between two evils—war, or forfeit of money, and by his arguments convinced him that to lose money was a less evil than the loss of his life and property.

On the 28th of May the flotilla set out from Bolobo for the establishment of two stations on the Upper Congo. The expedition was accompanied by three guides—Msenné, from Mswata, and two slaves belonging to Ibaka, who knew well the countries of Uyanzi and Ubangi.

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

The upper portion of Bolobo presents many excellent sites for stations, with commanding views, but unfortunately they are at present beyond our means. To be able to build healthy dwelling houses on these sites one must be well assured that the natives will open their markets to us. If a garrison of 100 men could be stationed at Bolobo, then the place would become an emporium of trade. Until that time, however, we are forced to seek some village or villages, with the chiefs of which we can live in mutual dependence.

Beyond Bolobo we have a bluff-faced highland extending for about five miles in a north-easterly direction. In a cove at its upper extremity, where it leaves the river, there lives a tribe of Wa-nunu, who immediately on seeing the flotilla advancing, disported themselves along their sandy shore most ferociously, judging by their manoeuvres. But, poor souls, how much we were misjudged! Even had they kept up the fierce play till doomsday we would not have had aught of unfriendliness for them. Such love as we possessed for them was simply immeasurable.

The flotilla sheered off a little into deeper water, and passed on with silent and unoffending crews and passengers.

Beyond the village was low forested land, which either came in dense black towering masses of impenetrable vegetation to the waterside, or else ran in great semicircles half enclosing grassy flats, whereon the hippopotami fed at night time.

The Congo was now enormously wide; from five to

eight channels separated one from another by as many lines of islets (some of which were miles in length), on which the *Landolfia florida*, or rubber plant, flourished, of the value of which the natives as yet know nothing. Tamarinds, baobab, bombax, redwood, *Elais guineënsis*, palm-tree, wild date-palm, *Calamus indicus*, with the hardy stink-wood, made up a dense mass of trees and creepers of such formidable thickness that no one was even inspired to examine what treasures of plants might be revealed by a closer investigation of the vegetable life thriving on these humps of dark alluvium in Mid-Congo.

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

Few could imagine that a slow ascent up the Congo in steamers going only two and a half knots against the current of the great river could be otherwise than monotonous. Taken as a whole, the scenery of the Upper Congo is uninteresting; perhaps the very slow rate of ascent has left that impression. But we were also tired of the highland scenery in the Lower Congo. We declared ourselves tired of looking at naked rock cliffs, and rufous ragged slopes 600 feet in height. Before we were through the circular enlargement of the Congo at Stanley Pool we also confessed ourselves wearied; when we voyaged up along the base of the massive mountain lines above it to Chumbiri we sighed for a change; and now, when we have a month's journey by islets, low shores, of grassy levels, and banks of thick vegetation and forest, we are menaced with the same *ennui*. But let us be just. Our feeling of weariness arises from the fact that our accommodations are so

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

limited that we are obliged to sit down or stand up all the long way. The eyes, the only organs exercised, are easily sated. The weariness is only created by our compulsory inactivity. Our eyes are feasting continually upon petty details, of the nature of which we are scarcely conscious. The flitting of a tiny sun-bird, the chirping weavers at their nests; the despondent droop of a long *calamus* which cannot find support, and which, like the woodbine, flourishes best when it has a tall stem to cling to; the bamboo-like reeds; the swaying-tufted head of an overgrown papyrus; the floating by of a *Pistia stratiotes*; a flock of screeching parrots hurrying by overhead; that great yawning hippopotamus lazily preparing for a plunge into his watery bed; that log-like form of the crocodile, roused from his meditations, loth to go, but compelled by the whirr of paddle-wheels to submerge himself; those springing monkeys, skurrying in their leafy homes away from the increasing noise; that white-collared fish eagle out-spreading his wings for flight; that darting diver and little kingfisher hurrying ahead, heralding our approach; yonder flock of black ibis alarmingly screaming their harsh cries; that little blue-throated fantail which has just hopped away from the yellow-blossomed acacia bush; those little industrious wagtails pecking away so briskly on the sandy strip by the edge of the forest; there is a jay which has just fled into the woods; look at those long-legged flamingoes at that spit of land; and—but the details are endless, for every minute of time has its incident. As for your own

fancies, during this day trance, created mainly by what you see as the banks glide steadily past, who will dare to fathom them? They come in rapid succession on the mind, in various shapes, rank after rank. Unsteadfast as the grey clouds which you see to the westward, they pile into cities, and towns, and mountains, growing ever larger, more intense, but still ever wavering and undergoing quick transitions of form. The flowing river, the vast dome of sky; the aspiring clouds on the horizon; the purpling blue, as well as the dark spectral isles of the stream; the sepulchral gloom beneath the impervious forest foliage; those swaying reeds; that expanse of sere-coloured grassy plain; that grey clay bank, speckled with the red roots of some shrub; that narrow pathway through the forest—all suggest some new thought, some fancy which cannot be long pursued, since it is constantly supplanted by other ideas suggested by something new, which itself is but a momentary flash.

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

But supposing that a steamer similar to those we have on the Mississippi bore you up the Congo, rushing up stream at the rate of twelve knots an hour against the current, while you could travel up and down a long, broad deck protected by a sun-proof awning, with luxurious board and lodging at your command, your view of the Congo would be very different. I do believe you would express a preference for it to any river known to you. You would naturally think of comparisons. The Rhine? Why the Rhine, even

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

including its most picturesque parts, is only a microscopic miniature of the Lower Congo; but we must have the Rhine steamer, and its wine and food and accommodations to be able to see it properly. The Mississippi? The Congo is one and a half times larger than the Mississippi, and certainly from eight to ten times broader. You may take your choice of nearly a dozen channels, and you will see more beautiful vegetation on the Congo than on the American river. The latter lacks the palm and the calamus, while the former has a dozen varieties of the palm. Besides, it possesses herds of hippopotami, crocodiles innumerable; monkeys are gleefully romping on the islands and the main; elephants are standing sentry-like in the twilight of the dark forests by the river side; buffaloes red and black are grazing on the rich grass plains; there are flocks of ibis, black and white parrots, parroquets, and guinea-fowl. The Mississippi is a decent greyish-coloured stream, confined between two low banks, with here and there a town of frame houses and brick. The Congo is of a tea-colour on its left half, and on its right half it is nearly chalky white. You take your choice, tea or milk, red or Rhine wine. And as for the towns, why, I hope the all-gracious Providence will bless our labour, and they will come by-and-by; meantime there is room enough, and to spare, to stow the half of Europe comfortably on its spacious borders. The Nile? Ask any of those gallant English soldiers who have tugged their way among the Nile cataracts, what they think of the Nile to spend a holiday upon. The Danube?

Ah, it is not to be mentioned with the Congo for scenery! The Volga? Still worse. The Amazon? By no means. You will have to ascend very far up the Amazon before you will see anything approaching Congo scenery.

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

Well, you must admit then that if the Congo could be seen from the deck of a commodious steamer, this feeling of weariness which we have to contend against now while ascending at this snail's pace against the current, because we have no room to move about, would be replaced by a more grateful and a cheerier mood.

At 5 P.M. we generally camp after an advance of from twenty to thirty miles up river. Thirty miles would be unusually good progress, because there is fuel to be cut with axes and saws, and it will take till nine o'clock at night to cut sufficient for next day's steaming. From 5 to 6.30 P.M. all hands excepting the cooks are engaged in gathering wood, half-dead logs, or dead trees, which have to be cut into portable sizes for transport to the camp. When darkness falls a great fire is lit, under the light of which the wood-choppers fall to and cut the logs into foot lengths for the boilers. The sound of smiting axes rings through the dark grove, to be re-echoed by the opposite forest, and borne along the face of the river to a great distance. It is varied by the woodman's chant; a chorus is struck up, and under its stirring vocal notes a new impetus is given, and the axes are struck stirringly rapid. What a moral lesson for vapid-minded white

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

men might be drawn from these efforts of untutored blacks to get through their tasks !

Meantime, at dusk, each steamer's crew of white officers and passengers will be found around their dinner-tables on deck or on the bank, if the camp has permitted it ; the lamplight tinging their faces with a rosier hue than the sallow complexion which the sun has bestowed on them.

Of food there is abundance, but not much variety. It may comprise soup of beans or vegetables, followed by toasted chikwanga (cassava-bread), fried or stewed fowl, a roast fowl, or a roast leg of goat meat, a dish of desiccated potatoes, and, if we have been fortunate in our purchases, some sweet potatoes, or yams, roast bananas, boiled beans, rice and curry, or rices with honey, or rice and milk, finishing with tea or coffee, or palm-wine.

It is insipid food for breakfast and dinner throughout a term of three years. A few months of this diet makes the European sigh for his *petit verre*, Astrachan caviar, mock-turtle, salmon—with sauce Hollandaise — *filet de bœuf*, with perhaps a *pastete* and *poularde mit compôte und salat*. For if a German, however can he live without his dear *compôte* ? Then, how nice, he thinks, would fruit, cheese, and dessert be on the Congo. How glorious a view of Congo life one could take when exhilarated by half a pint of champagne.

I think, indeed, that the eternal “fowl” of the Congo, and the unvarying slices of chikwanga, with which our young officers are fed, deserves three-fourths of

the blame now lavished on "murderous Africa." It is only a grand moral manhood like Livingstone's that rises above these petty vanities of a continental stomach. Think of his thirty-two years' life in Africa, and of the unsophisticated mannikins who to-day are digging their eyes out with weeping at the memories of a European restaurant before they have been scarcely three months out!

1883.
May 28.
Bolobo.

There is not much to converse about on the Congo after our stomachs are full of the heavy chikwanga, and as we all know that—

"The time of life is short;
To spend that little basely were too long."

We retire early to spend it well in sleeping, that we may be better fitted for the next day's weary voyaging up the great African river.

Ungende was our first night's camp above Bolobo. The By-yanzi were very friendly at first, but at sunset their fears made them hostile, and they were not quieted until all our people were ordered to make their reedy couches near the steamers.

The next day we travelled up by very pleasant hills. We passed villages, banana-groves, palmy groups, and deep green forest in agreeable alternations. These are the Levy Hills, and end at the magnificent and airy red bluffs of Iyumbi. The people looked out upon us in stupid wonder from under the shade of their bananas, seemingly saying, "What curious phase of existence have we entered upon now? Verily, an epoch has

1883.
May 29.
Ugenda.

dawned upon our lives; but what it signifies let those answer who can!"

And we, looking out from under our awnings, appear to say, "Ay, gaze, oh men and women, upon these three symbols of civilisation. Ye see things to-day which the oldest and wisest inhabitant of your land never heard or dreamed of, and yet they are but tiny types of self-moving leviathans that plough the raging sea by night as well as by day!"

Two hours above Iyumbi we lost our way. The channels were numerous. A reedy flat had appeared above Iyumbi, to which we clung in order not to lose sight of the mainland; and coming to a narrow creek we ran in, expecting, although its direction was a little too easterly, that perhaps we should emerge on the Congo. There was a sluggish current in it, and we kept on, but after seventeen miles it narrowed, and reeds finally stopped further passage, and we had to return, opposite the village of Ikulu.

We had not perceived many villages as we had steamed along; but in coming back we sighted about twenty canoes in the creek advancing towards us. They had appeared from some direction through the reeds. These, on seeing us, hastily turned back, but wishing to know from them which route to take, the *En Avant* cast off the whale-boat which she had been towing, and steamed after them at full speed.

Not until we had run five miles could we overtake the flying flotilla, and then we found that their crews were women, who to escape us, dashed into the reeds,

and splashed clumsily with water up to their necks to reach the shore. Not a word would they answer; but stood, on reaching the shore, sulkily regarding us. As we steamed six knots an hour, an idea may be gained of the speed which the natives when pressed in their canoes attain. These also were mere fishing pirogues. Had they been war canoes it is likely our steamer would have been beaten in the race.

1883.
May 30.
Ikulu.

On the 31st of May we had a tolerably fair journey, but the wind blew down river, and impeded us. Two trading canoes with twenty paddlers in each were overtaken, which kept pace with us the rest of the day, and camped sociably with us on a park-like terrace, which showed soft young grass, while the forest ran in a deep black semicircle behind us. The By-yanzi canoe-men were bound for Ubangi.

On the 1st of June, after following a dense forest for nine hours, we drew near another settlement. Our provisions were running exceedingly low. Eighty coloured men and seven Europeans consume at least 250 lbs. weight of food daily. Since leaving Bolobo, nearly half a ton weight of provisions had been eaten. It behoved us then to prepare ourselves for barter with the community in view, which our guides called Lukolela.

The settlement ran along a crescented bend of the river, above a steep clay bank ranging from 5 feet to 25 feet above the water, in a clearing cut out of the finest forest I had yet seen. The trees had not been much thinned, so that from a distance, but for the

1883.
June 1.
Lukolela.

grey gleam of huts and the green sheen of bananas, it would have been difficult to tell that a settlement so large as Lukolela existed here. The islands also showed glorious growths of timber. We began steaming slowly the while to initiate acquaintance at the very lowest village. There was no answer rendered, but the groups of bronze-bodied people grew larger and more numerous. We unrolled crimson savelist, bright red royal handkerchiefs, striped florentines, lengths of blue baft, held out fistfuls of brass rods, and suspended long necklaces of brightest beads. Msenné of Mswata stood up on the cabin-deck of the *En Avant*, the observed of all observers, admired for his pose and his action, and delivered his oration with a voice which might be envied by an auctioneer.

“Ho, Wy-yanzi, tribesmen of Lukolela, sons of Iuka and Mungawa, whose names are beloved by my lord and chief Gobila! Ho, you men! Know you not Gobila--Gobila of Mswata, the friend of Wy-yanzi?” said Gobila to me. “Here, take Bula Matari, the only Bula Matari, the good Bula Matari!”

“Hush, Msenné; that is not the way to speak. You are laughing at me,” I urged, for my modesty was shocked.

“Never mind; Msenné knows the way into the heart of the Wy-yanzi. Ha! it takes me to conquer their obduracy.”

“Wy-yanzi of Lukolela, here sits Bula Matari! He has come here to make friends with you. He wants food. He is prepared to pay well. Now is the time

for Iuka and Mungawa to show themselves kind friends to Bula Matari."

1883.
June 1.
Lukolela.

Then up and spoke Ibaka's slaver.

"See here, men of Lukolela, we are the servants of Ibaka—Ibaka of Bolobo! Ibaka has made brotherhood with Bula Matari. Ibaka commanded us to take him to you. Let your chiefs, Iuka and Mungawa, come out and give the good word."

The steamers held on their way. The stentorian accents of Msenné were heard far above the escape of waste steam. The cloths were unrolled before every village. At the third village, however, a reply came that all the chiefs were dead, and that small-pox had decimated the inhabitants, and that famine was killing the people that were left!

"Frightful," we exclaimed. "But those men on the banks look too fat to be suffering from famine."

We came to the upper extremity of the community, which occupied about five miles of the left bank, and half an hour later we came to where the Congo contracted and issued out a stately united flood $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles wide from the right bank to the left bank. Hoping that if we camped in the neighbourhood we should be followed, we prepared to put up for the night in the forest.

As we anticipated, the natives soon came up, and fowls, goats, ripe and green plantains and bananas, cassava rolls, cassava flour, sweet potatoes, yams, eggs, and palm oil were bartered so speedily that by sunset we had sufficient to last two or three days. Still, as we

1883.
June 2.
Lukolela.

were ignorant how far we might have to proceed before meeting with another market so well supplied as this, we agreed to resume the marketing next morning.

At sunrise the following day canoe after canoe appeared, and the barter was so successfully conducted that we had soon secured three dozen fowls, four goats, a sheep, and eight days' rations for each member of the coloured force. The fear the natives entertained of the strange steamer was now changed for liveliest admiration. We were no longer supposed to be laden with mischief, but full of "good things." They had informed us that they were dying of famine yesterday, but this day plenty had come back to them, their chiefs lived, and no plague or pest decimated the people !

We asked them slyly what was the cause of this remarkable change.

"Oh," they replied, "why do you remember what we said in our fear of you. Neither our old-st people nor their fathers before them ever saw or heard of such things as these," pointing to the steamers.

As it was a capital position for a station, we delicately hinted to them that on our return we should have some more words with them.

The people of Lukolela some twenty years ago lived on the right bank, but the Irebu warriors, during a little misunderstanding with them, descended the river and attacked and burnt their villages; upon which, after peace was restored, they crossed the Congo and established themselves on the left bank in the noble forest along the river.

1883.
June 2.
Lukolela.

Two hours steaming midday on the 2nd of June took us through the whole length of this narrow and singular contraction of the Congo. The left bank rises into a hill probably 100 feet above the river, nourishing magnificent timber; the right bank also shows that it is much higher than the ground above or below this strait-like contraction of the river channel, and is also remarkable for its fine trees. Still clinging to the left bank of the river, we entered a narrow channel between islets exuberant with flourishing forests, and low shores showing alternately prairie levels, and low, tree-clad ridges running perpendicularly to the river.

We passed three villages, which sent out scouts to us with fresh fish to sell, and to glean intelligence about the strange craft that made such unusual noises. They were too small and insignificant to induce us to delay our advance.

On the evening of this day as we were at camp in a deserted village two hours above the highest of these villages, fourteen dense divisions of small birds were seen flying from the direction of the right to the left bank, and a straggling army of large birds of the size of crows followed till the dusk deepened; they were too high to enable me to distinguish them.

On the evening of the next day, having selected a camp a few miles below Ngombé, two canoes approached us, calling out the name of "Stanley" with excellent pronunciation. They had picked up the name by some odd fashion, and would doubtless have hailed the first white with it in the same way. They only wished to sell

1883.
June 3.
Ngombé.

fish and young crocodiles. Our engineers, from pure fun, patronised them, and purchased one young crocodile, of whose character we came to know a great deal before he deserted us. The crocodilian character, from what we discovered of it, would make a fine one for a novel. The ungrateful little beast, lashed to a strong tree close to the river, despite our kindness to him, deserted our expedition during the night. Lukolela finds the hatching of crocodiles to be remunerative. When nests are discovered, they take the eggs and place them in sand in a locality little disturbed, and when the shell is broken and the young emerge, they are placed in a pond which is carefully covered with a net. They are here fed until they have attained a certain weight and size; and on market days they are taken out to be sold.

On the 4th of June we passed several populous districts, first Ngombé, which is situated at another contraction of the Congo similar to the one described at Lukolela. Below and above Ngombe the river is from four to six miles wide; but at the strait all the various channels of the Congo are united in one stream, which flows nearly two miles wide with a strong current. On the left bank is Ngombé, high and dry on a level about 40 feet above the river, with a wealth of banana-groves and other signs of abundance.

A few miles higher up than the Strait of Ngombé is the district of Nkuku, inhabited by a people that showed a strong inclination to trade. They followed us for such a distance, offering articles for sale without

success, until they showed us a couple of Muscovy ducks, which we bought with the value of 1s. 4d. each.

1883.
June 4.
Nkuku.

Two hours later we arrived opposite Butunu, at which the natives raised frantic cries expressive of delight. "Malamu! malamu!" ("Good! good!") was echoed from end to end.

One hour beyond Butunu we came to the populous district of Usindi, the inhabitants of which were outrageous in their clamours of applause. These were so irrepressible in their joy that a hearty response from our side was not deemed enough. About a hundred manned their canoes, followed us, bawled at us, and finally stormed at us in a friendly manner, until we halted. Eleven fellows immediately came aboard the *En Avant*, sprawled over everybody, shook hands with white and black, old and young, and when they saw the black boiler they seemed to look so earnestly at it that it might have been thought they would embrace it. More of these thoughtless, irrepressible rogues would have come aboard had we permitted it, but as we were already captured we yielded and steamed back again to the landing-place of Usindi, the hardy eleven looking as proud as though they had done a gallant deed worthy of the Victoria or the Iron cross.

On the shore a perfect burst of joyful welcoming met us. Such an extraordinary people! Nkuku smiled on us; Butunu hailed us as friends, but Usindi shot out to midstream to embrace us! This remarkable and sudden development of friendship

1883.
June 4.
Usindi.

among people 300 miles above Stanley Pool excited wonder for some hours, until they told us that many of their people had seen Léopoldville and Kintamo, and had seen our big house and wagons and boats in the port.

Our reception at Usindi was so warm and friendly that we passed a very agreeable time there until noon of the 5th. Iuka, the chief, would have given me half of his village had we asked for it—anything, did we but agree to stop and build with them. They were a most polite people, I observed, being all unanimous to abstain from giving the least offence or alarm, and keeping back every warlike weapon from coming into view. I may say this was the first spot out of civilisation that I saw any such polite delicacy. Confident in their own strength, I presume, they thought it was not necessary to have recourse to the barbarous art of terrorising.

Seventy minutes above Usindi we entered a deep channel 300 yards wide, between a reedy island, as we imagined it to be, and a still larger settlement, or cluster of towns, than the one we had just left. The shore along its entire length was lined with hundreds of bronze-bodied people, but not one voice was heard calling out to us. This we took to be an omen of distrust, and affected to pass on; but we had not proceeded more than a few miles up the channel before we were aware we were pursued. We halted and permitted the canoemen to approach. They bore to us, they said, an invitation to visit Mangombo, chief of Irebu.

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

Of course we knew it was the populous district of Irebu, the home of the champion traders on the Upper Congo, rivalled only in numbers and enterprise by Ubangi on the right bank. Irebu traders, descending in canoes, overwhelmed the aborigines of Lukolela, as the latter themselves had admitted. They had mastered populous Ngombé, awed Nkuku, Butunu and Usindi, and we had heard vague rumours that they had taught the fierce Bangala to treat their traders with respect. It was in fact a Venice of the Congo, seated in the pride of its great numbers between the dark waters of the Lukanga and the deep brown channels of the parent stream.

There were hundreds of people standing eagerly expectant of the arrival of the flotilla in the covelet of Upper Irebu, men, women and children, from the very old and grey-headed to the young naked copper-skinned gamin. Though so numerous, an instinctive hush governed the crowd into deep silence as the engines stopped and the boats glided to their berths along the shore. Not until the crew leaped over the gunwales with the anchors, and the chains ceased running through the brazen chocks, was the silence broken, and then a muffled murmur of applause was heard as each remarked to the other his admiration of the vessels.

Mangombo, with a curious long staff a fathom and a half in length, having a small spade of brass at one end, much resembling a baker's cake-spade, stood in front. He was a man probably sixty years old, but

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

active, and by no means aged-looking, and he waited to greet me. On going ashore my hand was grasped by Mangombo and about half-a-dozen of the principal men, and we sought the shade of a convenient tree by the waterside to talk.

I was very soon impressed by the intelligent appearance of the men grouped around me. They had an air of worldly knowledge and travel about them, very different from the stupid bewildering wonderment with which we were so familiar. For these people were really acquainted with many lands and tribes on the Upper Congo. From Stanley Pool to Upoto, a distance of 600 miles, they knew every landing-place on the river banks. All the ups and downs of savage life, all the profits and losses derived from barter, all the diplomatic arts used by tactful savages were as well known to them as the Roman alphabet is to us. They knew the varied lengths of the sina ("long" of cloth), the number of matako (brass rods) they were worth, whether of savelist, florentine, unbleached domestic, twill, stripe, ticking, blue and white baft; the value of beads per thousand strings, as compared with uncut pieces of sheeting, or kegs of gunpowder, or flint-lock muskets, short and long. They could tell, by poising on the arm, what profit on an ivory tusk purchased at Langa-Langa would be derived by sale at Stanley Pool!

No wonder that all this mercantile knowledge had left its traces on their faces; indeed it is the same as in your own cities of Europe. Know you not the military

1883.
June 6,
Irebu.

man among you, the lawyer or the merchant, the banker, the artist or the poet? It is the same in Africa, more especially on the Congo, where the people are so devoted to trade. There is a slight difference, however, in the features (or rather air diffused over them) of the resident trader and the trading navigator. The resident may be a sharp man at a bargain, but he is as likely as not to be boorish, rustic, or unsophisticated in manner. On the other hand, the Wy-yanzi traders of Usindi, Butunu, Ubangi, and Irebu are sedate and self-possessed in their deportment, while a certain frank business-like directness and open-minded simplicity may be observed in their mode of speech. At the same time they are barbarous enough not to be averse from fighting on occasion. They quite surprised me, after a careful and analytical perusal of their features, by declaring they were even then at war! Upper Irebu was at war with Lower Irebu! The guns could be heard even then at it, though I had not the slightest idea they were fighting.

Generally the first day of acquaintance with the Congo river tribes is devoted to chatting, sounding one another's principles, and getting at one another's ideas. The chief entertains his guest with gifts of food, goats, beer, fish, &c.; then on the next day commences business and reciprocal exchange of gifts. So it was at Irebu.

Mangombo gave four hairy thin-tailed sheep, ten glorious bunches of bananas, two great pots of beer, and the usual accompaniments of small stores.

The next day we made blood brotherhood. The

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

fetish-man prieked each of our right arms, pressed the blood out, then, with a pinch of serapings from my gun-stoek, a little salt, a few dusty scrapings from a long pod, dropped over the wounded arms, and the blaek and white arms were mutually rubbed together. The fetish-man took the long pod in his hand and slightly touehed our neeks, our heads, our arms, and our legs, muttering rapidly his litany of incantations. What was left of the medieiine Mangombo and I carefully folded in a banana leaf, and we bore it reverently between us to a banana grove elose by, and buried the dust out of sight.

Mangombo, now my brother, by solemn interchange of blood, conseerated to my serviee as I was devoted in the sacred fetish bond to his serviee, revealed his trouble, and implored my aid. The notables of Irebu were gathered round us, and then Mangombo spoke, of which the following is the substance :

“Some time ago I sent three canoes to Iboko (Bangala). My men traded prosperously ; they had obtained a valuable cargo of ivory, and were about returning, when a sudden quarrel took place between the Bangala and Irebu. Our people were on shore ; they fought stubbornly to save their ivory ; out of seventy people thirty-three were killed ; thirty-seven of them managed to save a few tusks, seized one of their canoes, and paddled away to tell us this dismal story. Of eourse all trade was stopped. Of those thirty-three men who were slain in the fight, twenty-eight were of my town ; but five belonged to Lower Irebu. You must know

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

that the community of Irebu is divided into three parts—Lower, Upper, and Central Irebu. Magwala is chief of Lower Irebu; Mpika is chief of Central Irebu; I am lord of the upper portion. Magwala and Mangombo are the principal chiefs, and before this misfortune, which I am about to tell you, occurred, I was considered the superior chief of all. Some months after the massacre of our young men at Iboko, a flotilla of Bangala canoes were seen going down river bound to Ngombé. Mpika heard of this, and giving chase captured a canoe with eight of the Bangala on board. Mpika, forgetting that I had lost twenty-eight men to his five, did not deign to let me have my share of the prisoners, but when I sent to him asking him to be fair, he replied, ‘No; they were my men who captured them. I keep these in revenge for my five. Go you and do likewise, for I will not give you one of my prisoners.’ On appealing to Magwala, he answered that Mpika was right, and should keep what he had obtained by force of arms. My people, however, were not satisfied with this; their loss was too recent and too great, and they forced me to declare war. About ten days ago we began it. I have lost six more of my people in four fights: over twenty of my men have been wounded. Magwala and Mpika have also lost heavily. Irebu lifts its hands against Irebu; friends and brothers slay one another. All trade is stopped. We go out and come in by night only. The women of Irebu are mourning daily; and if this evil, which is worse even than the small-pox, continues much longer,

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

Irebu will be no longer known as the strongest tribe on the great river.

"Now, Bula Matari, you have come in good time to save us from this mutual slaughter. We have heard of you years ago. Chumbiri told us your name was Stanley. When you were coming down river with your many canoes, we lay in wait for you behind that large island, but we did not attack you. We heard of Bula Matari building towns at Kintamo, at Mswata, and Bolobo; but we did not know who Bula Matari was, until Ibaka, some moons past, told us that Bula Matari was Stanley. You belong to Irebu now. You must save Irebu from death and ruin."

"Mangombo," I replied, "I should like to do it, but I have other work before me. I must go to Ikengo first, and on my return I will do what I can. Meantime, stop fighting."

"Ah, that is easy to say! but Magwala and Mpika must also stop fighting. Will you speak to them?"

"I will send a boat to tell them that Mangombo has asked me to settle the war, but that I cannot stay now; and I will ask them to wait until I return to make peace."

Enough has been said, as near to Mangombo's own words as the necessities of this book will permit, of this internecine war which was raging in one of the most flourishing and populous districts on the Upper Congo. According to my promise I proceeded in my boat opposite Mpika and Magwala's landing-places, and offered to mediate between the contending factions, on

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

the condition that they would refrain from hostilities during fifteen days. Mpika consented immediately, as it fortunately turned out that he was the blood-brother of Lieutenant Janssen at Mswata, and that he originally owned the large canoe then lashed alongside of the steam-launch *Royal*. Magwala was not so willing to agree to the compact of truce, but was finally prevailed upon by his friend Mpika.

I observed that in the covelet of Upper Irebu there was no current, and I suspected that there must be another lake in the vicinity, and on inquiry I ascertained that there was "big water" a few hours' journey up the Lukanga; but the Congo tribes are in daily presence of such large bodies of water, that the vicinity of a lake appears to be nothing extraordinary to them. It is only with inland peoples that it becomes a worthy topic to boast of lakes. This accounts for the great difficulty of exciting sufficient interest in these riverine tribes to draw from them exact information. They always use the terms "plenty of water," "big water," "big river," which I find by experience to apply equally to streams furnishing just sufficient water for canoe navigation.

The water of the Lukanga is of the same black colour as the Mfini and Lake Léopold II.; and some of the Irebu stated to me that they could reach Gankabi's by navigating the Lukanga, Mantumba Lake, and floating down a river to Lake Léopold II. and the Mfini River. This aroused my curiosity greatly, but I had to defer the investigation of the truth of this

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

report until my return from the equatorial district, as I had not the means to idly feed eighty people.

With a guide from Mangombo and Msenné of Mswata, we set out from the mouth of the Lukanga and Upper Irebu, on the afternoon of the 6th of June, up the Congo.

Among the topics I heard discussed between the groups of commoners near the landing-place of Irebu was the difference between Stanley and Bula Matari. The majority contended that though Stanley was the first "Mundelé" who appeared on the river, and fought everybody who attempted to stop him, yet it was really Bula Matari who sent him to find all about the country, and who owned all the men and canoes. For, look you, Stanley had only canoes like we have, whereas this Bula Matari has only one canoe; all the rest are boats that we never saw the like anywhere. No: Stanley must be Bula Matari's vizier, or big captain; for, you see, Bula Matari has many towns, and thousands upon thousands of bales of cloth. "Stanley gave proper measure of brass rods; when we go to Kintamo we shall ask for Stanley's brass rods; they are half as long again as the rods of the Bateké at the Pool."

The notables of Irebu were urgent for the medicine to make wealth grow quickly. I imparted to them the lesson of trading, but this advice they rejected with scorn and contempt. They knew well enough how to trade, but their wealth they confessed never increased.

"You," said they, "must have some charm by which

your store increases without care. We saw at Kintamo one day your shelves all empty; the very next day when we called they were filled from top to bottom. We wish to know this secret."

1883.
June 6.
Irebu.

The slaves of Ibaka boasted that they knew it, consequently their hut was besieged with applicants, and they made nearly two hundred brass rods by their extraordinary charlatanry.

Another subject of interested discussion among the Irebu was, "What was it that turned the paddle-wheels of the *En Avant*?" This was a difficult puzzle to them. Some would have it that there were about twenty men concealed somewhere in the bottom of the steamer. Others doubted that, and hotly maintained that the secret was in that "big pot" (boiler), otherwise why should the cook (engineer) be always near it making up the fire inside. But what was it that the engineer was cooking so industriously? Ah! that was another puzzle.

"Whatever it is," said they, "it takes a long time to cook. That engineer has been cooking all day, and it is not finished yet. It must be a strong medicine that; and all that large pile of wood has been used up. The two other boats have similar pots, into which their cooks shove in fuel continually. Perhaps if we had also big pots in our canoes, and we had some of the white man's medicine, we need not toil any more with tired arms at our paddles, and suffer from aches and pains in our shoulders."

Fifty miles above Irebu we came to Ikengo at

1883.
June 8.
Ikengo.

10 A.M. on the 8th of June. The land between had been almost one unbroken verdant forest of fine timber—teak, mahogany, guiacum, red and yellow wood, fine gum, plane, and bombax abundant, and frequently of enormous girth. The islands were long, and showed forests of equal height and luxuriance, while their sides presented tangled undergrowths of various species of palms and rattan.

On the appearance of the flotilla, the Ikengo people dashed out into the stream to meet us, in scores of tiny canoes, all crying out their welcome, and shouting the praises of their various villages, precisely like hotel touters throughout the Levant.

“Come to Ikengo,” they cried. “Ikengo is rich; Ikengo has abundance of food.” “No, come to Itumbu. Come and see Inganda. Inganda has ivory, slaves, women, goats, sheep, pigs. Inganda is blessed with abundance. Stanley, have you forgotten us; we who traded with you years ago? Ah, Stanley, come on to Ikengo. There is plenty of beer and wine in Ikengo.” And thus these extraordinary people extolled the virtues of their respective villages, making the river alive with their increasing throng and restless movement.

After carefully weighing the various advantages of the villages, since I well recognised the locality, which in 1877 provided me by their impromptu market on one of the islands opposite, I chose Inganda as a temporary resting-place.

Like all the Wy-yanzi, from the Kwa upward, the people were of a wholesome, healthy bronze colour, but,

unlike the others, they affected caps of monkey, otter, leopard, goat, and antelope skin, while their swords hung suspended by broad shoulder-belts of red buffalo-hide. Cotton cloth, however, was rare among these

1883.
June 8.
Ikengo.



A VERY POOR NATIVE OF INGANDA AND HIS DRESS.

people, their dress being a fine or coarse tissue made of grassy fibre.

I selected Inganda as a stopping place, whence, while affecting to make preparations for settlement, I might reconnoitre that large affluent the Ikelemba, mentioned in the 'Through the Dark Continent.' Pos-

1883.
June 11.
Inganda.

sibly I might secure a site at the confluence. If the natives were too wild to permit of a settlement there, then I might remain at Inganda, and wait the progress of our influence.

Numerous inquiries about the distinctions between the rivers meeting elicited the most confusing replies. The Ikelemba was large; but when they illustrated the distance between bank and bank by an object near them, the width seemed to vary between 50 and 100 yards. This was incredible. In my former book I had stated it to be about 1000 yards wide. I had viewed it personally. These were the same people who formerly had called the river "Ikelemba," or "Buruki." A communicative aborigine, hailing from Bungata, on the right bank, drew a curve on the ground, and near the middle of its convex side, at equal distances, joined three lines at right angles to it, the lowest marked as the channel coming from Bungata, the second channel flowing from Lulungu, the highest proceeding from Ikelemba River. The upper horn of the curve he named Buruki or Mohindu. The lower horn of the curve was called Inganda, where we were encamped. This curve, then, seemed to represent a river into which three channels ran; but when I asked him to describe the Mohindu river—Mohindu signifying black—he contemptuously described it to be about twenty-five yards wide!

Well, then, what great river was that which I saw approaching the broad Congo, attracting my curious gaze by its magnificent breadth; tea-dark in colour, as

strong a contrast to the flood that bore my canoes along, as the sable faces of my crew differed from my own? I was becoming exasperated at my own obtuseness, and I was impatient to settle the doubts which agitated me.

1883.
June 11
Inganda.

Leaving the rest of the expedition at Inganda, I steamed up river in the *En Avant*, in search of that "magnificent" and tea-coloured affluent. Within seventy-five minutes I had arrived near the very spot whence I had viewed it six years previously, and I felt a glow of satisfaction in again looking upon what I conceived to be the greatest tributary of the Congo. I steamed across from the islands to the left mainland, and half-way across the river we entered the tea-hued half of it. On proceeding fairly out of what I considered to be the Congo proper into it, the 1000 yards I reduced to 800 yards, but it was deep, with a three-knot current. Four hours above Inganda, during which the "magnificence" of my affluent was considerably diminished, owing to the fact that three channels had been seen coming from the Congo proper, the river took a decided turn south-east, and then I felt convinced that I was ascending a tributary. But I was not a whit elated at discovering that the Dark River had decreased to a breadth of about 600 yards.

Buruki, which name the aborigines had repeated so often, was a large town situated on the left bank of the Mohindu, about three miles above the confluence. The shores on either side were low, on the right hand too low to be inhabited, the river water penetrating

1883.
June 11.
Buruki.

far over the swampy land. The timber had a young but hardy look about it, just such as one would suppose would thrive in low lands, although here and there a crown of dark foliage was uplifted high above all others.

Islands began to be seen, but the disparting of the stream did not improve its dignity. We were fully three hours *en route* before the banks appeared, so high had the river risen. Ink water and dense forests of young trees were not interesting; strictly speaking, they approached to the dismal. The *En Avant*, unencumbered with a boat astern, proceeded rapidly up the even-flowing current, and not a single incident transpired, nor a single object hove in view, up to sunset, when we camped on the first trifling bit of dry bank we discovered.

The character of what I saw of the river inspired me with the impression that it belonged to a delta, having a number of narrow creeks, of wonderful crookedness, constantly emptying into the river. The lowness of the land, the young, yet hardy look of the forest everywhere; the blackness of such portions of alluvium as rose to sight, the dead, untroubled silence, the even-flowing, rippleless eddyless current, nay, let us call it the African Styx, assisted to convey that impression. Were it not for the white sun, that gave sheen and greenness to the fresh leafage of the forest, the prospect had been cheerless indeed.

The next morning found us, at dawn, under weigh, with an ample supply of red, or rather purple, hard

1883.
June 12.

wood on board ; but a little before 7 A.M. native huts appeared on the right bank, and on the left the land uplifted into a wholesome height, shaded by bright green bananas. When we came opposite the huts, we saw that they bore the signs of newness. The forest was uncleared. We looked to the banana groves, and discovered not a single soul in view. Was there a war ? Or had all the villagers gone a-picnicking into the wild woods ? But the *En Avant* rushes up the centre of the stream, and as the land improves, rising into clay and rock bluffs, 20 and 30 feet above the stream, a peopled village is seen, first on the left, and then on the right bank, and all at once the edges of the river banks are enlivened with yellow-bodied people, afflicted with a ferocious St. Vitus's dance. They leap upward, like so many acrobats suddenly afflicted with a terpsichorean mania, flankwise and rearward, then forward with a rush, bows in hand, drawn taut until the arrowheads seem to touch the bow. Those armed with a spear and shield only practise a Pyrrhic dance, and, but for the deep river, we would take it that they were charging on us. On the right bank, as well as on the left bank, the people are doing their best to exhibit their knowledge of war games. It is all very interesting, of course. I have always felt more interest in looking at human nature than in studying other aspects of creation, but just now it is this Black River that I came to see.

The *En Avant* goes plunging on at the rate of seven knots an hour. Village after village turns out its

1883.
June 12.

dancing corps of copper-breasted braves; the right bank, as well as the left bank, salute us with these exhibitions. There is a mile long stretch of hutted bank, followed by about two miles long of forest; then a similar village, followed by a similar forest, and over the villages are the bananas, seen to wave softly, with the darker palms nodding in harmony, while the white sun shines steadily over all. At noon we are $0^{\circ} 6' S.$ Lat. The day before we were in $0^{\circ} 4' N.$ Lat., and in this interval of time we had crossed the Equator twice.

The Black River, from bank to bank, was 400 yards in width, with a $2\frac{1}{2}$ knot current; the depth, by continuous trial with sounding pole, was unknown. Tiny hills began to appear to relieve the monotony of the level. At about the eightieth mile from the confluence we slackened speed, and tried to open a conversation with the people of a pleasant-looking village. A few of the principal men advanced firmly to the edge of the river bank, and one spoke unhesitatingly thus:—

“We do not know who you are, or whence you came, or whither you go, or what is your intent. If you come near enough to the shore we will begin fighting. If you wish to go on—go. If you wish to return, the river is free, but touch not the land.”

Was there ever such candour, so beautifully and clearly expressed, or was it the guide's way of speaking?

We returned the way we came, our departure being accompanied by a shower of sticks, clods, stones, &c., which, however, did not approach within 200 yards of

our steamer. It is probably in this way these equatorial people express their farewell!

1883.
June 12.
Wangata.

At 8 P.M. we reached the camp we had left in the morning, and arrived at noon the next day at the



A NATIVE ISSUING TO THE WAR.

junction of the Mohindu, or Black River, with the Congo.

At Wangata, seven miles below, commanding a view of the junction of three channels—the right going up to Bungata, the middle leading to the Ikel-
emba and the Lulungu rivers, the left leading to the

1883.
June 13.
Wangata.

Black River—we halted to converse with the people, and were invited to approach the landing-place.

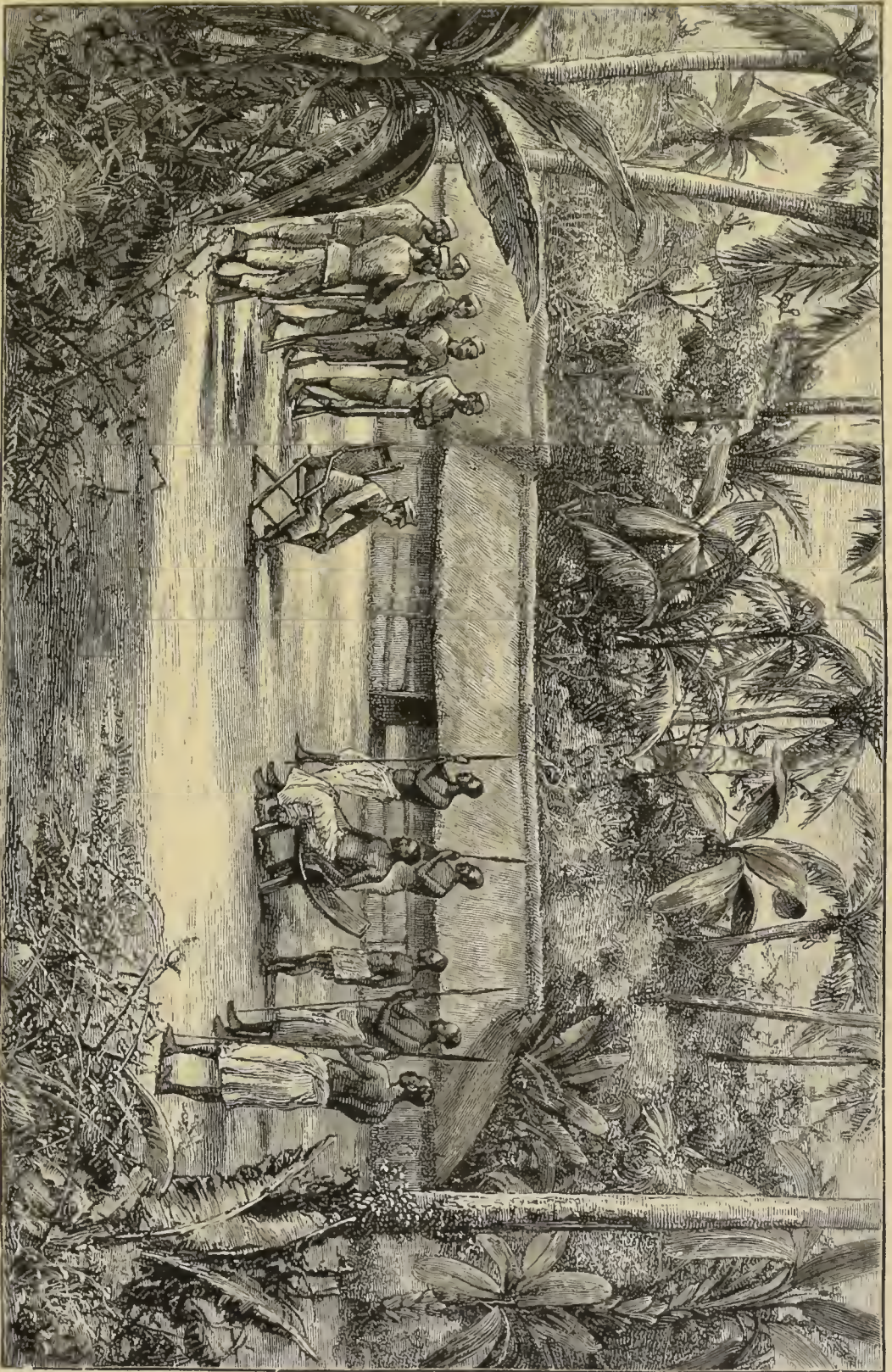
Here we learned that we were among the Bakuti, a tribe which begins at Ikengo and ends at Baruki, the town at the mouth of the Molindu. On the right bank are situated the Bakanga; the large island of Nsambana, nearly twenty-five miles in length, occupies the centre of the Congo, between the two tribes.

The Bakuti soon made friendship with us after the customary forms of blood brotherhood. Land was shown to us to build upon, then after leaving human pledges for our return, we hastened to Inganda. On the next day we packed up and transported the expedition to Equator Station, which is situated in the neighbourhood of Wangata, at $0^{\circ} 1' 0''$ N. lat.

Lieutenant Vangele was appointed chief of the new station, and twenty-six men were delivered over to him to form its garrison. Lieutenant Coquilhat, with twenty more men, was appointed to assist Lieutenant Vangele until a further reinforcement of men and goods could be conveyed to him from Léopoldville.

We halted a few days to assist with our crews the clearing of the bush from the site of the new station, as well as for the settlement of all claims, payments, distribution of gifts to important persons; and on the 20th of June we descended the Congo River on our return to Irebu, where we arrived after seven hours and forty-five minutes' steaming.

AN INTERVIEW BEFORE THE CHIEF'S HOUSE AT WANGATA.



CHAPTER XXVII.

FROM THE BLACK RIVER TO STANLEY POOL AND BACK
TO EQUATOR STATION.

An embarrassing farewell—Chili pepper and tears—Success of a hypocritical stratagem—Sounds of war—Peace-making—Burying the war—The Lukanga river—Mantumba Lake—The Watwa dwarfs—Rescue of a shipwrecked crew—The Abbé Guyot—The lion and his prey—Léopoldville flourishing—Troubles at Bwa-bwa Njali's—A homicidal officer—Lieutenant Janssen and the Abbé Guyot drowned—Troubles at Kimpoko—Troubles at Bolobo—The station burnt—We are fired upon—War—A Krupp gun sent for—Weak effects of musketry—Peace restored—Settling the indemnity—Displaying the power of the Krupp—"I and my people will depart from Bolobo for ever!"—The river of Bunga—Lukolela—A magnificent forest—The superstition of Iuka—Excellent condition of Equator Station—My ideal achieved.

THE love which the people of Inganda bore us was so excessive, that we became conscious on leaving Equator Station that we were in a difficulty. How could we tell them that the dank forest bight, with its edging of reeds and stagnant spaces around Inganda, was hurtful to the health of Europeans, and that we were compelled, on account of sanitary and political considerations, to remove from their village to Wangata? This would be a delicate task!

1883.
June 21.
Inganda.

When Msenné—our guide from Mswata—was in-

1883.
June 21.
Inganda.

formed that, although it was absolutely necessary for us to move, still, we experienced a dislike to wound the susceptibilities of the Inganda people, he, after a thoughtful pause, said that we had better leave the matter in his hands, and we should have no further trouble. As he was so confident, and as cheery as a lawyer who has a good case, and as he knew the natives better than we did, we agreed to leave it to him entirely. He communicated his ideas to my servant Dualla and to Umari, and it was through them I learned later how he had accomplished it.

Having obtained permission to carry out his design without interference on my part, unless there were visible signs of failure, he proceeded to put in practice what he designed. He first rolled his long cloth tight around his waist as though it were a cord, and then with a Chili pepper touched his eyes, and, having started the copious tears to roll down his face, he assumed such a woe-begone, down-drooping aspect, that I was afraid Dualla had replied offensively to him.

No sooner had we arrived at the landing-place of Inganda, than he stepped on shore, deaf to every hail, regardless of everybody, and leaving the boat, he proceeded slowly to an open place on shore, where he stood solitarily conspicuous, while the poor deluded natives gathered around him, urging him mildly, with hushed voices, to respond to the greetings.

“Well, Msenné, have you come?” “What news?”
“What ill has befallen you?”

These were often repeated to the absent-minded

Msenné, who was so immersed in his sorrow, that he was heedless of them, until, at last, in a broken voice interrupted by sobs and bursts of assumed anger, he condescended to unfold the pitiful tale of woe.

1883.
June 21.
Inganda.

The story as a story was capitally related; as a comedy it was surpassingly well done, and proved that in this far away part of Africa there must have been many a Shakespeare and Milton, who have mutely and ingloriously died unwept, unhonoured and unsung by the ignorant civilised world, and whose humble mounds lie nameless under the tropic shade.

“Two days from here, up that black river—the—what do ye call it?—there were many villages on the Bakuti side, and a market was held. The wild people invited us in. We ranged the boat alongside the bank. Mangombo’s boy, and one of Bula Matari’s men and I sprang on shore, and then—ah, I never saw such a thing before!—Irebu’s boy was caught, the Zanzibari was speared instantly, and I escaped by leaping through the treacherous crowd into the river. The boat had already shoved off at the first alarm, and now, tell me, friends, what must I do? What answer shall I return to Mangombo, of Irebu, when he asks me for his boy? You men of Stanley, why stand ye here? Let us go. Pack up, and let us go on to the fight, and fight until there is not one of the wretches left alive. Have you people no hearts to feel for your dead friends? How shall we return to Irebu? What, oh, what will Mangombo say to me? Pack up, I tell you!” and here Msenné actually sobbed aloud.

1883.
June 21.
Inganda.

Dualla and Umari, who were in the secret, cried out soothingly "Peace, Msenné. Cease grieving; can we fight without food? Let us buy food to-day, and to-morrow we shall go to the war."

The natives also joined in consolations, and offered to muster all Inganda and Ikengo for the war, and in a little time Msenné hushed his sobs, and finally condescended to smile.

It was not until we had settled ourselves at Wangata that the story was told of how Msenné had deceived Inganda in such an accomplished manner, by our two young men who had thoroughly relished the performance.

As the boats were being secured to the trees on the margin of the cove of Upper Irebu, the sounds of a musketry volley came sharply to our ears. We inquired what this firing meant.

"Oh, we got tired of waiting for you so we began the war again an hour ago."

After consultation with Mangombo, I sent Dualla with two boats to Mpika's landing place, and having obtained permission from both the contending factions to stop the war, I then commissioned Dualla and four of the crew to proceed to the battle field, bearing the blue flag with the golden star, the standard of the Association, high above their heads, that it might be seen by the respective ambushed warriors. Guided by Mpika's advice, they boldly penetrated through the hostile ranks, and shouted out to them that the peace palaver was now being held by Bula Matari, and in

some stubborn cases they had actually seized the guns and struck them up while they were levelling them to fire on their enemy. We were not long waiting before we saw the warriors of Mangombo returning to their various huts in the town, presenting themselves to our inspection as they passed by us grossly garnished with skins and feathers, and so hideously painted that it was impossible to conceive a more thorough effort for the human form's disfigurement.

1883.
June 22.
Inganda.

The next day, having heard from each chief his statement of the cause of the war, I spoke to Mpika and Magwala, asking what benefits they expected from this strife. "None," they promptly replied. "Iboko killed my people," said Mpika, "and I caught eight of them by a fair chase after them; let Mangombo do the same, for he will never get any of mine." "And I," said Magwala, "will see that he does not."

To Mangombo, I asked what he expected to gain by continuing the fight?

"Both of your parties are strong and numerous, and if you go on in this manner, mutually destroying one another, Irebu will become the prey of the Bakuti, or the Balui, or the Wabangi. Your friends are also friends of your opponents. Your losses to-day, including those who fell at Iboko, are thirty-seven killed, and many wounded. You have lost nine stout men in order to get four slaves. You are not wise, Mangombo. This kind of trading will ruin you. Let the council be called, and obey the word, otherwise you must go on fighting it out by yourselves."

1883.
June 22.
Inganda.

Accordingly, at two P.M., the principal elders of Upper Irebu were gathered together in council in one corner of an open place. I and my three interpreters near me occupied another corner. At another corner Mangombo sat alone with his long staff ending with a brazen spade.

"The Malafu fee must be paid first," said one of the elders. I had almost forgotten the judge's fee, and I hinted to Msenné and Umari that my fee must be large.

Fifty brass-rods were distributed among the elders. One hundred and twenty were gravely handed to me as my share.

Mangombo recited the story of the war, recounting his losses, and drawing pathetic pictures of the losses incurred by Upper Irebu. The elders then suggested their ideas as to what should be done to stay the hostilities, and that it was a great pity that the disputants should go on killing one another.

I followed last, and decided that the war must stop. Said I: "Magwala and Mpika have both agreed that they will leave the case in my hands; you Mangombo must do the same. The war lies in the obstinacy of Mangombo alone. Mpika lost five men, but he kept his eyes open, and revenged himself on the Iboko by taking eight captives. Mangombo sought to redress his losses by making war upon Mpika. If he wanted to pay the Bangala for the blood they had shed, why did he not go to Iboko, and keep his eyes open there, instead of hurting his friend? The Nzambi (God) is angry,

and he has lost nine more of his men. Say, it is enough. Mpika and Magwala offer their hands in friendship to Mangombo. Give the pledge of peace, and bury the war. Bula Matari has spoken !”

1883.
June 22.
Inganda.

The council of elders applauded, and Mangombo yielded to the general cry of peace, and gave the pledge demanded. My interpreters were instantly sent away to central Irebu to bring the pledges of peace from the Capulets of that quarter. These pledges were two pieces of unbleached domestic, one gourd of palm-wine, one keg of damp gunpowder, and one broken musket from each faction. Then four elders from Upper Irebu who were neutrals, and four neutrals from central Irebu took charge of the peace pledges, and in the centre of the plain behind Irebu, which was the usual battle-field, a hole was dug in the ground, and the articles were interred. Salvoes of musketry from each rank of the combatants were fired over the grave of the war, and Irebu was saved from the horrors of internal strife, for many long years, I hope.

The next day we spent in mutual visits through Irebu.

This large town, or congeries of villages, built so close together, that to a stranger there would appear to be no distinctive limits between them, occupies the left bank of the Congo, and the left bank of the Lukanga, running along the bank for a distance of five miles, and having a depth inland of two miles. The population I estimated at 15,000 souls. Irebu has also its suburbs, and if the villages inland

1883
June 23.

and along the Lukanga may be reckoned, being offshoots of Irebu, the figures of the population may reasonably be doubled.

On the 23rd, we steamed up the Lukanga River, which we took to be a river, though in reality it was the tail end, or the sluggish effluence of a lake. It appeared more like a broad and winding canal. The shore, for a considerable distance, was a reedy fen, relieved in places by a clump of mimosa, or by a grander height of scrub, and finally by an isleted grove. A few miles up, a humpy rise of reddish clay showed a village with bananas and palms, and gardens of cassava outside. Fishermen were numerous; canoes being seen returning from or going to the fish-catching. From 300 yards the Lukanga opened out to a mile in breadth, which gradually widened further into a little lake. We were then shown a course varying from one to two miles wide, which we followed; the shores looming up picturesquely in wooded banks which might almost be called hills. The villages were becoming more numerous. Presently, when half-way through this arm of the lake, we turned into a narrow channel by the village of Maboko, which was still more narrowed by rows of stakes, sedge, water-lilies, lotus, papyrus and other reeds. Three-quarters of an hour later—after winding in and out a crooked watery path—Lake Mantumba burst into view. We steamed along the northern shore—the southern being distant about five miles—until at 4 P.M., when on the south, the shore disappeared. At sunset, we had reached the

1883.
June 23.
Mantumba
Lake.

eastern shore, and camped on an island near Ugangi; whither some natives visited us, and told us of the Watwa being many days inland, from whence they obtained their ivory and camwood. Ten days' steaming into beautiful little bays and creeks, past Ibingi and Ikoko, brought us to near Ikulu at 5 P.M., along the eastern shore, and round by the flat southern shore, to a portion of the western shore. By noon of the 25th we had steamed 144 English miles in the circumnavigation of the lake.

Mantumba Lake, like Lake Léopold II., is a shallow depression in the lowland of this portion of the Congo basin. The greatest depth ascertained is thirty-two feet. Like the latter, it seems to have been caused by a sudden subsidence of the ironstone substructure, which, at many places, shows the ragged sharp edges of fracture as clearly as though newly made. In other parts again the land rises into low hills, not high enough to attract particular notice, but clothed with fine forests of redwood, for which this country is noted. Where the ironstone crust still shows its ragged frontage to the view, deep cavernous recesses are seen underneath. Over these the stone projects like a shelf of rock, proving its tenacious composition, as it frequently supports trees of considerable girth and height. On the western shores, in some of its many baylets, the pebbly beach strewn with round ironstone, and quartz, and reddish, porous, stone pebbles, shows traces of much higher water, and effects of stormy waves. Everywhere the shore is lined by these pebbles. Some

1883.
June 23.
Mantumba
Lake.

I ground into powder, and put into a glass of water, and after stirring up I found the water to be much darker. This rust and dark red ironstone may account for a little of the inkiness of the lake, though I cannot conceive it to be altogether the cause. Scarcely any clay or sand was visible on the shore, though I minutely examined every indentation in it. The ground above this rocky substratum is a reddish soil, very rich and favourable to tropical abundance. When the shore is not cultivated the forest is dense, but all of an uniform height. The southern shore is very low and sedgy. As the lake rises about fifteen feet, or, at least, the shores show traces to this height, and, as the distance between Lakes Mantumba and Léopold II. is about twenty-two geographical miles, it may be that at the height of the rainy season these two lakes are connected.

At Ikengé the natives manufactured a superior kind of pottery. Camwood powder is also extensively made by grinding in mortar, red-wood chips, or rasping small sticks of it on rough slabs. Ivory is purchased from the Watwa dwarfs, who are described as a copper-coloured people.

On the 29th of June we halted at the camping-place at Lukolela. Iuka and Mungawa were induced to visit us—to make blood brotherhood, and finally to frame a verbal treaty, agreeing to cede to us sovereignty over their country. They also sold us a fine piece of land, whereon we proposed to build a station, in surety whereof we left two of our most faithful men

in their hands, and then continued on our voyage down the Congo.

1883.
June 29.
Lukolela.

We were encamped on the grassy terrace mentioned in our journey up river, a few miles below Lukolela, on the evening of this day, when a large canoe appeared laden with forty-four men and a miscellaneous cargo. They reported the wreck of a large canoe laden with thirty-eight men, and a valuable cargo. Over a dozen of the crew of the lost canoe were on board; the rest were still on an island wandering. Two persons had been drowned, and all the property had been lost. The shipwrecked party hailed from Usindi, and the crew of the canoe that rendered assistance belonged to Ngombé. They found us in a fit mood and condition to be helpful. We were homeward bound to Stanley Pool, we had just left Lukolela, and had abundance of provisions, which we shared with them.

At early dawn we were under weigh with three of the shipwrecked crew on board to guide us to the scene of the disaster. At 8.30 A.M. we hauled alongside with our three steamers, whaleboat, and canoe. They pointed the locality and the cause of the accident, which was some thirty yards from shore. It was a stiff snag, slightly covered by water, that ran strongly around it, and was thirty feet in depth. The locality was devoid of anything to which we could cling; and in attempting to secure a steamer near the place we lost our anchor and chain. I recognised the chief of the party as Miyongo of Usindi, whom we had seen at

1883
June 30.
Lukolela.

Bolobo during our palavers relating to the murder of two of our garrison by Gatula. We requested to know what assistance he wished. After consultation with his fellows, he decided to return to Bolobo with his wife and six companions. We supplied the others with food and native arms, which we had purchased from the Bakuti, and they resolved to make their way to Lukolela by land. We transported them to the mainland, and then proceeded on our journey to Bolobo, which we reached at nine o'clock at night.

The next day we rendered Miyongo and his wife speechless with gratitude by a present of forty days' rations, when, according to native custom, they had become our property. Departing from Bolobo soon afterwards, we arrived at Mswata station after thirteen hours' steaming.

During my absence to the equator, Lieutenant Janssen had received a visitor, in the person of the Abbé Guyot, a Roman Catholic missionary serving under the orders of the Algerian Cardinal. The Abbé had come up the Congo highly recommended to the officers of the Association, with the view of establishing a mission. Léopoldville being already blessed with the Protestant missions, the Abbé thought it convenient to seek a virgin field. Upon suggesting the Kwa, in the neighbourhood of the confluence, he expressed himself pleased with the locality, upon which I requested Lieutenant Janssen to proceed up to the Kwa, and establish himself on the left bank of the confluence, and to assist the Abbé Guyot

in the founding of his mission on the right bank of the affluent opposite.

1883.
July 3.
Mswata.

On the 3rd of July, with the wind blowing strongly against us, we left Mswata for Léopoldville. Just above the Wampoko river, on the right bank, we saw a lion crouched on the sand, watching with curious gaze the descending flotilla. We tried a shot at it and missed it; and, led by curiosity, we landed at the place to discover that a fierce struggle had occurred shortly before, leaving traces of some heavy body having been dragged over the beach. The evidences were as legible as a highway, and pointed us to a dead buffalo still warm fifty paces from the river's edge, where it had been struck helpless while drinking. Good fresh beef was too rare on the Upper Congo to be rejected, and all hands that day banqueted on the steaks and roast hump furnished by the forest king.

Kimpoko station, reached the next day at 10 A.M., was superintended by Mons. Amelot. The place evidently was about to be known as one of our unlucky stations. This was the fourth chief who had been placed in command, and yet the chief's residence had not been completed, and, by the very slow progress which had been made, probably the columns would need renewing before it would be fit for living in.

After fifty-seven days' absence we again saw Léopoldville, with substantial proofs everywhere visible of the competency of Lieutenant Valcke as chief. A large house, having nine commodious rooms for the lodging of Europeans, had been put up; a small station

1883.
July 13.
Léopold-
ville.

had been established at Kinshassa; some 500 new banana plants were thriving in our garden; and the community and its belongings were altogether in a "blooming" condition. Thus a proper man proved that he could perform more service in two months than his predecessor had performed within eleven months. Ngalyema and his brother chiefs were also on excellent terms with the staff of Europeans; the store-rooms of the station were filled with provision cases, cloth bales, bead boxes, and there were nearly four tons of brass rods—the native currency.

On the 13th of July the steamers and boats were again despatched to Bolobo with 150 loads of goods and thirty-two men, in charge of Captain Anderson, in whom I could place implicit reliance. Meantime troubles at Vivi and Manyanga required my attention, and I had to despatch an agent to that place with authority to rectify the mischiefs which ever recurred at that unfortunate station, owing to the utter impossibility of enforcing obedience to orders by letter.

"Captain" — had, after six months' patient endeavour to reach his post, finally arrived to take command. At least this was to be hoped, but later letters informed us that he declined the command, owing to a species of triangular disagreement and misunderstanding existing at Vivi, in connection with which each of the three persons involved showered letters in most forcible language upon me. In this predicament it was necessary to commission a deputy, with copies of the

various orders that had emanated from me during the last six months; and I consider that the immense bother on this occasion drew from me a final order, which was an absolute model of its kind, from the great number of propositional "ifs" it contained, providing, I flattered myself, against all mortal possibilities of misunderstanding, misapprehension, and failure. Not

1883.
July 13.
Léopold-
ville.



VIEW FROM THE HEAD OF BAMU ISLAND DOWN THE SOUTH BRANCH AT
STANLEY POOL.

having a single soul else within reach that I could trust, I was obliged to deprive Léopoldville of its chief, so that Lieutenant Valcke was the chosen deputy, while Dr. Van den Heuvel was appointed chief of Léopoldville *pro tem*.

Invited by Bwa-bwa Njali, of the Gordon-Bennett River, to establish a station there, I proposed to a

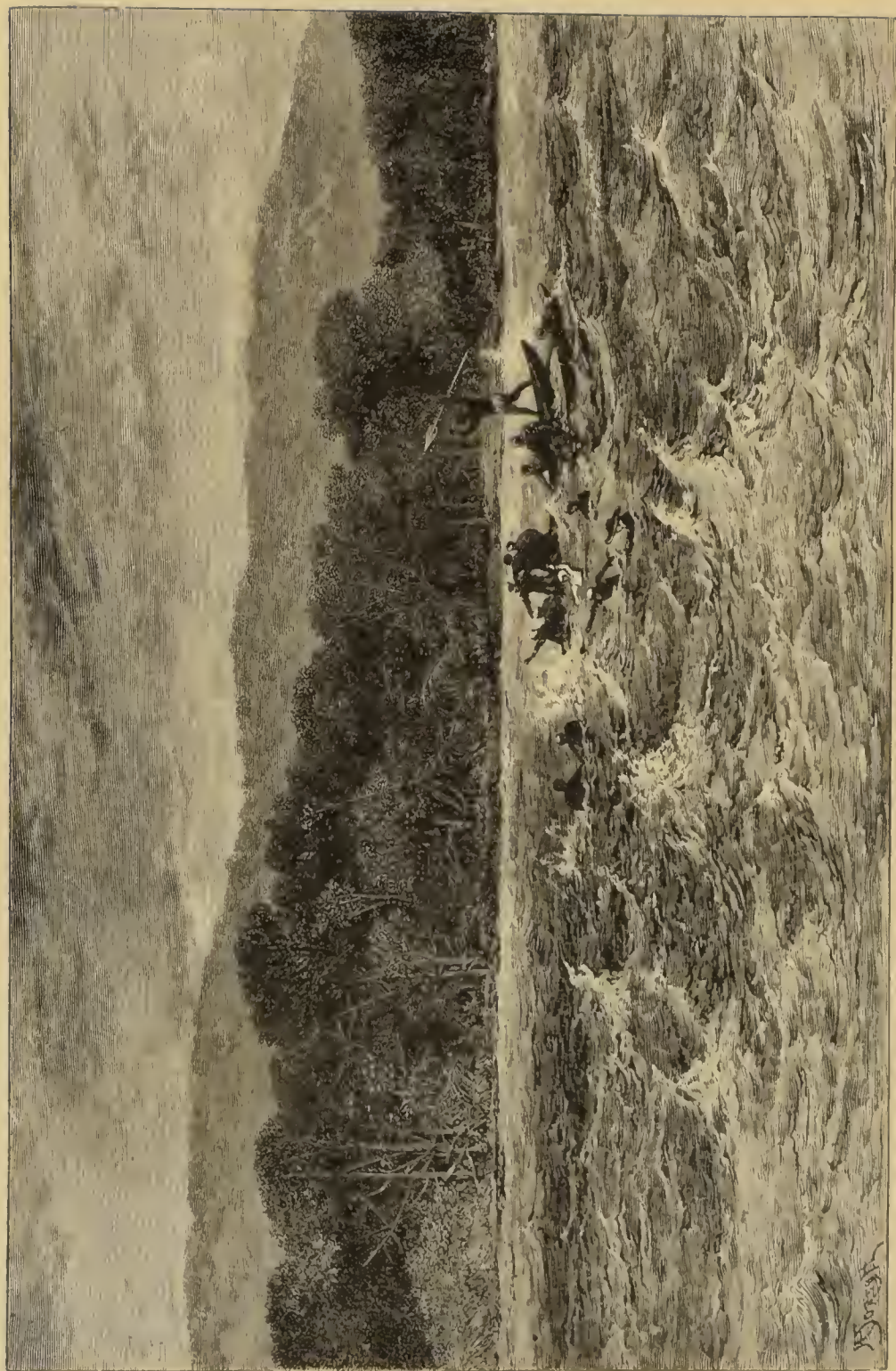
1883.
July 21.
Léopold-
ville.

young continental officer to undertake the duty. He readily acquiesced, expressing himself indeed as extremely desirous to have his fidelity and capacity tested previous to promotion, and the public recognition of his zeal and intelligence. He and his band of fourteen picked men were transported across the river, and duly introduced to the chief, who consented to receive him as his brother. The young officer received his final instructions with a strong injunction to be prudent, good tempered, and forbearing, and always charitable in his dealings with the aborigines as well as with his own people.

Eight days passed away, and then from across the river came a rumour of trouble. A boat was hastily manned and sent to inquire for news, which, in a few hours, returned with the young officer, pale and excited, with his face scratched and his clothes in disorder, and two of his own garrison with him. The coxswain of the boat reported that he had gone across the river, and had found the military officer bound hand and foot.

Two of his own men guarded him, and they told the coxswain a curious tale. He had, however, on his own responsibility set the officer at liberty, and had brought him, along with his men, to Léopoldville to answer for themselves.

The officer related how he had detected a plot to murder him and take the property, upon which he had attempted to shoot the supposed ringleader in the conspiracy, but had only succeeded in wounding him,



A TERRIBLE DISASTER.

W. H. P.

whereupon his own men sprang upon him, disarmed and bound him, and were about conveying him to Léopoldville when the boat fortunately arrived to take them across. He admitted he had been set free from his bonds by the coxswain.

1883.
July 22.
Léopold-
ville.

The two men who had been found guarding him, in their direct and circumstantial story, proved that their officer had suddenly developed an homicidal mania. He had attempted to shoot poor Bwa-bwa Njali, and had actually shot his chief sergeant in the head, which provoked his own garrison to disarm and bind him. During the night following he had burst his bonds and fled into the woods, where he had been discovered next morning. Being recaptured, and rebound, he was conveyed to the river side, whither soon after the boat arrived, and its crew, taking charge of the prisoner and his guard, brought them to Léopoldville.

My servant Dualla was sent over to Bwa-bwa Njali's, to transport the party back again to Léopoldville. On the return of Dualla, corroborating the truth of the charge against the officer, the unfortunate gentleman was taken under escort to Vivi with an order of dismissal from the service.

On the 22nd of July, a courier canoe arrived from Mswata station with the dreadful intelligence that Lieutenant Janssen and the Abbé Guyot, with eleven of their people, while descending the Congo from the new Kwamouth station to Mswata, during a gale of wind, were drowned.

On the 31st of July an expedition was sent to

1883.
July 31.
Léopold-
ville.

occupy Kwamouth station. It consisted of Lieutenant Pagels, a Swedish officer, and a small garrison for that place.

Two days later a courier canoe arrived from Kimpoko station, with letters from Mons. Amelot, imploring instant relief. He had had a misunderstanding with the natives, and some shooting had happened, wherein two or three of the natives had fallen.

Naturally, I hurried to Kimpoko, and found that Gambiélé and all the natives had fled, and my presentiment concerning unfortunate Kimpoko was verified. Unable to induce the natives to return, I ordered the half-built station to be destroyed, and conveyed the garrison down to Léopoldville.

The prospects were most disheartening; eternal and ever-brewing troubles at Vivi; two stations destroyed within a few days of each other; two Europeans and eleven coloured men belonging to another station drowned! But the end had not yet arrived.

On the 21st of August, a courier canoe arrived from Bolobo with a note saying that unfortunate Bolobo—never to be built Bolobo—was burnt to the ground with all the goods belonging to it, as well as the 150 loads recently stored there for the Upper Congo stations Bangala and Stanley Falls.

Fortunately the flotilla, which had been beached for repairs, was now in perfect order for a long voyage, and I was only waiting for an overland caravan, of the near approach of which we had notice, to have started. The danger to these houseless people at Bolobo, how-

1883.
August 22.
Bolobo.

ever, spurred us to immediate movement, and on the 22nd of August we accordingly departed from Léopoldville, with ten tons of miscellaneous goods, and a crew and passenger list numbering fifty men. After fifty-seven hours' steaming we arrived in view of Bolobo on the 29th August. The *En Avant* being a few miles ahead of the *Royal* and *A. I. A.*

As the *En Avant* steamed by the shore I observed the usual crowds of spectators darkening it. Mungolo, Ibaka's favourite village, poured out its bronze-bodied people great and small. Next Biangala, perched on the slope of the hill which separated the Lower from the Upper Bolobo. Next in order appeared the villages of Ururu, Mongo, Manga, Yambula, and Lingenji, and, finally, without a single incident, we arrived at the landing-place of the ruined station, the blackened site of which we saw looked desolate enough.

I told the engineer to keep steam at three atmospheres until the other steamers had actually arrived, and I was listening to the reports of the burning of the station, when a messenger came from Ibaka, the senior chief, saying that Itimba and Biangala had fired on the two steamers. The news was so astonishing that I could scarcely credit the fact; for in the *Royal* were three natives of Bolobo, who had borne to me the news of the destruction by fire of the station, and had been brought back by us. I had also passed by the shore, and the people had waved their hands and greeted us at several places, while the chief of the station had reported that he was on terms of friendly intimacy with

1883.
August 29.
Bolobo.

every one at Bolobo. No whisper of ill-feeling had been heard from any one. To emphasise this apparent friendship, Manga's chief had exchanged presents with the station superintendent that morning. Upiti, the chief of Itamba, was cracked up to be "a dear friend—in fact, one of the best fellows in the world."

Full of wonder at this sudden outbreak, we made steam again, and proceeded down the river to discover the truth. Five hundred yards below the station landing-place we were passing by Manga's village, and I had barely time to distinguish my *protégé*, Miyongo, of Usindi, by the broad-beaded and glittering haft of his falchion, when a stream of fire was seen issuing from the bushes near him, and the slugs came peltering briskly across, some ringing smartly on the steel hull of the steamer. Presently another shot rang out loudly a few yards below, the missile of which swept over the bow.

It appeared to dawn on my mind that all this was a pre-concerted arrangement. For a moment, I fear that I did not wholly exempt my own station chief from some participation in the outbreak. He might have tampered with these savages from some sinister design of his own, because he had called them his dear friends, and, if dear friends of his, why not dear friends of ours? Absurd as the thought undoubtedly was, we had no time to discuss it, for the *En Avant* was in a dangerous proximity to these ambushed people, and the muskets roared at us from a long line of sharpshooters hidden only about fifty yards from us. We had only six men aboard, and our rifles had never been used. Arms were

1883.
August 29.
Bolobo.

taken on board always as a precaution; but during the four years we had run on the Congo not a single native had fired at us. However, we soon drew them out and began to return the fire vigorously into the bushes, while we charged down river to the rescue of the steamers. In twenty minutes we met the *A.I.A.*, and soon after the *Royal*, the crews of which related the narrow escapes they had experienced. One man only had been wounded in the face by a shot from some excited bungler amongst the crew.

The steamers were brought up to the station, and the goods then discharged into a small hut that had been hastily constructed and placed under guard.

The *Royal* was then dispatched to Léopoldville to bring up an artillery officer with a Krupp cannon, and some fifty charges of ammunition, with which I hoped by a little fright to make the intractable people of Bolobo less disposed to include us in their future displays of spleen.

The reader will have perceived by this that Bolobo had become noted in our books as an unlucky station. It had been established nearly a year at this time, yet it was in a more backward condition than any other. Two members of its garrison had been foully murdered; a fire then utterly consumed the station and village with £1500 worth of property; and now we had what the natives called "a war." All the towns of Bolobo were arrayed against us, except Mungolo and Lingenji, the villages of Ibaka.

After waiting four days, during which no one seemed

1883.
August 30
Bolobo.

disposed to come to terms, or to offer to effect a reconciliation, the *En Avant* and whale-boat descended the river to reconnoitre, and to endeavour to parley with some of our friends in the villages, but a most murderous fusilade greeted us as we came near Manga's and Yambula's villages. This roused our ire again, and we replied at random into the bush, as no person could be seen.

On the 3rd of September a few of our party occupied an island running parallel with the hostile villages, from which our sharpshooters replied briskly at every locality whence the shots issued.

In the evening, Miyongo appeared and related the effects of the firing. A woman, the mother of the young rogue who had first fired at us from Manga's, had lost her front teeth by a bullet. A man had his love-knot of hair scraped clean away. Seventeen pots full of native beer had been smashed; some houses perforated, and three or four bananas cut down. At Itimba the firing from the *En Avant* had been more effective, two men were killed and three wounded, besides one goat and one chicken killed. The Wyyanzi are too fond of trade not to include everything in their tale of losses. The smashing of a few more pots of beer, by which their courage is inspired, would produce a depression whence peaceful results might be expected.

The following day, Ibaka introduced a peace deputation from Itimba, which brought with it a few dozens of brass rods, a goat, and some fowls. Surely a war was

not worth much at Bolobo when they estimated the indemnity at such a trifle. However, we accepted it, and old Upiti and his brother ambassadors were delighted, and promised to be very good in future.

1883.
Sept. 3.
Bolobo.

In the afternoon we proceeded again to the island opposite Manga's, and kept up a desultory firing at the white cloudlets emitted from the black bush, and in the evening Miyongo bore to me the bulletin of results. The tale of losses included a chief wounded in the leg while drinking beer in the woods with his brother chiefs, one man wounded in both thighs, one in the arms, a gun smashed by a bullet, a canoe damaged, and a few more bananas levelled.

The wounding of a chief brought Manga to propose terms of peace, but as this was a second offence I was severe. They offered the same money paid by Itimba. It was rejected with scorn, and they were told that, as they considered it a pleasure to fight, and a hardship to pay for the privilege of firing at people, we must try our hands at it again next day, and every day until the big gun arrived from Stanley Pool, when they would all be blown up to the sky. This awful threat made them surrender the case to Ibaka's hands, but with all Ibaka's real and earnest efforts it cost us nine days' negotiations to induce them to pay the fine of 600 matakos, value £15, as an indemnity.

On the 13th the peace was duly proclaimed throughout Bolobo, and the next day the Krupp, which had arrived during the last days of the peace negotiations, had to be fired into the Congo, which, opposite Bolobo,

1883.
Sept. 14.
Bolobo.

is 4000 yards wide. All the villages were represented on the occasion by the chiefs in person, accompanied by a few hundreds of people, who honour me without many weapons.

To them there was not much likeness of a gun about the Krupp. "If it were a gun, where was the trigger, stock, ramrod? And what, in the name of goodness, were the wheels for?"

"Tut," they said; "Bula Matari is joking. It cannot be a gun; it bears no resemblance to a gun. It looks like a fine piece of wood with a deep hole in its belly."

It was, therefore, decidedly necessary to fire the Krupp. They were turbulent through their unsophisticated wildness. They knew no better. A brass rod causes a war; a drop too much of beer ends in a war. If they have a bad dream, some unfortunate is accused, and burnt for witchcraft, or hung for being an accessory to it. A chief dies from illness, and from two to fifty people are butchered over his grave. When the chief of Moyé—the next village above our station—died, forty-five people were slaughtered, and only a short time before Ibaka strangled a lovely young girl because her lover had sickened and died. Two slaves of Ibaka quarrelled over their beer, and one shot the other; the brother of the murdered man demanded twelve slaves, two bales of cloth, and 1500 brass rods; one of the male slaves was beheaded, and a female slave was strangled, that their spirits might accompany the spirit of the dead slave on its dreary journey to the unknown

universe. That we had not been more involved in trouble with such people as these of Bolobo has been solely due to our anxious care and large forbearance.

1883.
Sept. 14.
Bolobo.

Notwithstanding their professions of incredulity as to its power, it was observed that the chiefs took great care to keep at a respectful distance from the Krupp, and, when finally the artillerist, after sighting the piece to 2000 yards, fired it, and the cannon spasmodically recoiled, their bodies also instantaneously developed a convulsive movement, after which they sat stupidly gazing at one another. A second shot was fired to 3000 yards, and the appearance of the column of water heaved by it, satisfied the most sceptical that the implement was a gun of immense power.

But the following little episode will well illustrate the character of the Wy-yanzi. After the peaceful exhibition of the powers of the Krupp, I seized the occasion to explain to them how very foolish they were to fight their friends. No white man had yet injured any of them. We had settled at Bolobo only at the solicitation of Ibaka, and all the chiefs had tasted of the white man's liberality. I now would pay for the beer to celebrate a long peace, and I accordingly delivered to each man one piece of cloth and ten brass rods, which, as there were fifteen chiefs and elders, amounted to more than the fine exacted from Lower Bolobo for shooting without provocation at our steamers.

They left the goods on the ground, and went aside to consider or hold a palaver, and after all had arrived at an agreement they came back to their seats,

1883.
Sept. 14.
Bolobo.

and Lugumbila, the senior slave of Ibaka, with an unabashed face, dared to say to me :

“Bula Matari, we have been considering together, and we are all of one mind that you ought to give each of us two pieces of cloth and twenty brass rods to celebrate this peace, value £25.”

Without a word, but feeling unutterable things, I ordered my servant Dualla to take the presents back, and, waving my hand to them, I said: “It is enough. Ibaka, this land is yours. Take it; I and my people will depart from Bolobo for ever. I am tired of you.”

Up sprang the chiefs instantly to their feet, while Ibaka hastily arrested Dualla's movement, crying out, “No, no, no. Stop, Bula Matari! Dualla, stay! Nay, be not angry with us; this is but a custom of the Wy-yanzi. If you had given us 4000 brass rods we should have asked for 10,000; if you had given us 50,000 we should have asked for ten times the amount. What, Bula Matari leave us? No, never! Give us the moneys, and we will go to celebrate the peace. Come, Bula Matari, drive away your anger,” and Ibaka came and patted and rapped gently over my watch-pocket, as though my disgust and silent fury was stowed somewhere in that region. “And,” continued Ibaka smiling humorously, “does not Bula Matari know the Wy-yanzi yet? Why, the greed of the Wy-yanzi is as insatiable as the appetite of the hippopotamus. The trouble is ended, Bula Matari. Wy-yanzi love money too well to risk fighting any more. Two troubles have cost

them money; they will not care to provoke a third. So live in peace, and let your heart rest."

1883.
Sept. 14.
Bolobo.

Being a guileless, liberal, and susceptible creature, I accepted Ibaka's hand, and then all departed to drink beer, with the strong purpose to live hereafter in peace with the white man and his people. The Wy-yanzi are not a vindictive people, why should I have been?

On the 16th of September we departed from Bolobo, and ascended along the right bank on this journey to Lukolela. Miyongo, of Usindi, and his shipwrecked crew, who had been extremely serviceable to us in the negotiations with the aborigines of Lower Bolobo, accompanied us.

Two hours later we passed the Mikené river. A guide told us that it continued to be navigable for a about a day's journey up by canoe to the junction of two rivers, each of which was impassable on account of rapids.

Skirting the shore above the Mikené, we discovered that the firm land was generally a mile inland from the tangle of calamus and bush, weeds and papyrus, which rose in impenetrable masses in line along the river margin. The islets, principally low, were innumerable, and produced but reedy plants and scrub. When we had proceeded about a third of the distance from Lukolela the land improved in appearance, showing a tall forest and a limited grassy terrace or two, in appearance very like the left bank.

About 60 English miles above the point opposite Bolobo we passed the Ikuba, or Likuba stream; and

1883.
Sept. 16.
Bolobo.

about 20 miles higher we saw a fine river, called by the guide the River of Bunga, about which he was very enthusiastic, describing its banks as being very populous, and the tribes as possessing an abundance of ivory and food. The people of Busaka, Ikuba, and Bunga, villages near the Congo, exploit this river in their search for ivory.

On the 22nd of September we arrived at Lukolela, where Mr. Glave, a young Englishman, was installed as chief of the new station, with a garrison of twenty-five men.

Lukolela station was located about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles above the uppermost village of the native community, in the forest, a hundred yards from the edge of the Congo. As the tall trees, ranging from 60 to 150 feet high, with clean, branchless stems for three-quarters of their gross height, were only from 10 to 30 feet apart, young Mr. Glave had a difficult work before him. We, therefore, placed the entire force at his disposal for a couple of days, to cut down the thin undergrowth and to clear some 50 square yards, so as to obtain room to construct a couple of native huts which we purchased for him as a temporary residence and magazine.

A little exploration I made through this forest, which is scarcely more difficult to penetrate than the Thiergarten of Berlin, enabled me to estimate the number of useful trees in the forest of Lukolela at 460,000, which, allowing only 40 cubic feet to the tree, would furnish over 18,000,000 cubic feet of timber. The plane-trees are numerous; they would furnish easily

workable planks for flat-boats, wooden steamers, tables, doors, flooring, rafters, window frames, &c.; while of the splendid teak might be formed keels, stem and stern-posts, decking, and the mahogany, red-wood, and guaiacum for furniture. A steam saw-mill might enable us to furnish all the timber needed for trading houses for generations out of this one forest. Though the timber is not scant in other parts of the Congo banks, it is the only part from the sea to Lukolela that a forest was found wherein there were so few useless trees.

1883.
Sept. 22.
Lukolela.

This magnificent crop of largest forest trees led us to suppose that this ground was extremely rich, but while planting the posts of Mr. Glave's huts, even the picks could make but little impression on the conglomerate of iron we found it to be. The trees had seemingly grown in hollow cavities in the ironstone filled with alluvium, and most of them were of vast girths and buttresses, the base expanding to an enormous circle with their roots. The major number tapered upward to an incredible height, with stems as smooth as a planed pine spar. Whatever the station may turn out to be, it is evident that months must elapse before its chief will be able to boast of a garden. Our young officer started on his work, not a whit daunted by the magnitude of the task before him.

We departed from Lukolela on the 25th of September. Miyongo and his family were on familiar terms with us by this time, and when the rain threatened to interrupt our voyage with its usual black storm-clouds, one of

1883.
Sept. 25.
Lukolela.

his men stood up and dared to brave the elements, and to compel them by his powerful charms to go and visit other countries. Upon which Miyongo observed that white men seemingly possessed all things save one, viz., a rain-charm to keep the rain away while travelling.

The next day we landed him and his family at Usindi, but in the faces of the hundreds who hurried forward to satisfy their curiosity I perceived no joy or gratitude for the service we had rendered. Had a European Prince been saved from such a distressful position as the one Miyongo had been extricated from, no doubt we should have been dined and toasted; but then this was Usindi, in Congoese Africa.

During our stay here we went through the ceremony of blood-brotherhood with Miyongo, which provoked the jealousy of Iuka. Iuka was also inclined to be surly because I had not delivered Miyongo into his hands, that he, as the senior chief of Usindi, might have had the honour of presenting him in turn to Miyongo's villagers. This occasioned a rhetorical artifice from me, which, by applying the case of Miyongo to Iuka himself, the old chief became convinced that he had no reasonable cause of offence. "Is Miyongo a slave of Iuka? Do his wives or his slaves belong to Iuka? Is not Miyongo a free man and a chief? How can Iuka claim authority over Miyongo? If Iuka was saved from the Balui pirates, or from the river, could Miyongo be displeased that Iuka was not delivered into his hands? No; neither

must Iuka be displeased that Miyongo, being a free man, could travel freely in his own country."

1883.
Sept. 26.
Usindi.

Iuka was a dirty old man, who was wickedly mean without being aware of it. Two hours after sunset he came to me in my cabin on the steamer, and gravely begged for a looking-glass with which he might discover all hostile designs against him. He then asked for a charm by which he could stop the rain from falling on the gardens and fields of the people he disliked; and was anxious for a medicine with which he could positively secure the fidelity of his queen! Iuka dreaded Miyongo evidently after the exhibition of his jealousy to him, and, after finding that I had no charms to give him to prevent the evil effects of it, he earnestly implored me to take himself and his community away to colonise some other part on the river.

On departing the next day from Usindi, Miyongo gave me a guide, who was reputed to have advanced higher up river than any man in the trading community of Usindi. He had belonged originally to Upoto, and had since often traded with Langa-Langa and Iboko.

We had been delayed too long at Bolobo to halt at Irebu for more than a few hours. About ten miles above Irebu we saw a few canoes belonging to the piratical Balui, who inhabit a district on the right bank, access to which is gained by means of numerous narrow branches of a delta of a river, bearing no other name than that of the tribe. Inland, a few miles from the Congo the Balui's River is said to be of considerable

1883.
Sept. 27.
Irebu.

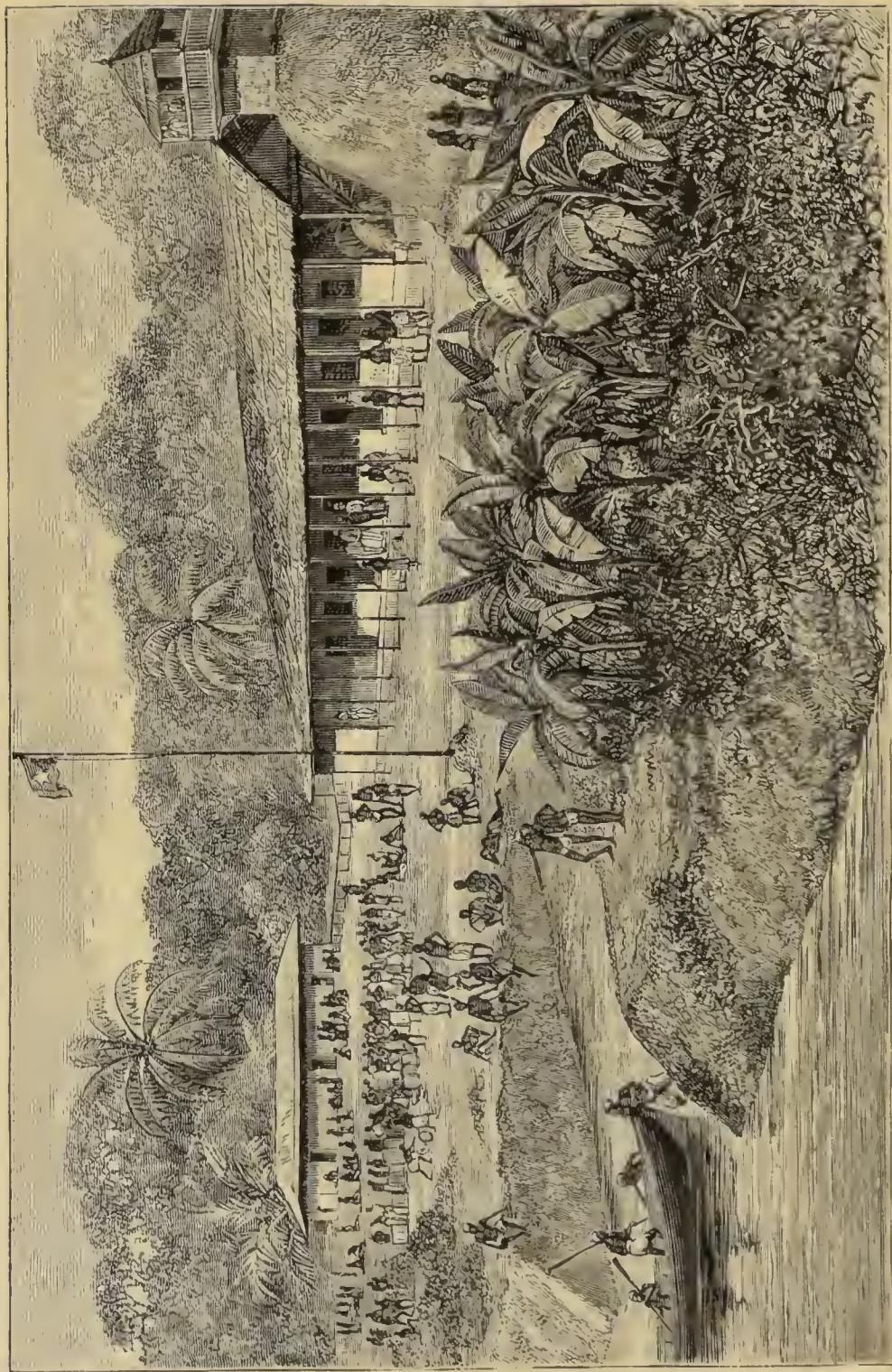
size and importance, perhaps between 300 and 400 yards wide. The Balui are a very daring people from all accounts, and their numerous piratical exploits have won for them great notoriety in that section of the Congo lying between Ngombé and Ikengo.

On the 29th of September the steam flotilla arrived off Equator Station, from which we had been absent one hundred days.



A NATIVE OF IBOKO.

No better illustration could be desired to exhibit the effect of industry inspired by good-will and zeal than Equator Station, as it was seen by us after this comparatively short absence. We had left it a jungle of worthless scrub; we returned to find an Equatorial hotel—commodious, comfortable, rain-proof, bullet-proof, burglar-proof, and almost fire-proof. In the domestic adornments and fittings, one might have imagined a lady had lent her skilful taste in the arrangement. The two young army lieutenants, after building the solid clay-house, had turned their attention



EQUATOR STATION.

1883.
Sept. 29.
Equator
Station.

to making window-frames, doors, tables, chairs, and stools, but, having no paint, blue and crimson baize, a few yards of gay print and white sheeting, had given a look of finish to the door, windows, and furniture; and, with native matting, the hotel presented a very complete and neat appearance without and within. An observatory, or *petite casino*, stood perched above an ant-hill, devoted to meditation, or to fond contemplation of their handiwork and industrious efforts. It was here they drew up their code of laws for the moral government of Equator Station, and the amelioration of the wild Bakuti, and here also they discussed on Sundays and rainy days plans for the sanitary improvement of their little town, and, like a Board of Public Works, sketched out what further duties lay before them.

Imitating their young chiefs, the coloured men had also developed singularly good faculties. Each of them had built for himself an impregnable clay hut, in the centre of a garden, wherein the Indian corn was already over six feet high; the sugar-cane was tall and thriving; plats of sweet potatoes carpeted with their leaves; while pumpkins, brinjalls, cucumbers, &c., &c., exhibited prodigious vitality.

Lieutenants Vangele and Coquilhat also possessed a garden of European vegetables, which supplied onions, raddish, carrots, beans, peas, parsley, lettuce, cress, beets, sweet potatoes, cabbage, &c., &c., for their soups and salads daily. There were also a large kitchen, servants' hall, goat park, and fowl-houses. Their

1883.
Sept. 29,
Equator
Station.

goats gave them fresh milk, and their hens produced a supply of eggs.

Thus for the first time I saw the realisation of my favourite ideal of a Congo station. Here was a well-governed community of soldier-labourers, impregnable and unassailable by its discipline, and the mutual dependence of one upon another; the chiefs cool-headed, zealous, and prudent, but not too militarily stiff to chill the advances of the aborigines. They possessed sufficient *bonhomie* to be appreciated for their cordiality, yet just distant enough to repress vulgar familiarity and prevent infraction of the social distinctions that must ever exist between educated intelligence, governed by Christian morality, and unsophisticated barbarism, too light-minded even to become the slaves to savage passion, or the partisans in factious strife among the natives.

Ikengé, the chief, a young bull-necked savage, had caused trouble through a determined misapprehension of the purpose of this station in his neighbourhood. After my departure he had developed an over-weening ambition, a desire to be hurriedly rich, by slaughtering every man to whom he bore ill-will and seizing his possessions. He had conceived that our friendship meant an alliance offensive and defensive, which might have carried us, by his vaulting spirit and daring schemes, to unlimited aggression. He had provoked two wars, out of which he had emerged weakened in strength, and well hated by his neighbours for his growing insolence. He had grown rather dishonest

also, for he had repudiated certain purchases of trees and bananas that were in the little territory ceded to us by him.

1883.
Sept. 29
Equator
Station.

However, through Heliwa his chief slave, who had visited Léopoldville with us, and had been brought back enriched by his voyage, and with his memory weighted with things he had seen, and on which he could moralise, every question was settled in a few days. Thus over the populations of Buriki, Iyambo, Wangata, Molira, Mukuli, Ikengo and Inganda and the garrison of Equator Station, an Arcadian harmony and concord held its sway.

On the 11th of October, I indited the following in my diary :—

“Equator Station is certainly a happy one, not so situated with regard to view as it might be ; but with that sole exception, many other requisites necessary for well-being are in perfection. We have abundance of food, obtained very cheaply, and the prices are now so established to every one’s content, that there is nothing left to complain of. We have apparently friendly and devoted neighbours. Brinjalls, bananas, plantains, sweet cassava, potatoes, yams, Indian-corn, eggs, poultry, goats, sheep, the native productions assisted by vegetables of Europe, flourishing in the gardens, with tea, coffee, sugar, butter, lard, rice, and wheat-flour from Europe, afford a sufficient variety for a sumptuous *ménu*. I have enjoyed puddings every day here, and among other accomplishments of Lieutenants Vangele and Coquilhat, not the least useful is that of knowing

1883. how to cook, and how food should be prepared.
October 11. We have sufficient acreage near the station to be
Equator able, if necessary, to feed everybody abundantly. The
Station. climate is healthy also, though they have such moist
weathers here, and the ground is so astonishingly rich
that one would have thought that fever would be
prevalent, yet our officers have been already four
months at Wangata without experiencing one hour's
indisposition."

CHAPTER XXVIII.

TO THE ARUWIMI OR BIYERRÉ.

Equipping for a long voyage—The Lulungu river—Bolombo—Bangala the terrible—Stirring memories—Boleko the chief—"Stop thief!"—Mata Bwyki—A modern Hereules—"Is this Tandelay?"—Uncomfortable moments—The appeal of Yumbila—"Bula Matari and Mata Bwyki are one to-day!"—Luxuriant tropical scenes—Immense forest wealth—Unsheltered in a storm—Deserted districts—Nganza—Old Rubunga—Langa-Langa women—The currency changing—Ndobo—Oyster-shells a sign of former population—Bumba and the chief Myombi—The dreaded Ibanza—A trick with a tiger's skin—Yambinga—Itimbiri river—Yalulima armourers—Hostile natives—War canoes on the look out—The Aruwimi—Mokulu—An effective salutation—"Bravo, Yumbila!"

OUR work of founding stations, many of which, if the future were favourable to our designs, would grow into cities, had carried us well towards the heart of Africa, for Equator Station was 757 English miles from the sea, and 412 miles above Léopoldville. In response to earnest wishes from Brussels, I was now about to steam up the Congo some 600 miles further, to found a settlement at Stanley Falls, and endeavour to make verbal treaties with the more populous settlements on either bank as I voyaged upward, leaving to a future occasion the permanent establishment of stations. The Committee

1883.
October 12.
Equator
Station.

1883.
October 12.
Equator
Station.

had also nominated a person for the command at Stanley Falls; thus our poor young friend Lieutenant Coquilhat, after bravely working at Equator station awaiting his opportunity to be located at Bangala station, now saw himself, to his great disappointment, obliged to wait until I could return from the Falls.

We had prepared for this long voyage 1600 lbs. of corn and cassava flour, and had purchased 500 dried fish from the Bakuti. Our live stock consisted of three goats, three sheep, and thirty fowls, which were of course for the five Europeans on board, as well as a large store of plantains, ripe bananas, yams, sweet potatoes, and a dozen cases of Crosse and Blackwell's best tinned provisions. A full case of Cognac was distributed among four whites; besides a five-gallon demijohn of red Portuguese wine. In fact, limited as was the carrying capacity of the steamers, the five Europeans and sixty-eight coloured men on board were as well victualled and equipped at Equator station as a British division of soldiers might be at Chatham, Woolwich, or Portsmouth.

On the 16th of October the flotilla started up the channel leading to Uranga and the Lulungu River. We steamed ten hours. It was fine when we departed from the Equator; but at two o'clock the sky became overcast, and thunder rolled, but finally the atmosphere cleared again without rain. At noon we were in N. Lat. $0^{\circ} 9'$. As we ascended nearly due north, our night's camp was probably in N. Lat. $0^{\circ} 18'$.

Following the Uranga channel, we came to the main

channel, and crossed over to the left bank. A few hours after we came to the Ikelemba, a comparatively small river about 150 yards wide, the colour of its waters being inky. Clinging closely to the left bank, we arrived opposite Uranga at one o'clock on the 17th. This populous community is pleasantly located on an elevated triangle of land to the left of the confluence of the Lulungu affluent and the Congo, commanding an extensive view up and down the Congo and up the Lulungu.

1883.
October 17.
Uranga.

The latter river rather disappointed me, because the natives had usually spoken of it as being a "large" river. We ascended it for about three miles to obtain an idea of its average breadth. I should judge it to be about 550 yards wide; but the aborigines informed us that one could ascend it a month's journey in canoes, and that the populousness of its banks is much superior to any part of the Congo. It is larger even than the Mohindu they say. Higher up than the point we reached, the Lulungu may be wider than the Mohindu; but I doubt it being of greater volume. From all I have gathered and personally seen, it appears to me that there must be a connection between the Lulungu, Ikelemba, and Mohindu, but of what character it would be difficult to say. They are all equally black, and their courses are parallel and equi-distant from each other. The country is very flat though densely wooded, and it is quite possible that there may be channels inland connecting the rivers. I would also include Mantumba,

1883.
October 17.
Uranga.

and the Lukanga. Indeed, if I understood rightly, the natives of Irebu spoke as though it were possible to travel from the Lukanga to the Mohindu or Buruki. It is rash, however, to place too much reliance upon these native statements, though it would not at all surprise me to learn some day that a few days' journey inland on either the Mohindu or Lulungu there was a labyrinthine system of liquid channels through a low jungly forest, connecting the three rivers Ikelemba, Lulungu, and Mohindu. A short journey up the Ikelemba, we find the stream nearly impassable to row-boats by the wide overhanging branches stretching from either bank. Canoes, however, travel far inland, if their crews are known to the aborigines, who seem to be too free with their arrows. We experienced this disposition of the aborigines on the Mohindu to make it credible that on the Ikelemba they are equally averse to strangers. The Congo tribes are civilised compared to the natives dwelling on the banks of the affluents.

The natives of Uranga came out breathlessly and eagerly in their canoes with friendly hails; but except returning their greetings, and maintaining a running fire of compliments and amenities, according to the custom of warm friends, we could do no more, as our journey would be protracted indefinitely if we stayed at every populated district we saw.

Ascending the Lulungu a few miles, we turned up a narrow channel connected with the Congo. The latter river being bank-full, the shore and islands were flooded, though here and there the mainland

showed places where the water had yet to rise two feet before overflowing, which no doubt it would if the watermarks on the trees are to be trusted. A furious squall of wind and rain compelled us to seek an early camp.

1883.
October 17.
Uranga.

On the 19th we travelled all day along a forested mainland, with palmy islets on our left, until, camping a few miles below Bolombo, trading canoes bound down river told us that Iboko was anxious to see us, the Bangala having already heard of our coming.

The next day we stopped at Bolombo in N. lat. $1^{\circ} 23'$ —forty-three hours' steaming above Equator station. I made a verbal treaty and blood-brotherhood with the chiefs, but there was a famine in Bolombo, and the gifts were poor and scant. The people, however, were very amiable, and as amicably inclined as any we had met.

On the 21st of October, four hours above Bolombo, I found myself at last in view of the Bangala—the terrible fighters who pressed so hard upon us in 1877. The country of the Bangala is called Iboko, though I did not know it then. I have been told that they remember the fight well, but rumour has varied greatly as to their intentions. Some have told us that they have vowed that if ever the Ibanza returns, they will dispute every inch of the waterway with him. Mangombo of Irebu told me that the lesson was so severe that the Bangala had received, that I need only “shake a stick at them.” However the negotiations might end, it cannot be denied that I felt some anxiety as the flotilla

1883.
October 21.
Iboko.

steamed from amongst the islands in view of Iboko, whose multitudes pouring out over the river to war I had no wish to see again. At the same time we could not, while professing claims to manhood, for ever stop in dread of the danger.

They were slow to make their appearance, those terrible Bangala. Not a drum nor horn was sounded to raise the alarm of war. Under the pendent green banana fronds on the banks the aborigines seemed to be gathered in idle crowds, as though they had no concern with us, even as though a flotilla of smoke-boats was an everyday occurrence to the tribe of Iboko. We were approaching the first projecting point up the shore—which I remembered very well as a place whence the real fury of the battle in 1877 was met by us—when three canoes dashed out with something of *élan* in their movement. I detached the *En Avant* from the flotilla and went out to meet them, Miyongo's guide taking position on the cabin deck.

“Who are you?” was shouted.

“Bula Matari; come to see Mata Bwyki” (lord of many guns).

“Ah—h—h! Mata Bwyki is not at home; he is gone a-fishing.”

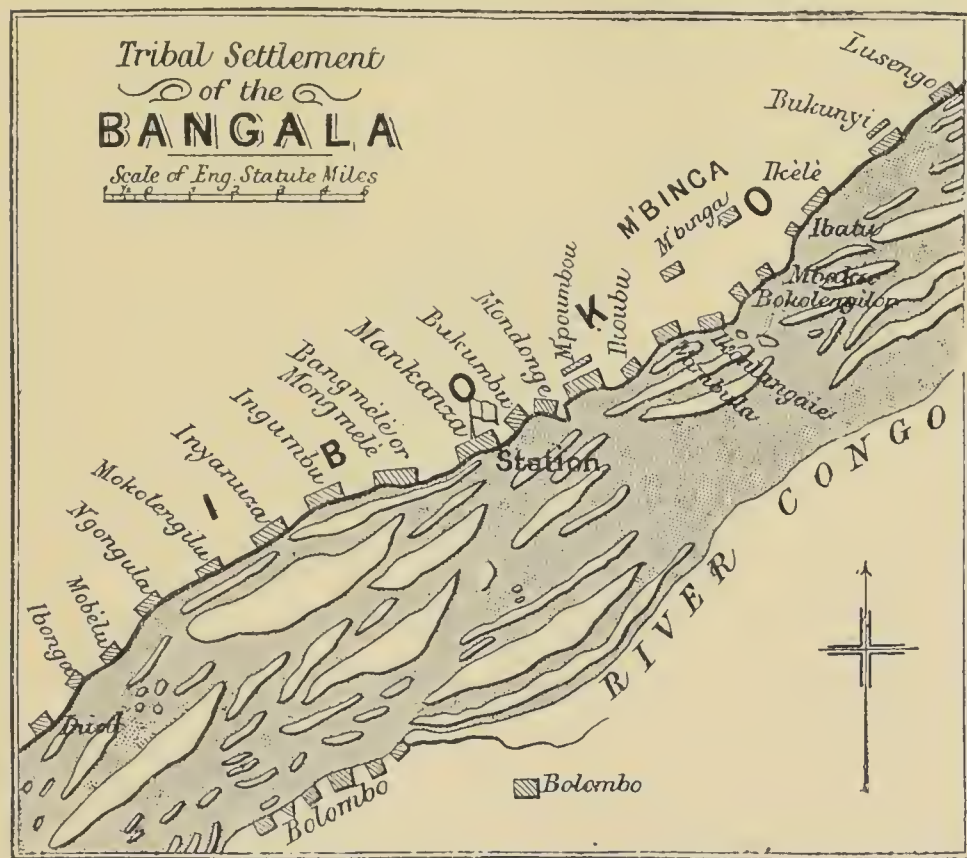
“Is Boleko at home, then? I am the slave of his brother Miyongo of Irebu.”

“Yes; he is in his village.”

This was all. They had no more to say, and we passed on. They returned to the shore, and in an incredibly short time all Iboko seemed to know that

1883.
October 21.
Iboko.

the curious smoke-boats contained friends, and great and small canoes darted out from the shore to bear us company, until the number of them was absolutely oppressive. How many scores of canoes were out upon the water, ahead, on either side, and astern, we could not begin to estimate. Almost anything answered the purpose for a canoe—from the mere dough troughs of



PLAN OF THE BANGALA SETTLEMENTS.

bakers to the crocodile-snouted war-canoe impelled by forty stout muscular fellows, who sent her skimming gaily past the steamer.

Some idea of this immense settlement may be gained when I state that at noon we were abreast of its lower extremity, and at five o'clock we were still two hours

1883.
October 21.
Iboko.

from its upper end, though we had been steadily steaming. In 1877, while gently paddling with the current, it had occupied us five and a half hours. The guide indicated to us Boleko's village, and also Mata Bwyki's; but we chose a dismal and dank camp on an islet opposite the former, the channel between being about 500 yards across. Yumbila, the guide, departed to see Boleko quite unconcernedly, leaving us to be gazed at until sunset by a thousand of the Bangala.

I could not help wondering in my mind what they thought of the "Ibanza" who had passed through their ranks in 1877, amid so much flame and smoke.

In form they were a fine people that we regarded—broad of shoulder, large-muscled, grandly full in the chest, slender-waisted, of rather tall height, to whom life on the river, by the easy manner of their carriage in the generally cranky canoes, must have been an every-day existence. While there were some of them of very black complexion, the majority of them were light bronze, and there were several light as Arabs in complexion.

Yumbila returned at sunset with the chief Boleko, who was a young man of about twenty-five, of powerful build. Though he was cordial in manner, and offered to introduce me to Mata Bwyki, who would no doubt do all that was in his power to satisfy my wishes, I observed that the young man was furtive-eyed—almost what one may call thievish in look. His hair was dressed in the usual Kiyanzi style, the marks on the face being slight incisions over the upper part of each

cheek, while the centre of the forehead was distinguished by three fleshy lumps. This I learned afterwards to be the special tribal marks of the Bangala.

1883.
October 21
Iboko.

After a night spent in indescribable discomfort on the islet, Boleko came to us early in the morning to introduce us to his own village, forty canoes serving as an escort of honour to the flotilla.

What struck me on entering the creek, on the banks of which Boleko's village was situate, was that this was the same creek whence issued the first hostile canoes that attacked me in 1877, and which I took to



ONE OF THE BANGALA.

be an affluent of the Congo, whereas it is a narrow channel, separated by a large and fertile island from the main right branch. It affords a capital harbour for canoes and boats in bad weather on account of the reeds, which arrest the movement of the canoes, protecting them from being floated down by the current.

At Boleko's landing-place trading began in a most lively manner, as provisions were unusually cheap. Six eggs were sold for four cowries; ten rolls of cassava bread for a brass rod; a large fowl fetched

1883.
October 21.
Iboko.

only one brass rod; a goat cost only ten or twelve rods = 6s.; one mat, five feet square, of palm-leaves, was worth only one rod, while a large one made of split rattan fetched only three; sweet potatoes, yams, and bananas were so cheap that a day's ration purchased enough to last five days.

Word came from Mata Bwyki in the course of the day. He was inclined to be jealous that a boy like Boleko should dare to take his guest to himself; but Ndinga, chief of Bolombo, soothed his irritation, and an invitation was at last given to the flotilla to lie alongside of Mata Bwyki's shore on the morrow.

Warning at sunset was shouted to the crews of the steamers to keep strict watch; but the night was nevertheless disturbed with a series of cries, such as "Stop thief!" "Oh, my cloth has gone!" "Some one has stolen my knife!" &c., &c.; and there were few messes by morning which had not to bewail the loss of some valuable property, so expert and adroit were the thieves, and so very unaccustomed were our people to this kind of wholesale spoliation.

On the 23rd we dropped down river about two miles, and lay up at Mata Bwyki's landing-place. Close by the waterside, on land, were numerous pits of stagnant water, rank with the poison exhaled from the black pits, where the bitter cassava lay decomposing. An equal number of cesspools could not have tainted the air with more abominable odours. In the river were several circular fences, where the cassava was left to soak and decompose, but which were sweetened by

the constantly-flowing water. Like all other riverine tribes, the Bangala keep their canoes constantly submerged, to ensure the longer preservation of them. Under the keels of our steamers we could see faint outlines of several.

1883.
October 23.
Iboko.

The senior chief, Mata Bwyki (lord of many guns), was an old grey-haired man, of Herculean stature and breadth of shoulder, with a large square face and an altogether massive head, out of which his solitary eye seemed to glare with penetrative power. I should judge him to be 6 feet 2 inches in height. He had a strong sonorous voice, which, when lifted to speak to his tribe, was heard clearly several hundred yards off. He was now probably between seventy-five and eighty years old. His skin hung about his bones in many wrinkles, but with his nine foot-long staff, that was but a shade less heavy than a dingy's mast, he walked with an upright carriage, but when leaning on that mighty staff he straightened his stalwart body and pitched that stentorian voice of his over the heads of the hundreds of Bangala, one might see that the grand old man had still a fund of vigour in him. He was not the tallest man, nor the best looking, nor the sweetest-dispositioned man I had met in all Africa; but if the completeness and perfection of the human figure, combining size with strength, and proportion of body, limbs, and head, with an expression of power in the face, be considered, he must have been at one time the grandest type of physical manhood to be found in equatorial Africa. As he stood before us on this day, we thought

1883.
October 23.
Iboko.

of him as an ancient Milo, an aged Hercules, an old Samson—a really grand-looking old man. At his side were seven tall sons, by different mothers, and although they were stalwart men and boys, the whitened crown of Mata Bwyki's head rose by a couple of inches above the highest head. Kokoro, his eldest son, was beginning to show grey hairs, and he had three sons, tall youths, over twenty years old, besides a few chubby-faced young rogues.

Considering the depth and length of the curved line of humanity that stood on the shore expecting us, I should estimate the number of people present at about 1700, old and young.

A place for welcoming with due ceremony was prepared in a street in the village, just fifty yards from the steamers. Mats of split rattan were spread in a large semicircle around a row of curved and box stools, for the principal chiefs. In the centre of the line, opposite this, was left a space for myself and people.

We were invited on shore to the assembly place. The concourse was so dense that the atmosphere was stifling. We had first to undergo the process of steady and silent examination from nearly two thousand pairs of eyes. Then, after Yumbila, the guide, had detailed in his own manner who we were, and what was our mission up the great river; how we had built towns at many places, and made blood brotherhood with the chiefs of great districts, such as Irebu, Ukuti, Usindi, Ngombé, Lukolela, Bolobo, Mswata, and Kintamo, he

urged upon them the pleasure it would be to me to make a like compact, sealed with blood, with the great chiefs of populous Iboko. He pictured the benefits likely to accrue to Iboko, and Mata Bwyki in particular, if a bond of brotherhood was made between two chiefs like Mata Bwyki and Tandelay, or, as he was known, Bula Matari.

1883.
October 23.
Iboko.

Then a hoarse murmur was heard through the crowd, and Mata Bwyki's deep voice was heard asking :

"Is this Tandelay?"

"Yes."

For a moment I regretted that I had placed myself, with such unbounded self-confidence, so completely in their power, as I heard my name mentioned, and noted the effect of it upon the overwhelmingly large multitude. I was, however, quickly relieved when I remembered that Africans cannot act in unison with one another unless they are led by some leader. I was only waiting to hear that leader's angry, stormy, denunciative tones to spring out to the boat and begin a combat, for which my cabin contained arms in perfect order. My followers all knew that we were among the warlike Bangala, and I was well aware that every European in the flotilla needed only to hear the alarm-bell of the *En Avant* to drop his listless manner and affected blandness, and assume a fighting mien with the dangerous breechloader in his hands.

The leader, however, was mute, and I found myself feeling decidedly unpleasant under this concentrated gaze, ignorant as I was of the language of Iboko.

1883.
October 23,
Iboko.

Could I but have spoken their dialect! I have often thought since what an opportunity for a moral lesson was lost by this. It was perhaps fortunate that I did not.

Yumbila continued in better form than I could possibly have done. His desire to please soothed and moderated whatever passions might have lain near the surface of this comparative silence. He described how I had saved Irebu from mutual destruction, how the flag was borne through the ranks of the combatants, and how its bearer passed on unscathed and unhurt. He described my victorious action with regard to Mi-yongo, how I had saved him from the island, fed and clothed him, and restored him to his home with a store of wealth. The war at Bolobo I heard touched upon also; his gestures, descriptive of the cannon thundering and shooting its huge ball across the wide river, were remarkably effective, and when he dilated upon the rich things which were hidden in the house on the big steamer, on the stores of murderous weapons, with their quick man and beast slaying properties, and the "bub-bub" of their sound, my safety, if danger had existed, which I strongly suspect it did, was secured, and from Tandelay—the dreaded Ibanza who had inflicted defeat on them in 1877—emerged the form of the genial, world-loving, peace-making, fraternal Bula Matari! Oh, what a comedy it all was, could it but be written fairly, and with reasonable truth!

A forked palm branch was brought. Kokoro, the

heir, came forward, seized it, and kneeled before me, as drawing out his short falchion, he cried, "Hold the other branch, Bula Matari!" I obeyed him, and lifting his hand he cleaved the branch in two. "Thus," he said, "I declare my wish to be your brother."

1883.
October 23.
Iboko.

Then a fetish-man came forward with his lancets, long pod, pinch of salt, and fresh green banana leaf. He held the staff of Kokoro's sword-bladed spear while one of my rifles was brought from the steamer. The shaft of the spear and the stock of the rifle were then scraped on the leaf, a pinch of salt was dropped on the wood, and finally a little dust from the long pod was scraped on the curious mixture. Then our arms were crossed—the white arm over the brown arm—and an incision was made in each; and over the blood was dropped a few grains of the dusty compound, and the white arm was rubbed over the brown arm.

Now Mata Bwyki lifted his mighty form, and with his long giant's staff drove back the compressed crowd, clearing a wide circle, and then roaring out in his most magnificent style, leonine in its lung-force, kingly in its effect—

"People of Iboko! You by the river side, and you of inland. Men of the Bangala, listen to the words of Mata Bwyki. You see Tandelay before you. His other name is Bula Matari. He is the man with the many canoes, and has brought back strange smoke-boats. He has come to see Mata Bwyki. He has asked Mata Bwyki to be his friend. Mata Bwyki has taken him by the hand and has become his blood-brother. Tandelay

1883.
October 23,
Iboko.

belongs to Iboko now. He has become this day one of the Bangala. Oh! Iboko, listen to the voice of Mata Bwyki." (I thought they must have been incurably deaf not to have heard that voice.)

"Bula Matari and Mata Bwyki are one to-day. We have joined hands. Hurt not Bula Matari's people; steal not from them, offend them not. Bring your produce and barter with him. Bring food and sell to him at a fair price, gently, kindly, and in peace, for he is my brother. Hear you, ye people of Iboko!—you by the river side, and you of the interior?"

"We hear, Mata Bwyki!" shouted the multitude.

The rest of the day was spent in obtaining a promise that I should build a station among the Bangala. An entire village of huts and palms and banana-groves was to be sold to me, but I deferred the purchase until I could bring up Lieutenant Coquillat and his men. Meantime I explained to them that on this occasion I had merely come to reconnoitre, and after examining Langa-Langa, I should return and call on them as I descended towards the equator. We exchanged liberal presents with Mata Bwyki, and our companions imitated our example. The ceremony of blood-brotherhood was performed several times over, with the sons and nephews of the patriarchal old chief.

On the 25th we continued our journey up river, and struck over to the left bank by the first channel we discovered. It was no easy task, however, to do this, as the islets were so long and so numerous, that we did

not finally reach the left bank until we had steamed for thirteen hours.

1883,
October 25,
Iboko.

For purely tropical scenes, I commend the verdurously rich isles in mid-Congo, between Iboko on the right bank, and Mutembo on the left bank, with the intricate and recurrent river channels meandering between. There the rich verdure reflects the brightness of the intense sunshine in glistening velvet sheen from frond and leaf. The underwood presents varied colours, with their tufted tops or the climbing serpentine form of the lianes, and their viny leaves. Each and all have their own separate and particular beauties of colouring that renders description impossible. At all times I believe the same refreshing gladness and vigour of tropical nature may be observed about this latitude. Some of the smallest islets seemed to be all aflame with crimson colouring, while the purple of the ipomæa, and the gold and white of the jasmine and mimosa flowered, bloomed and diffused a sweet fragrance. Untainted by the marring hand of man, or by his rude and sacrilegious presence, these isles, blooming thus in their beautiful native innocence and grace, approached in aspect as near Eden's loveliness as anything I shall ever see on this side of Paradise. They are blessed with a celestial bounty of florid and leafy beauty, a fulness of vegetable life that cannot possibly be matched elsewhere save where soil with warm and abundant moisture and gracious sunshine are equally to be found in the same perfection. Not mere things of beauty alone were these isles. The

1833.
October 25.
Iboko.

palms were perpetual fountains of a sweet juice, which when effervescing affords delight and pleasure to man. The golden nuts of other trees furnishes rich yellow fat, good enough for the kitchen of an epicure, when fresh. On the coast these are esteemed as an article of commerce. The luxuriant and endless lengths of calamus are useful for flooring and verandah mats, for sun-screens on river voyages, for temporary shelters on some open river terrace frequented by fishermen, for fish-nets and traps, for field baskets, market hampers, and a host of other useful articles, but more especially for the construction of neat and strong houses, and fancy lattice-work. Such are the strong cord-like creepers which hang in festoons and wind circuitously upward along the trunk of that sturdy tree. The pale white blossom which we see is the caoutchouc plant, of great value to commerce, and which some of these days will be industriously hunted by the natives of Iboko and Bolombo. For the enterprising trader, there is a ficus, with fleshy green leaves; its bark is good for native cloth, and its soft, spongy fibre will be of some use in the future for the manufacture of paper. Look at the various palms crowding upon one another. Their fibres, prepared by the dexterous natives of Bangala, will make the stoutest hawsers, the strength of which neither hemp, Manilla fibre, nor jute can match; it is as superior to ordinary cord threads as silk is to cotton. See that soft pale-green moss draping those tree-tops like a veil. That is the Orchilla weed from which a valuable dye is

extracted. I need not speak of the woods, for the tall dark forests that meet the eye on bank and isle seem to have no end. We burn specimens of their timber every day; and engineers may be frequently seen admiring its colour and veining, and inhaling the fragrance of the gum. We are banqueting on such sights and odours that few would believe could exist. We are like children ignorantly playing with diamonds. Such is the wealth of colours revealed every new moment to us already jaded with the gorgeousness of the tropic world. Rarities and treasures of vegetable life are passed by us continuously; we can do nothing with them, our mission at this time being to hunt up the human denizens, to experiment on human nature.

1883.
October 25
Iboko.

Whatever interest we may profess, after all, in this many-hued splendour of the tropic bush, in the variegated beauty and overflowing vegetable life on these river isles, or the bountiful wealth of the Congo forests, it is but secondary to that which one must feel for the human communities, the muscles of whose members have a more immediate and practical value to us. For without these the flowers, the plants, the gums, the moss, and the dye weeds of the tropical world must ever remain worthless to them and to ourselves. In every cordial-faced aborigine whom I meet I see a promise of assistance to me in the redemption of himself from the state of unproductiveness in which he at present lives. I look upon him with much of the same regard that an agriculturist views his strong-limbed child; he is a future recruit to the ranks of soldier-

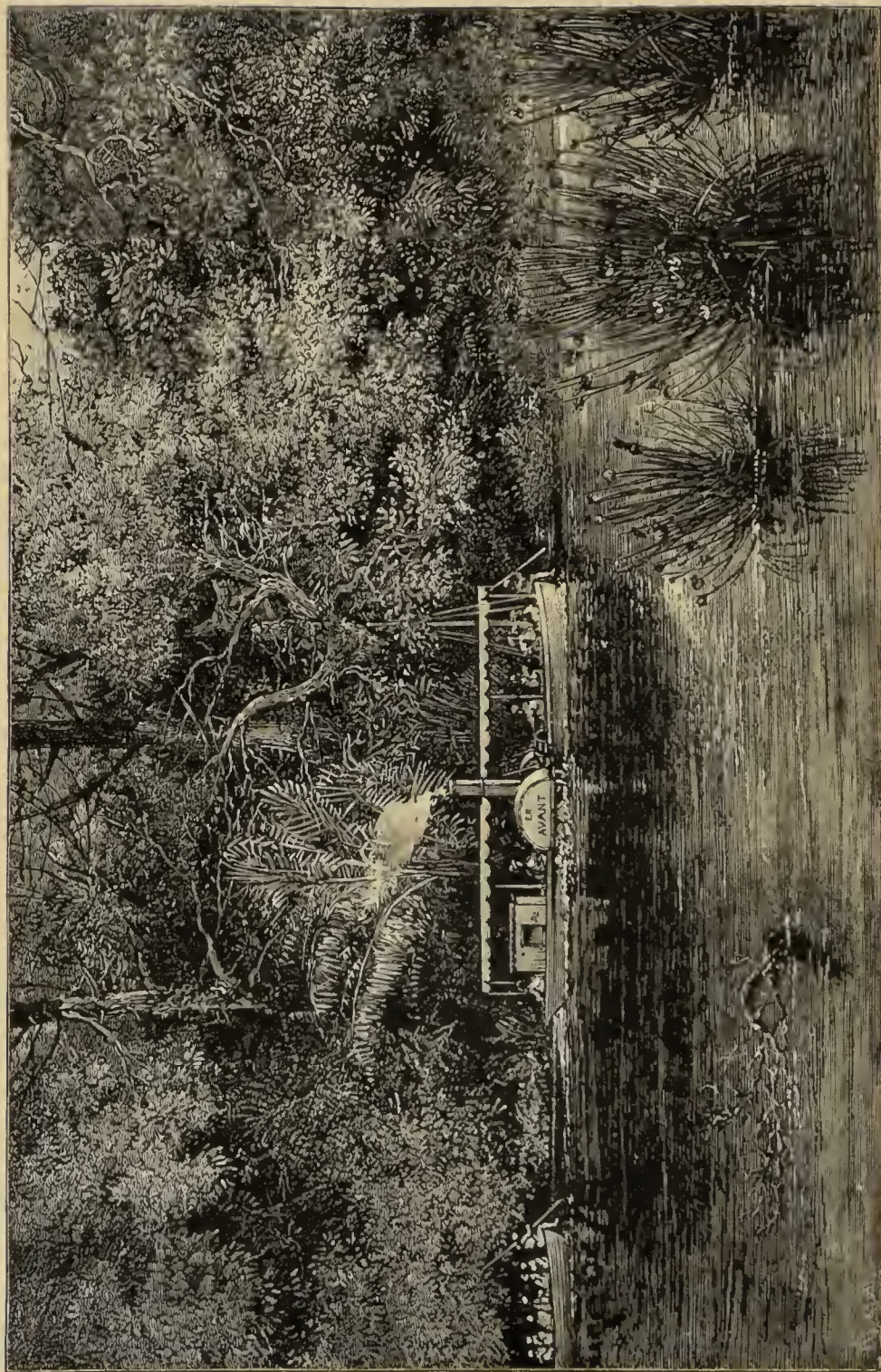
1883.
October 25.
Mutembo.

labourers. The Congo basin, could I have but enough of his class, would become a vast productive garden. That is one reason why I always search sharply for cordiality of demeanour, a certain frankness of expression, from which I can extract hope for the future. I mentally review the faces thus seen, and say to myself, "You are shy and strange now, my friend, but worse looking fellows than you have been made useful to themselves and the world. A few more trips, and you would go anywhere with me." I fancy sometimes the fellows seem to read my thoughts, and smile encouragingly upon me, as though they would say in vulgar idiom, "You are right, my boy, but bye and bye."

Near Mutembo a trading canoe was met descending the river. We forgot all about the isles of Eden, where we had been feasting royally on the perfume of flowers and blossoms, to talk with its crew. They belonged to Iboko. Rumour had reached them, with its tale of my brotherhood with old Mata Bwyki. We traded with them in eatables, and gossiped, like friends, of auld lang syne, amid lively chaff and laughter. They had eleven large tusks of ivory, but that was an article we did not want, much to their surprise.

Before arriving at Mutembo, however, we came to the end of the long island that winds parallel with the left bank, and prevented us from viewing Ukumbi and its chief Ibombo. From all accounts, this settlement must be exceedingly enterprising, but inferior to Iboko in wealth, strength, and numbers.

It had been a beautiful day, bright as a Mediterra-



THE BANKS OF THE UPPER CONGO.

nean summer day, but about camping time the low westering sun became quickly obscured, and the clouds seemed advancing from the north-west, north, and north-east with startling rapidity towards the zenith. Looking behind at the south, we saw rank after rank of voluminous cloud rising as though to meet them. We had often seen similar features in the sky towards sunset, but on this day there was an ominous depth of blackness to attract our attention. Still, we could find no place for shelter, the impervious bush sloped from under the overhanging boughs of the forest monarchs down to the river surface with an impenetrable closeness that would resist the sharp nose of a crocodile. We were in a channel two hundred yards wide, walled in by a bank of vegetation that rose 150 feet high. Two lofty fortress walls could not have been more inhospitable to us. Therefore, while the skies warned us to shelter, the shores on either side positively refused it. The zenith became finally overcast and gloomy, but the northern sky changed its hue to an ashy grey, wherein the tempest brooded. Through some invisible influence, the river's face became unruffled, the tiniest leaf hung still, the tallest reed stood straight, as though "attention" had been ordered, and Nature had stiffened into a petrified stillness. Only for a few minutes, however, for presently there was a simultaneousness of movement. All the millions of leaves in the forests were started into a violent rustling. Millions of others came sailing down before the blast of the tempest, and millions of wave-

1883.
October 25.
Mutembo.

1883.
October 25.
Mutembo.

lets broke over the face of the channel, seeming to race in company with the leaves. The tall trees, the bombax, and copal and palm, streamed, ragged and frayed, while the forests set up a fearful groaning and creaking, almost human in its agony of resistance. We had no time to note further, for the tempest bore down on us with such overwhelming, overpowering force, that our flotilla was driven down stream, despite the strenuous resistance steam opposed to it. We were perforce compelled to edge away to the shore, to the bushes of which we grappled with our boat-hooks, and waited tremblingly and chillily while the rain-squall drowned the scene in spray and water. From my cabin door I saw the river's face covered with rebounding jets, which seemed to spring up a foot high, so forcefully did the fierce rain scourge its late calm face. The rollers surged against us, and for a short time we appeared to be tossing heavily in an angry sea. Fortunately, before dark the rain ceased, and we were enabled to find a hole in the bush walls, through which the crew climbed in one after another to make the hawser fast; but it was too late to search for fuel.

A couple of hours' hard work next morning provided us with sufficient wood to last eight hours, and we continued our journey. Mutembo and Ineme, places which distinguished themselves in 1877 by coming out in battle array against us, and then firing on us after we had passed their villages, we discovered to have been deserted for several months. We then came opposite to

1883.
October 26.
Ukata-
kura.

what we formerly considered to be the mouth of the Sankuru River, but which Yumbila, our guide, declared to be merely a channel. We ascended by it, since we did not wish to lose sight of the left bank. Here we discovered that a valuable forest of gum copal trees commenced, the tops of which were draped with orchilla weed. A general burst of admiration broke out from the lips of the Zanzibaris, who were heard to exclaim :

“ Ah, friends, this is a rich country ! Copal below, and enough orchilla to make many fortunes on the top. There is nothing like this in our country. And just look at the rubber bush ! ”

During the whole of the 27th we passed by one continuous copal forest, covered thickly with the precious dye-weed.

On the 28th we came to lower Ukatakura, which was also deserted, and, a little above the clearing, arrived at the mouth of a creek about ten yards wide, said by the guide to issue from the Lulungu ! Upper Ukatakura, also deserted, was passed at 4 P.M., and on the banks of another narrow creek just above, issuing from the interior, we camped.

The orchilla-covered forest continued nearly all day in view on the 29th. On our right the islands became shorter and more complicated. The river was nearly bank-full now, but still rising ; in many places it had already broken over the low banks and entered the forest, and the highest portion uninundated was not more than 6 inches above the face of the river. This

1883.
October 30.
Mpaki-
wana.

was evidently a good reason why there was so much unoccupied territory in this direction.

Yumbila, the guide, believed that the people of Ineme, Mutembo, and Ukatakura must have been driven away from their country by the warriors of Ubika, who live on the right bank.

On the 30th, also, the copal-tree forest continued, with its drapery of dye-weed. In the afternoon we passed the deserted settlements of Mpakiwana.

Early on the morning of the 31st we had to lay-by for another squall, for about an hour, and then continuing our voyage, we came abreast of the palisaded village of Diya. Iringi, so well remembered for the absurd and treacherous attack its people made on us in 1877, was discovered at noon quite deserted. Ikingi, a tribe inland, had warred with the people of Iringi, and compelled them to settle at Umangi, on the right bank.

At three o'clock we were halted by some small rapids, and compelled to seek another channel. We were finally enabled to steam through deep water unobstructed to Mpa, ruled by Iunga, situate just one mile above the rapids, where we were received with the same amiability that distinguished their neighbours of Rubunga in 1877.

We had now arrived at a point 744 statute miles from Léopoldville, and about 500 miles of this distance had been traversed along low-forested banks of mainland and islands. But as soon as we came near the small rapids of Mpa, a wide diagonal stretch of river came into view, at the upper end of which rose the

beautiful hills of Upoto, suffused with the tender green colour of young grass, except at the lower slopes, where we saw extensive groves of bananas and fields of cassava.

1883.
Nov. 1.
Langa-
Langa.

On the next day we steamed up to the village of Nganza, lorded by old Rubunga. It had been moved slightly from the place we saw it five years before through some internecine squabble. We were not long in renewing our acquaintance with the old chief Rubunga, whose own village is several miles higher, and Makukuru, who remains master of New Nganza. As in the old time, Umangi, Mpissa, Ukeré, and Upoto from the right bank, and Mpa from the left bank, despatched their representatives with ivory tusks, large and small, goats and sheep, and vegetable food, clamorously demanding that we should buy from them: Such urgent entreaties accompanied with blandishments to purchase their stock were difficult to resist. The people had become firmly convinced that so many whites advancing from the quarter from which guns and powder, cloth, beads, and wire were known to issue could not have ventured so far except for that object. Therefore they would not for a considerable time understand a refusal. When at last they fully understood that we would not purchase ivory their disappointment was naturally very great, and yet they persisted in offering their elephant teeth at such ridiculously low prices, that it was no wonder the riverine tribes below felt vexed when they saw us pass by them to the far-famed Langa-Langa.

1883.
Nov. 1.
Langa-
Langa.

According to Yumbila, the populated districts hereabout are known to the Wyyanzi and Bangala as Langa-Langa (the upper country?). This is the El Dorado of native ivory buyers, probably from the unsophisticated aboriginalism of the clotheless and over-tattooed beings they met here.

Few of our crews believed that there were women of their colour who went about before men's eyes absolutely nude. Naked busts and limbs freely exposed were common, they were aware, through the exigencies of aboriginal life, but this unabashed nudity much astonished them.

A word must be uttered in extenuation of this shameless exposure of their persons by the women of Langa-Langa. Perceiving that cloth or other covering is unobtainable to screen their persons from the gaze of men, they have resorted to marring that comeliness of which they originally might have boasted by scarring their faces and busts. Or was it the jealousy of the men, who imagined this hideous device to shield their women from harm? However the folly, nay, crime, originated, it has served the purpose effectually, and the Langa-Langa people, by immolating that smoothness of outline of the face and velvety touch of the skin, have saved themselves from being enslaved. Strangely enough, the Langa-Langa people think the style of scarring their faces by thousands of little cuts, interspersed with huge tumorous blisters, to be beautifying; and Maka-kuru, having become my brother, earnestly implored me to give him the oppor-

tunity of exercising his skill in this novel art of personal adornment on my own face!

1883.
Nov. 1.
Langa-
Langa.

They have many more muskets at Langa-Langa than they owned in 1877. In that year they only possessed four, with no powder, but the Bangala have since then extended their influence, and now there may be probably a hundred guns on both banks of the river. Like other natives, even those near to the coast, the loud



NATIVE OF LANGA-LANGA.

startling roar of powder has a charm for them; and though they are not bold against Bangala and Irebu warriors, they are willing enough to frighten people in the interior who have not yet succeeded in obtaining the much prized musket.

The currency here changes. The whole piece (twenty-four yards) of domestics and stripes effectively served us as far as Manyanga. Blue glass beads be-

1883.
Nov. 1.
Langa-
Langa.

came then in demand as far as Iyumbi ridge; thence as far as Langa-Langa the brass rod or matako was the most convenient; but at Langa-Langa the masaro, or sofi, of Ujiji, known to Italians as Cannetone bead, very similar to half-inch pieces of pipe stem, white and black, comes into use with large cowries. Brass rods are slowly coming into favour, but the trader will regret being unprovided with the pipe stems. Cloth, however, will win the day here eventually. We were literally besieged for the very smallest refuse of clout-rag that we possessed. The store of bread, eggs, fowls, obtained for cast-off pieces of cotton dress, was most surprising, while two yards of bright red handkerchief purchased a fat goat.

The Langa-Langa natives have only lately learned that ivory is marketable. The visits of the Bangala to them have excited Mpa, Yakongo, Ikassa, on the left bank, and Umangi, Mpissa, Ukeré, Upoto, and Iringi on the right bank, to exploit the regions above them, in the same manner as they themselves are periodically visited by Iboko and Irebu.

From Nganza our course is eastward as we continue our voyage, and will continue so for about two degrees of longitude. Since leaving Léopoldville our course has been about north by east as far as the junction of the Kwa with the Congo, thence north for about 130 miles, thence about north by east as far as Iboko, thence east by north as far as Nganza.

On the 4th of November, clinging still to the left bank we passed after about eight miles steaming the

new village of Rubunga, called Yakongo ; at noon we were abreast of Ikassa in N. Lat. $2^{\circ} 1'$. The people were too timid to answer our hail, but at Yakongo, despite our friendship with old Rubunga, they seemed to have prepared for flight up a creek, the entrance to which had been palisaded to prevent our approach. I presume the men must have had cause to dread the acquaintance of strangers. The arrival of cloth, however, in greater abundance must undoubtedly seal effectually the virtue of the females.

1883.
Nov. 4.
Ndobo.

Getting out of the narrow channel running by Ikassa and Yakongo, we steamed across to the right bank to try our fortunes thence forward on that side.

On the 5th all traces of the hills of Upoto had vanished and we had the same flatness of ground again, but of a more habitable height above river, and the forests that rose in such towering walls of dark green vegetation, had been cleared in many places, although the inhabitants were wanting.

The next day, after passing several abandoned sites, we came to Ndobo, a very large and newly built village or town, laid in an uniform line of about a mile and a half in length. Immediately beyond rose Ibunda into view, whose people we found seated on the ground with their spears and offensive weapons alongside of each.

As these people had evidently but lately settled in the two towns, they were not remarkable for neatness in appearance. The lower half of some of the huts were of wattle and plastered over. Steep ladders strung

1883.
Nov. 5.
Ndobo.

along the upright clay bank, which was from 8 to 12 feet above the river, enabled the natives to step in and out of their canoes. Their dug-outs, though numerous, appeared to be small, and only adapted for fishing. Sloping roads had been carved out of the bank here and there to enable them to drag their vessels up to the safe level of their town, and to launch their new canoes, many of which we saw in process of construction.

It was in the neighbourhood of Ndobo we saw the first heap of oyster shells, which will no doubt long remain there in evidence of a former population.

Early on the 7th we arrived at Bumba, which in size was a real town. A fog had prevented us from seeing anything until we were close upon it. By the tranquillity of demeanour observed among the people we deemed it opportune to test their hospitality and friendliness, and succeeded in obtaining an invitation to go alongside the tall bank. Myombi, the chief, was easily persuaded by Yumbila to make blood-brotherhood with me, and for the fiftieth time my poor arm was scarified, and my blood shed for the cause of civilisation. Probably one thousand people of both sexes looked on the scene wonderingly and strangely. A young branch of a palm was cut, twisted and a knot tied at each end; the knots were dipped in wood ashes, and then seized and held by each of us while the medicine-man practised his blood-letting art, and lanced us both until Myombi winced with pain. After which the knotted branch was severed, and in some

incomprehensible manner I had become united for ever to my fiftieth brother, to whom I was under the obligation of defending against all foes until death.

1883.
Nov. 7.
Bumba.

Despite, however, these and sundry other precautions against imaginary evil, the people were not quite satisfied in their minds, for the dreaded Ibanza must be concealed, they thought, in our boats. What was it that they heard throb and sigh, and groan so heavily as the *En Avant* came alongside their landing place? They ranged themselves over and above the boats, lost in silent contemplation of the wonderful structures. Their thoughts struggling for utterance were perplexing them, and preventing the usual glib and noisy interchange of ideas. The problems they have to resolve are weighty and difficult, they know of nothing to which they can compare the medley of strange noises issuing from the huge iron pots which hiss incessantly. What unseen power was it that revolved the wheels they saw fly around with lightning speed? What does that iron drum contain? Why is that white cook throwing in such large sticks? Does the Ibanza eat wood? Is it the Ibanza cooped up in the iron drum who makes that squeaking noise escaping out of the funnel? These and such like thoughts trouble the minds of the aborigines of Bumba, so that little trade for food can be made although it is plentiful and cheap.

On the 8th, bananas, goats, chickens, sugar-cane, tobacco, pumpkins, sweet potatoes and yams are freely sold, although the multitude is flighty and prone to

1883.
Nov. 8.
Bumba.

panic, which causes the two chiefs Myombi and Sungo Maji to be rushing about crying out "Peace, O people! Sell your produce in security, these whites are our brothers by every bond that can bind us." Withal, however, these hearty efforts to impress their people with confidence the slightest rush of steam, a movement of a white man, the impatient lifting of a helmet off the brow, the scratching of a heated head would send hundreds promiscuously flying like a herd of frightened buffalo. Sacred water was sprinkled along the shore, and over the trees, and towards the boats; the long hand-bell of Sungo Maji was vigorously beaten, and old men came and muttered their incantations, but yet there was a dread of the "Ibanza." The stifled screams of women testified to a presentiment that he was present, the uneasy restless rolling eyes of the men searched for the first symptoms that he was advancing the cries of "Be firm, O men of Bumba, there is nothing to fear!" reiterated over and over, by the chiefs, who were ringing their bells like anxious town-criers, denoted vivid expectancy, and finally the "Ibanza" emerged into view!

One of my cabin-boys, enjoying all this extraordinary fright visible in the actions and faces of the natives, while I was engaged talking with the engineer, had gone into the cabin, shutting the door after him. Presently the door was violently burst open, and the splendid form of a royal Bengal tiger crawled out! A long thrilling shriek rang out, and all at once the hundreds that stood on the shore, casting one hurried

“FINALLY THE ‘IBANZA’ EMERGED INTO VIEW!”



glance at the terrible figure, with an unity of movement fled shrieking and yelling from the river bank.

1883.
Nov. 8.
Yambinga.

When we discovered what had caused this extraordinary flight of the aborigines, their yells were immediately followed by roars of laughter from the crews of the boats, which the flying natives heard, and then halted, reassured more effectively by the merriment than by hours of bell ringing on the part of the criers. It brought them back, too, to see a tall young fellow laughing immoderately, while a collapsed tiger-skin lay at his feet in a harmless heap. The laughter became contagious, and one might see an entire population slapping their thighs, staggering convulsively about, and grasping one another for support as they reeled under the spasms which agitated them.

An hour and a half above Bumba is an equally populous town named Yambinga. It is on the same bank. As we approached, the lower portion of the town appeared to be disposed to reject us; but we persevered in bawling out for Mukuku, the chief of Yambinga, whose name we had slyly obtained from Sungo-Maji of Bumba. In about fifteen minutes Mukuku deigned to come out into view on the river bank, a veritable dark Robinson Crusoe, in head-dress and accoutrements. Over his curly head he wore an antelope-skin cap, adorned with a mighty crest of cock's feathers, while a broad shoulder-belt of leopard-skin, attached to which was a miscellaneous assortment of the tags and tassels of fetish mysteries,

1883.
Nov. 8.
Yambinga.

was slung over his manly breast. He advanced ringing energetically his long bell, crying, "I am Mukuku, and I have heard of the Ibanza. I wish to see him face to face. Let the Ibanza land, and come to Mukuku."

These were brave words ; but anyone might see by



OLD CHIEF IN NATIVE-MADE HAT.

the manner Mukuku hovered near the thickest of the human throng, that had he not been chief, and been so vociferously hailed by Yumbila, he would have much preferred to remain unseen by the grim spirit whom he so valorously adjured to walk ashore.

We set ourselves resolutely to conquer Mukuku's

fear of the Ibanza, and with such good results, that after the blood-brotherhood ceremony had been despatched, not a shadow of doubt of our benignity remained in the good man's head.

1883.
Nov. 8.
Yamblinga.

During our stay here, the information was elicited that behind, or to the north of Yamblinga, there flowed a river which emptied into the Congo, east of their town, called by some Itimbiri, by others Ngingiri. They said it was large; and that traders came from the north, and sold cowries and white beads to the Watumba who inhabited Musanga land.

"Yamblinga," said our informants, "and all this country round here, is an island (a peninsula?), for the Itimbiri river is large, and ascends far behind us."

They also gave us a vast number of names of places; but their ideas of locality were so very vague, and as each channel and islet of the main river bears its distinctive title, their information had no practical value.

On the 10th of November, at 2 P.M., we continued our journey, and an hour later passed by Upper Yamblinga. At this place, hauled ashore, or floating in the river fastened to stakes, there were 243 pirogues; Lower Yamblinga possessed 313 exposed to sight, Bumba nearly 400, Ndobo and Ibunda, perhaps as many, by which we have 1300 "dug-outs," or pirogues. As the smallest of these will likely have a beam of 15 inches, and is about 20 feet in length, an idea may be gained of the supplies of timber furnished by about twenty miles of forest. The war canoes are too valuable to be exposed to risk of loss by

1883.
Nov. 10.
Itimbiri.

flood, so they are submerged and fastened by strong rattan hawsers to poles deeply buried in the clayey bank.

By clinging to the right bank, despite the unpromising narrowness of some of the channels, we came in the afternoon, two hours after passing Upper Yambinga, into a broad channel 350 yards wide, which by following up we found led us from a course E.S.E. to N.E., and kept northing very fast until we were running N.N.E. It was then on waking up that we discovered ourselves to be in the river named to us as the Itimbiri. At Yankau, on its left bank, seated on a bluff with a clear open country about it, where the river still showed signs of further inclination to the north, we retraced our course.

This then was the river which the people of Yambinga said ran behind them, and along which, in its upper course, traders came from the north distributing the Italian cannetone beads, and on whose banks lived the Watumba. The water they said spread out broad in some places, and a man could not be seen on its opposite shore. Could it be a lake, or a mere broad expansion of the river?

The mouth of the river is in N. Lat. $1^{\circ} 57'$, and is about 180 geographical miles in a direct line to Inguima, on the Welle-Makua River. Its water is certainly clear, and might well come from a lake at no great distance inland. Yamu-ningiri is the name of a large village about eight miles above the confluence, up the Itimbiri. The river forms a delta, and

many forested islets dot the entrance. Opposite Yankau it is a deep, navigable river, fully 350 yards wide, of a slightly darker colour than the Congo.

1883.
Nov. 10.
Mutembo.

On the great river, situate above the confluence about four miles, we discovered Mutembo, consisting of three palisaded villages. Its inhabitants crouched behind their huts, spear in hand, to resist an expected attack, and as we passed by they dashed out into the open and slapped their rearward parts—a method of expressing contempt pretty generally known to vulgar Europeans.

On the 12th, in the early morning, we passed by an unusually large clearing, that we at first, from its spacious breadth, took to be a natural plain. A city might have stood on the magnificent site, which was now dreary and desolate. The large population supported upon this wide expanse must have had powerful reasons for its abandonment, of which we must remain yet awhile ignorant.

For the first time we saw the left bank of the Congo, clear across from the right bank. The abandoned plain was once occupied by the Yalulima tribe, whom we shall meet on the left bank as we descend. This tribe is cunning for its iron manufactures, including the spears, the swords, the long bells, single and double, and the tiny dancing bells, which the professors of fetishism—Mgangaism, Inkissism, Ikiraism, or by whatever name you choose to designate the sorceries known to these natives—love to attach to their snake and iguana-skin-girdles.

1883.
Nov. 12.
Yambungu.

At the projecting point on the right bank of the river, in the plain which the Yalulima tribe once inhabited, the breadth of the Congo is about a mile and a half, and eight miles of a view up stream is obtained, while as far as Mutembo below, the main channels lie fully exposed for many miles.

An island, a few miles above, contains the village of Yambungu, whose natives showed a disposition to be friendly, but their dialect was unintelligible to us, although our guide, Yumbila, comprehended what they said. They showed to us several large tusks of ivory, but, perceiving that we were not purchasers of their precious material, they brought to us enormous yams, and baskets of large healthy sweet potatoes, also sheep with broad fat tails, besides fowls and eggs.

Opposite the upper extremity of this island we discovered the *embouchure* of another river—the Nkuku?—whose waters verged on blackish in colour. Two hundred and fifty yards would be a fair estimate of its breadth. Not much information that was intelligible could be gained from the natives, but my opinion is that it is a branch of the Itimbiri River. Inland they said that it was of great width. The districts around it are populous. We heard such names of villages as Luika, Yatui, Bwila, Mukanda-Meya, Isako, Bungelé, Wanbuna, but as we may have shortly to locate these definitely, it will be better for us in the meantime to leave the districts blank.

On the 13th we voyaged along a marvellously rich bank of tropical woods, dotted thickly with the fishing

hamlets of the Basaka. The islands of the Congo we also discovered to be peopled.

1883.
Nov. 15.
Baruu.

On the 14th we passed by the Bahamba villages, and large war canoes were observed to hover about, some of them being manned by forty men. When they perceived that we steadily pursued our way without attempting to land they returned to their villages. At night we heard the sound of drums up-river, and were reminded of our experiences in 1877.

On the 15th we steamed up, and at 8 A.M. came in view of the Baruu villages, situate on high ground, probably 60 feet above the river. There was a considerable degree of hostile demonstration with spears and shields along the bank, but our steady progress past them, with our still demeanour, aided by their curiosity to pay more attention to the steamers, quite tranquilised them.

A thick fog settled over us for about an hour, and the left bank loomed up into view between the islets.

At noon I obtained an observation, and discovered that we were in N. lat. $1^{\circ} 17'$, and much nearer the Aruwimi than I thought.

Orders were then given to prepare rifles and cartridges, to guard against those impetuous spearsmen of the great affluent which despatched its enormous canoe-flotilla against us in 1877. It was not likely that the fierce aborigines would repeat their attempt against a steam-flotilla; still prudence warned us not to omit precautions, for if we were ever taken unawares in this region so far removed from help, the flood of the Congo

1883.
Nov. 15.
Aruwimi.

would certainly be the recipient of our mutilated remains. We are also on this occasion armed with a charm, against which, unless they are hopelessly hostile, they need not hope to contend, and that is a determination on our part to remain passive. Only when nothing else will avail shall we employ our rifles, and if we have to resort to our weapons, we shall remain until their savageness shall be utterly extinguished.

The forest on our left, as we advance, is grand in its wealth of valuable woods and refreshing vernal appearance. The islets are rapidly thinning, the left bank rises boldly into view, and the Congo appears to emerge into one broad united stream. I am observing these features of the landscape, when an immensely long canoe, loaded with armed men, dashes from behind an island, and races rapidly across the stream; being presently followed by another, and still another. Compared with the petty dug-outs which we have hitherto seen, they are splendid vessels.

We, however, advance in close order; and I doubt much whether these reconnoitring war-canoes, after discovering the strange guise in which the strangers are advancing, have obtained much comfort in the column of smoke-boats.

The war-canoes having reached the right bank, continue on their way upward, one after another; and in this sight our eyes, rapidly taking note of every movement, detect in it an augury of good. "There is not going to be a rush this time," we thought.

Presently passing the abandoned clearing where stood the village which we stormed and took by assault in 1877, and the very spot where we awaited the attack of the flotilla of the Aruwimi, the great affluent gapes open into view. The mighty parent stream also appears, with its magnificent breadth of water. Steadily continuing on our way, we enter the Aruwimi, until rounding a point which has prevented us as yet from obtaining a view of the villages, we see the town of Mokulu, where the Basoko, or Basongo, our ancient foes, reside. It is extended along a high clay bank about three miles in length. All its males, I should say, are in battle array on the verge, presenting an irregular, bronze-coloured line of fully-armed men. Brave in their war-paint—yellow, red, and white—and holding large shields on their left arms, they disport themselves fantastically before our view, while the great war-drums thunder the alarm, and incite their courage to its utmost pitch by a deep, bellowing sound. Keeping a respectful advance of us are the three war-canoes, now joined by four other monsters of craft of excavated teak, having double rows of upstanding paddlers in each, with their paddle-shafts decorated with round ivory balls, while on the platforms astern dance the naval warriors, and startling blasts, from long ivory horns, sound wild musical notes, which are re-echoed by the tall woods on the opposite side.

1883.
Nov. 15
Aruwimi.

Arriving opposite the centre of the town, we steered across the river to a small clearing, which I detected in

1883.
Nov. 15.
Mokulu.

the bank, dividing the great affluent from the Congo. The steam-launches, *Royal* and *A.I.A.*, also the whale-boat and canoes, were left here, while the *En Avant*, detached from her consorts, raced across the stream back again to the warriors, that were so conspicuously outlined on the verge of the bank of Mokulu. Yumbila, with the promise of a rich reward ringing in his ears if he succeeded in allaying this frenzy, took his position on the top of the cabin, and the steamer having gained the upper extremity of Mokulu, stopped, and floated down stream while the voice of Yumbila rang out clear and loud the words of peace and friendship.

They must have been powerful phrases our guide employed, judging from the sudden silence and hush that fell on the crowded river bank. The drums that boomed the sonorous alarum of war ceased their deep sounds. The horns which emitted the dreadful defiant blasts of battle, the angry cries grown hoarse with fury, the frantic forms that leaped and bounded upward with quivering spears, all were hushed and stilled, and an anxiety to advance nearer and nearer to the voice promising peace was evident in the stealthy movement of the masses. And then, although all this time we were quite ignorant what the syllabled jargon actually expressed, we observed—for our task was that of silently noting everything—the people depositing their shields and spears near stumps, or trees, or houses in the rear, as if there were a kind of guilt in the late frenzy that had possessed them.

“Bravo, Yumbila! keep at it, my friend. You have done well! But go on, their ears are hungry to hear more of your sweet voice,” we whispered. And Yumbila begins again with open palms, bland face, and archness combined with humour, to expatiate, we presume, upon the blessings of maintaining a friendly communion of man with man. Accent and gesture are both so expressive, that they finally extort from a warrior on the bank friendly human tones in reply. They are so modulated and framed that they impress even our ignorant ears and dull senses with a feeling that the speaker of the Basoko is explaining suavely the causes that induced him and his fellows to exhibit themselves so rampantly ferocious. And then we understand, through Yumbila, that we are requested to camp where the other steamers are left for the present, and that after awhile the Basoko would come to us as friends.

1883.
Nov, 15.
Mokulu.

We waited an hour at our forest camp, and then half-a-dozen tiny canoes, each containing two men, advanced within 250 yards of us. There they hesitated, contenting themselves with gently paddling against the current.

Yumbila was again required to exert his suasive accents to inspire them with courage to advance nearer. How very patient we all were, watching this slow growth of confidence in their minds, may be imagined when it took those people an hour to approach our shore, a few paces above our camp. Thither Yumbila, and three of the most plausible of our men, marched to

1883.
No 15.
Mokulu.

meet them, where the ceremony of blood-brotherhood was enacted, and shrill screams of satisfaction announced that their timidity was at last vanquished. The town of Mokulu heard the good news, and the great drums now sounded the intelligence around, which presently were responded to with thunderous booms from some other distant community, and thus our intercourse with the wild Basoko commenced.

CHAPTER XXIX.

UP THE BIYERRÉ.

Yumbila returns with an interesting story—Slave kidnappers probably from the Soudan—Skilful workmanship—Umaneh and Yakui—Conical huts—The course of the river—Metropolitan Yambumba—A sham famine—The rapids—Supposed identity of the Biyerré and Wellé—Reasons for this opinion—Arabs in the neighbourhood—Again on the Congo.

YUMBILA, the guide, crossed over to Mokulu with his newly-made blood-brother that evening. When he returned the next morning he was radiant with triumph. The white man had promised to reward him for his signal services, and the Basoko had presented him with two fine tusks of ivory, to show their appreciation of his worth.

1883.
Nov. 16.
Mokulu,

It may well be supposed that he gossiped until late hours among the Basoko, satisfying them with abundant information respecting the white men and the propelling agencies that drove the smoke-boats so far up against the current of the Congo. And evidently the Basoko had something to say which smacked of tradition and wonder.

Unfolding his budget, Yumbila informed us first of

1883.
Nov. 16.
Mokulu.

how the Basoko, many years ago, were alarmed by reports of a powerful tribe who were descending the Congo past the Yakusu, commanded by a man with a face as pale as the moon. "In our waters," they said, "we never heard of a tribe moving down with many canoes, unless it came for war. So when we heard of this tribe, we moved out of our river to fight it, but it turned against us just at the meeting of the waters, and though the strangers did not have many canoes, when we bore down on them they dropped our people level with fire and soft iron, which tore us to pieces, that we could not stand against them. They then pursued us and fought us in our own town, and we could not even see what it was they threw at us, except our dead, who fell down and never rose again. And the tribe went away down the river, and we never heard what became of it until the other morning, while it was quite dark, we heard the dread sound, 'boom, boom, boom,' which is like the thunder of the sky in our ears, and we felt the flash of the flame in our faces. Waking up from our sleep, we rushed out from our houses, and the darkness was lit up by a thousand jets of fire; and a crackling noise was heard, louder than a burning plain makes, and more terrible than the most prolonged thunder. There was whizzing and buzzing, as of flying stones, in our ears, and many of our people, on coming out into the light of the burning houses, were struck dead by these things. The same fear came upon us as when we first heard the loud thunder shot at us from the strange tribe, years ago,

1883.
Nov. 16.
Mokulu.

on the river, and we ran for our very lives into the depths of the woods, where, in the thickest parts, we lay with our faces in the ground, afraid to lift our heads up, lest we might be hit by those iron balls that sang over us and crashed into the trees from our village. When we heard our women and children cry out, we thought we would do something. From our coverts we looked out. We saw that some of our houses were still on fire, and we heard again the long shrieks of our women and cries of our children, and again we heard the startling boom that those long hollow tubes, such as your people make, and again were we frightened and threw ourselves down into the thick bush. By-and-bye there was a deathly stillness; we got a little bolder, and crept out to see for ourselves what had happened, and when we came to look upon Mokulu, more than half of it was burnt to the ground, as you can see to-morrow; and as for our women and children, we lost hundreds of them."

This was the story Yumbila had gathered, or some of it, which was only completely told when he induced his new brothers to repeat to him again some of its most prominent points. Yumbila had fully succeeded in convincing them that we could not have known of this massacre and ruthless deed of darkness.

"Who were these people? Where did they come from? Where are they now? By what river did they come to you?"

"Ah, we know not. We were all asleep when they came, and they departed, no one knows where, in

1883.
Nov. 16.
Mokulu.

canoes. We think they must be the Bahunga, or some people from the far east, or perhaps they came from the north. Some of our people managed to get a sight of them, and say they were dressed like your people. But you came with Yumbila from below, and Yumbila says he never heard of such people."

By dint of patient questioning, we learned also that they heard that there were people wearing cloth north of the Basokó, from whom they sometimes, in the way of trade with neighbouring tribes, obtained a few of their beads and copper armlets, but they had not seen any of them.

Of such a tribe as the Bahunga I had never heard in 1877, and my impression was that these midnight marauders were Soudan slave-traders, who had probably descended the great affluent.

This opinion induced me to attempt obtaining some information respecting this river. But even its name they were either unable or unwilling to impart to me, and when they asked me if I intended to follow up the river, and learned that such was my intention, the intelligence nearly became the cause of a rupture in our newly-made friendship. This manifest reluctance to any disclosures respecting the upper course of the river only aroused my curiosity, which was further increased when I learned that they had no objection to our ascent of the Congo.

Provisions were exceedingly abundant and were cheaper than at Iboko. White beads and cowries seemed to be the popular currency here until our cloth

was exhibited, when, to possess a penny handkerchief became the object of general ambition.

1883.
Nov. 16.
Mokulu.

Their paddles, knives, and spears, exhibit remarkable skill in workmanship. On a paddle blade may be seen an infinite number of carvings rudely resembling lizards, crocodiles, canoes, fish, buffalo, &c. Their knives are broad swords in size and breadth, and as finely polished as a new razor; while their spears



A TYPE OF THE BASOKO.

are as sharp and bright as though they had just left a Sheffield shop.

Almost every man possessed some kind of headdress, either knit out of palm fibre material, or made of the skin of a monkey, or an antelope. A capacious knit haversack was a universal appendage to the shoulder.

Physically they are a splendid people for muscular development, though there are some ill-featured, dark in colour, and puny of form among them. During the few days of our mutual intercourse, they gave us a high idea of their qualities—industry after their own style

1883.
Nov. 17.
Umaneh.

not being the least conspicuous. They seemed to me to be the most valuable people for this characteristic that I had met. Their fishing canoes were witnessed coming in and going out continually, and while the people traded with us, they continued to pursue their knitting of haversacks, hats, fish-nets, or twist twine, after the industrious manner of the traditional grand-dame of England.

The town of Mokulu, though large, did not come up to the standard I expected to find in it as the home of that overwhelming force of warriors, which swept down so proudly to meet us in 1877. The reluctance which the aborigines manifested to our ascent of the affluent, the dim ideas that crept into my mind about Soudanese Arabs, all combined to create such a desire to investigate the river, that, though our time was valuable, we started on the 17th to explore it.

From a breadth of 1600 yards at the mouth, a few miles below Mokulu, the river contracts to 900 yards; then, where islands begin to be a little more numerous, it widens, from bank to bank, to a breadth of about 1400 yards.

At 8 A.M. we left our camp opposite Mokulu, and two hours later we halted to cut better fuel. Resuming our journey at 2 P.M., we found ourselves three-quarters of an hour later abreast of Umaneh, which was superior in extent to Mokulu. A veritable Leviathan among canoes lay alongside the clay bank, and would require at least one hundred stout warriors to propel it at sufficient speed in a river-fight. The stern

platform was of three-inch teak, while the bow was massive enough to sink a merchant ship. The empty canoe showed at least 30 inches of free board, and along its whole length were carved figures of crocodiles and fishes.

1883.
Nov. 17.
Umaneh.

Umaneh being only two and three-quarter hours above Mokulu, I began to see how the great affluent could muster a large flotilla. Messengers, no doubt, had informed the natives of our coming, for a more peaceful assemblage than we noticed on the banks could not have been wished. They coolly sat down in groups, or singly, surveying our vessels as though they belonged to Greenwich or Liverpool. I should have been well pleased to exchange views on naval architecture with such indefatigable and scientific canoe-constructors as these Basoko; but time would not allow of delay.

At 6 P.M., of the same day, we were abreast of Yakui, on right bank; but Yakui on the left bank, which came in view as we steamed past an island, was much larger.

At our camping-place next morning at dawn appeared the fishermen of Yakui, who sold us fish, and imparted the names of the villages very frankly. They called themselves Basongo very distinctly. When questioned about the river, they gave their hand a south-easterly turn indicative of its course.

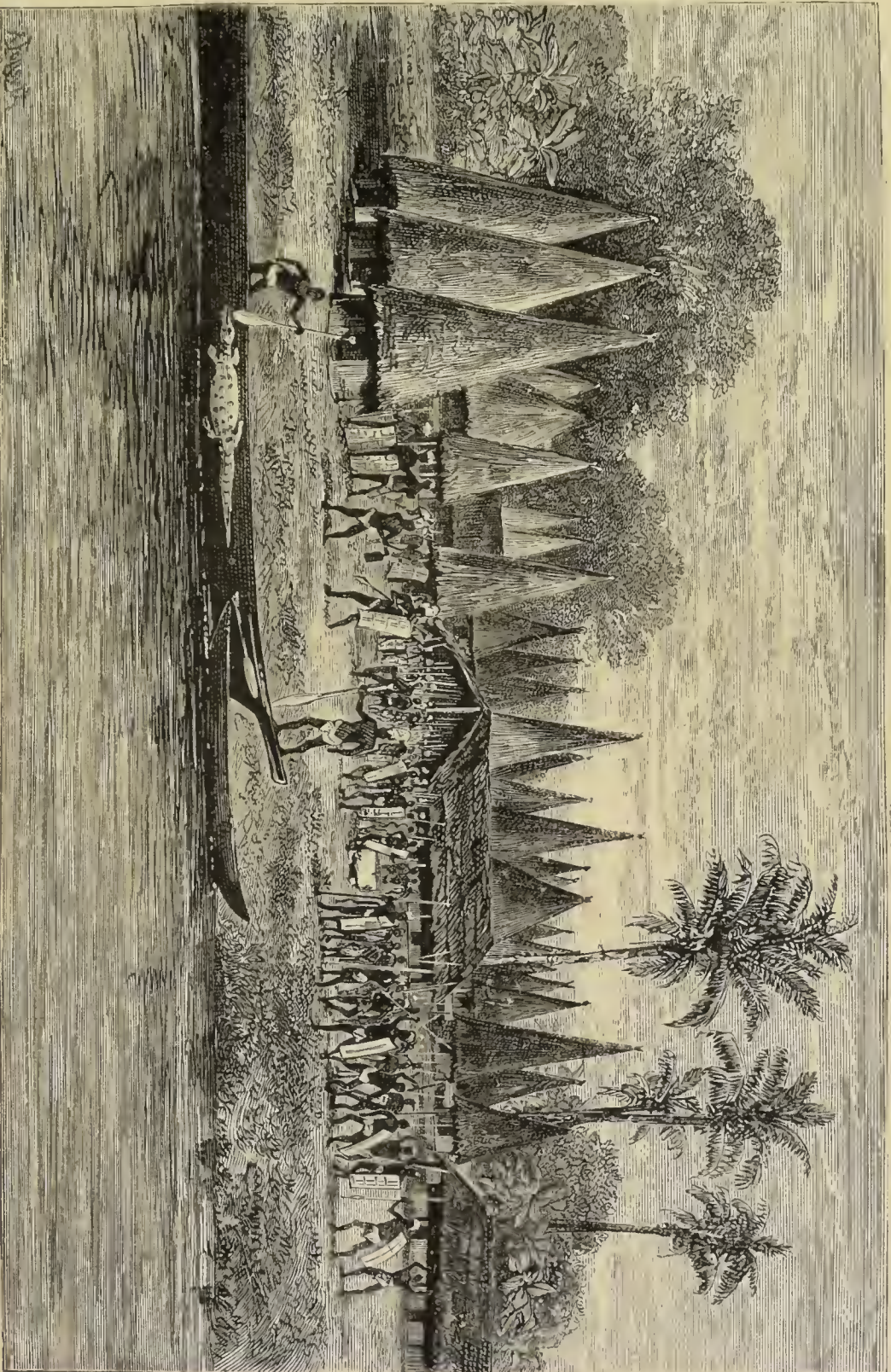
A few miles above we came to Isombo, and nearly opposite was the first bluff, about forty feet high, from which the shore curved grandly from south-east to

1883.
Nov. 18.
Bondeh.

north-east. About 10 A.M. we appeared in view of Bondeh, among the natives of which we seemed to have created a panic; for the canoes containing the women and children, and household gods, were crossing over to the left bank by scores. Here, for the first time also, we saw a change in the architecture of the buildings. Many tall conical huts—of the candle-extinguisher type—were seen rising high above the well-known low, ridge-roof style adopted along the Congo, since we left the Atlantic. As these circular huts appeared to be only about five feet in diameter, it was at first a question as to what they were adapted for. Bondeh also is a populous village. The left bank at the upper extremity of Bondeh appears crowned with another important village called Yambi.

When this last place appears in sight the river begins another deep curve, which we follow for about two hours and find to be an almost complete semi-circle.

My compass course tells me that we have been running almost parallel with the Congo, and bearing the south-easterly indication of the native of Yakui. For a moment, I am half inclined to suspect that the river we are ascending will turn out to be a right branch of the Congo after all. At noon I am anxious to take a correct latitude, and I find we are in N. Lat. $0^{\circ} 59' 0''$! The day previous we were in N. Lat. $1^{\circ} 7' 0''$. With my preconceptions that this affluent must be the Wellé, these revelations serve to confuse



VIEW OF BONDEH.

me; and now, with curiosity greatly excited, whatever may be the result, we resolve on continuing the exploration to a definite issue.

1883.
Nov. 19.
Yam-
bumba.

About 2 P.M. appear the populous settlements of Yambua and Irungu, consisting of two series of half-a-dozen villages, each grouped together on the right bank, on low rich land cleared out of a dense forest. An hour later, on account of a steady rainfall, we halt and camp on the right bank.

We start at 6.30 A.M. on the 19th, and at 9 A.M. the metropolitan town of Yambumba appears, high and dry on a semicircular line of light-coloured bluff, forty feet above the river, with a multitude of steeply conical huts, whose thatch shows grey amid vivid green foliage of fig-trees, and mighty bombax, palmgroves, and bananas. Eight thousand would be a fair estimate of the population of the town. Yet despite their numbers, they did not seem strong-minded enough to be able to resist the impulse to fly, which they did as though the eternal enemy of both black and white men was pursuing them. At first they appeared inclined to gaze upon us as tranquilly as those of Umaneh had done, and accordingly posed in unconcerned attitudes along the verge of the soft sandstone bluff. But they no sooner heard the strange soughing of the steamers than they took to their heels, their shields clattering on their hips in accompaniment to their quick steps. Human foes they no doubt thought they could cope with; but against the Ibanza puffing and panting so deeply and so strangely, their only recourse was instant flight.

1883.
Nov. 2
Yam-
bumba.

Some hills appeared in the distance, in a north-easterly direction, seeming to lie in a range running north-west and south-east; but our course, after arriving beyond the upper horn of the crescent on which Yambumba is situate, still continued easterly.

The islands gradually disappeared, revealing a clean breadth of about 800 yards between each bank. We observed also that the river was gradually falling.

A thick mist obscured everything until 9 A.M. on the morning of the 20th, which prevented us from proceeding on our journey. An hour later appeared a long range of hills on the right bank of the river. From the lower end of this range, in N. Lat. $1^{\circ} 16'$, our course led along a curve which brought us at noon to N. Lat. $1^{\circ} 14'$. Four hours later we came in sight of the Rapids. On the left bank were seen a number of villages, all the huts of which seemed to be of the sharp conical form.

We formed a camp about two miles below the rapids, on the right bank, at the sight of which the natives of the villages across made a terrible racket with their drums. Yumbila was urged to try to start a conversation, the effect of which was that the drumming was silenced, and for nearly an hour the creatures kept bawling across the river one to another puerile information relating to bananas and goats. Yumbila, always hungry, clamoured to the aborigines to bring food to sell for beads—the natives as loudly denied that they possessed any.

We went across in the whale-boat next morning to

attempt to obtain the goodwill of the natives of Yambuya; but, after an hour's effort, we were compelled to desist. They reported they were starving, and they acted the part of famished people admirably. A few of our sailors threw some rolls of bread on shore in derisive unbelief of their statement; but the natives, as quick-witted, affected to rush for the bread, and to eat it with inexpressible satisfaction, at the same time holding out their hands imploringly for more. A few cowries thrown on shore also caused an eager scrambling; but though they could not be induced to sell goats or food, they were not averse to talk. I fear, that as they were such consummate actors, not much reliance can be placed on any information given to us, since while they gave us numerous names of places, they never mentioned, for instance, that their own village was Yambuya, whereas they declared it to be Ngondé. The rapids they also called Ruka or Luka, the river Massua, Kiyo, and Ikongo, whereas our frank friends of Yakui, called the river Biyerré.

1883.
Nov. 21.
Yambuya.

Disinclined, because really unable from the vast amount of work to be done yet, and the time consumed in navigating such lengths of riverwater, to pursue investigation among people who so zealously baffled our inquiries, we turned away and rowed up to the rapids. Reaching a point whence I could command full view of them, I concluded that they might be descended easily by men who knew the road. It is one of those rapids that would be simply exhilarating to rush down—there are no treacherous

1883.
Nov. 21.
Yambuya.

whirlpools, eddies, or back-currents; it is a steep rolling of a flood over, probably, a clean reef. They are about 450 yards wide, from the deep bend in the right bank to the low point projecting into the stream from the left bank.

Thus we are halted after an ascent of about ninety-six English miles of the Biyerré. As the confluence of the river with the Congo is in N. Lat. $1^{\circ} 14'$, and our camp below the rapids is in N. Lat. $1^{\circ} 13'$, our course has been true easterly, notwithstanding the three or four semi-circular bends in the river's run.

Although all these geographical questions will be presently settled, yet halting from pursuing the search further, I ought to state my reasons for still maintaining the opinion that this river must be the Wellé.

From these rapids, the distance to Inguima, on the Wellé, is about 155 geographical miles in a direct line. The natives of Yankui call the river Biyerré; the Basoko admitted it also, but stated that only the Upper Aruwimi was called the Biyerré, that is, that portion of it above the rapids.

The Wellé of Schweinfurth is called by Miani, Waré and Werré; another calls it Meri or Beré.

It is a large river, 600 yards wide and 25 feet deep—we have traced it east across one degree of longitude. Over the rapids we see that the hill-range which has caused the interruption runs north-west and south-east. The river has been deflected from its course by the hills, and must flow from a north-westerly direction.

Rounding the south-easterly extremity, it runs direct west to the Congo. That there are other rapids up above these may well be imagined; the great bends we have already passed make it quite possible that there are many more; and a mere view, such as we had of this curve above the rapids trending north-westerly, has but little value. But a glance at the large semi-circular bend between the confluence of the Nekké with the Wellé, and the junction of the Gurba and the Wellé, will serve to show that two inverse bends would about connect the Wellé, Beré, or Werré of Schweinfurth, Miani, and Junker with the river called Biyerré, which we have just ascended. The Itimbiri is not large enough to receive such a river as the Wellé is figured on the maps of its explorers. The Biyerré's great volume must absorb, not only the Wellé, but most probably the Nepoko of Junker. At this season the river Biyerré discharges 150,000 cubic feet of water per second into the Congo.

1883.
Nov. 21.
Yambuya.

Now, Dr. Barth describes the Shari, the river which many geographers insist upon as receiving the Wellé, thus:—

“I found myself floating on this noble river, which was certainly 600 yards across. On the western shore the river sweeps slowly along, and, in general, appears not to be very deep. In the channel the poles of the ferrymen indicated a depth of 15 feet.”

If we suppose that this “noble” river, the Shari, to be 600 yards wide, of an uniform depth of 15 feet, and a current of two knots an hour, we only obtain

1883.
Nov. 22.
Irungu.

67,000 cubic feet of water per second, and this at a point 810 geographical miles in a direct line from Munza's on the Wellé. As Munza's is situated at a place on the Wellé which is over 200 geographical miles in a direct line from its source, then we have an Equatorial river with a course of nearly 2000 English miles, with only a volume of 67,000 cubic feet of water per second. The Congo, on the other hand, after only 1600 miles of a course, rolls past Nyangwe a volume of 230,000 cubic feet per second. There is such an incomprehensibility in all this, that I can only record my belief that, as the Biyerré is only 155 geographical miles from the lowest point known on the Wellé, and discharges such a volume of water, the basin of the Wellé and the Nepoko must be included within the hydrographic area supplying the Biyerré with water.

At a place just five miles below Yambuya, on returning down river, I made a series of measurements of current velocity, and soundings. The central current flowed at the rate of 1150 feet in five minutes; the greatest depth of water was forty-two feet; the breadth of river was 580 yards.

We camped at Irungu and underwent the scarification of brotherhood. From our new brothers we received the extraordinary information that the Biyerré after turning to the north-west made another turn southerly and joined the Congo. I presume that this must be the Nepoko affluent of the Biyerré.

At Yakui, so much had our peaceful passage up-river

impressed the people, that we were enabled to purchase eight days' provisions. I heard also sufficient at this place to prove that there were Arabs from the East Coast on the Congo, but the locality was so vaguely designated that we did not pay much attention to the news. When, however, they learned that after returning to Mokulu we intended to visit the Congo in the same manner, they manifested undisguised pleasure for some reason. The Bahunga marauders were sure to "catch it" they thought, if they were overtaken by us.

1883.
Nov. 23.
Yakui.

A little before noon on the 23rd we halted for a short time at our camp opposite Mokulu. We discovered that the Biyerré had fallen eighteen inches during our absence. We then continued our journey down to the mouth, and, rounding the low forest point dividing the two rivers, we steamed up the mightier Congo.

CHAPTER XXX.

TO STANLEY FALLS.

Predatory Bahunga—An odd means for defence—Deserted villages—Enormous flotilla of canoes—Danger ahead—Ravages by the Arabs—“Cruel man has done his worst”—Remains of burnt villages—A shocking discovery—We overtake the Arab slave-traders—Meditations on retribution—Extent of territory ravaged by the Arabs—Their miserable captives—A harrowing scene—Captives all women and children; their number—The cause of the trade—Yangambi—The Chofu river—The Wenya fishermen—Cunning policy of the Arabs—Stanley Falls—Description of the cataracts—The district tribes—Their mode of fishing—A dangerous ferry—Drum signals—An industrious people—The fish of the waters—Palavers—Our farthest station founded—Binnie is appointed chief, and left in charge—Homeward bound.

1883.
Nov. 23.
Biyerré.

WE have now, while breasting the swift ochreous flood of the Congo, a wider view of river reach, and a more spacious breadth of stream than we enjoyed between the banks of the Biyerré. Denuded of its islets, the Congo revealed itself occasionally, now with a clear view of two and a half miles of open water, broad enough to absorb a dozen mighty tributaries as large as the Biyerré. And yet we were, at the confluence just passed, 1266 English miles from the sea, and 921 miles above Léopoldville.

Faithful to our purpose we cling to the right bank, which is low, but grand for the forest of massive trees nourished by its fertile soil. We pass a clearing which was once a market-place. It is not used now, a change having come over the people of the land. There are rumours of predatory Bahunga floating throughout the surrounding districts, and distrust, fear, and suspicion lie heavy on men's souls.

1883:
Nov. 23.
Biyerré.

We have discovered that we ourselves are not above suspicion. We may not be related to the fierce kidnappers who roam about at midnight on the wide waters and pounce upon sleeping aborigines, but we wear cloth, and we carry the dreadful hollow tubes which belch thunder and ruin to men. "Yes, go up the Mburra [the Congo] when hollow tubes spit fire at one another—could we but see it, it were grand fun!" So think the natives, while we, utterly ignorant what strange tribe this is equally matched with ourselves, keep pressing on nearer and nearer to the kidnappers, in admirable bewilderment as to who they may be.

At four o'clock we pass another market-place, and think of camping, but the people who spring on shore with the hawsers fall down and show bleeding feet, and we discover that the ground has been defended by pins of dried rattan stuck all over the surface, and we are obliged to steam on another hour until a suitable place in the thick forest has been found.

The next day at 9 A.M. we pass the well-known market-place, where, in 1877, the vendors and buyers

1883.
Nov. 24.
Biyerré.

left the profits and pleasures of marketing to attack us in impetuous style, so little did they expect that the descending canoes contained men whose souls had been well tried in resisting such attacks. All of us who had been present on that occasion rehearsed the scene and the events which almost each tree recalled.

An hour later a fourth market-place was passed, from which the natives had been seen hastening away to an island or islands near the left bank. The distance was so great, and so much haziness from the humid heat obscured the light, that we could not well discern the outline of the opposite shore.

The land rose in beautiful gentle hills, green with the perpetual springtime, and deeply wooded everywhere, but bluffly on their river face. Here and there peeped out banana groves, belonging to tiny hamlets occupying the limited clearings. These higher lands belong no doubt to the bluff-browed banks near Yambumba on the Biyerré.

Looking across to the islands which the Congo again bears within its bosom we fancy we see a movement as of paddles—those bright mirror-like flashes of water we know so well on a calm day, and languidly tracing the islet shores upward, a half-formed suspicion creeps into our minds that the shores themselves are widening. But, examining the curious phenomenon through a binocular, such a number of canoes are seen that they create unpleasant thoughts of imminent strife. Suggestions arise of conflicts with the terrible Bahunga, of running down an entire flotilla of canoes, plunging

and sprawling madly about with marvellous rapidity of action, while the sharp crack of breech-loaders sound clear above the turmoil. What else could such an encounter mean? Our men are all conscious that there is a large force of people in the neighbourhood, notwithstanding that the right bank appears silent and uninhabited.

1883.
Nov. 24.
Biyerré.

We cast off the whale-boat, and the *En Avant* dashes on to obtain a clearer view of this immense flotilla. In ten minutes we can trace a long and thick column of ascending canoes, creeping along under the shadows of the overhanging woods of an island. It may be three miles in length; it may be less, it may be more, but its length dwarfs all that we have ever seen of flotillas. I estimated the number of canoes at about a thousand. We steamed slowly up, parallel with the column, to the distance of a mile and a half. I presumed that they meditated an attack, and I became lost in conjectures as to the result of a determined charge of such a vast force. If there were an average of five to each canoe that would give a number of 5000; enough to overwhelm us, even if they came to the attack with naked hands.

Discretion is wise in such circumstances as environed us. We had no quarrel with any people, not even with the Bahunga, and our mission could not be prefaced by seeking opportunities for warfare. Arguing thus the *En Avant* returned to her consorts, picked up her boat, and the steam flotilla held on its way.

1883.
Nov. 24.
Mawembé.

At 4.30 a rain-storm halted us. This was the usual ending to such a hazy sultry day, and was generally accompanied by vivid lightning, and loud thunder shocks. We had a comfortable camp, however, on a cosy islet, well protected from the tempest that endured the whole night.

The next morning (the 25th) we continued our journey. Two hours later we saw a break in the solid wall of forest trees along which we had travelled, and I remembered its position very clearly. On my old map it is marked "Mawembé," and was strongly palisaded; but now, though I looked closely through my glass, I could detect no sign of palisade or hut. The clearing was there, it was true, the site of the palisaded village was also there, and notwithstanding its emptiness it was recognised. As we advanced we could see poor remnants of banana groves; we could also trace the whitened paths from the river's edge leading up the steep bank, but not a house nor a living thing could be seen anywhere. The exact extent, position, and nature of the village site was unchanged, but the close, bristling palisade, and the cones of fowl-huts, and the low ridge-roofed huts just visible above it—all had vanished.

When we came abreast of the locality, we perceived that there had been a late fire. The heat had scorched the foliage of the tallest trees, and their silver stems had been browned by it. The banana plants looked meagre; their ragged fronds waved mournfully their tatters, as if imploring pity. We slackened the speed

of the engines, to contemplate the scene and reflect upon its meaning.

1883.
Nov. 25.
Mawembé

Six years before we had rushed by this very place without stopping, endeavouring by our haste to thwart the intentions of our foes—if foes they meant to be—since which time the history of this land had been a blank to us. Surely there had been a great change! As we moved up the stream slowly, another singular sight attracted our gaze. This was two or three long canoes standing on their ends, like split hollow columns, upright on the verge of the bank. What freak was this, and what did the sight signify? Had one of these canoes been weighed, it is certain it could not have been less than a ton. To have tilted and raised such a weight argued numbers and union. It could never have been the work of a herd of chattering savages. As they stand, they are a tacit revelation of the effect of energy and cohesion; they signify a union of men—and union is force! They are Arabs who have performed this feat of strength, and these upright columnar canoes betray the advent of the slave-traders in the region below the Falls! We learned later that on this now desolate spot once stood the town of Yomburri.

A few miles higher up on the same bank we came abreast of another scene of desolation, where a whole town had been burnt, the palms cut down, bananas scorched, many acres laid level with the ground, and the freak of standing canoes on end repeated. In front of the black ruin there were a

1883
Nov. 25.
Yomburri.

couple of hundred people crouched down on the verge of the bank, looking wofully forlorn and cheerless, some with their hands supporting their chins, regarding us with a stupid indifference, as though they were beyond further harm, while all seemed to say by their attitude, "Cruel man has done his worst. Having lost all, we are beyond your spite, and greater wretchedness than that which we are now in is impossible. How can it profit you to harm us?"

Our guide, Yumbila, was told to question them as to what was the cause of this dismal scene, and one old man stood out and poured forth his tale of grief and woe with an exceeding volubility. He told of a sudden and unexpected invasion of their village, by a host of leaping, yelling men, in the darkness, who dinned their ears with murderous fusilades, slaughtering their people as they sprang out of their burning huts into the light of the flames. Not a third of the men had escaped; the larger number of the women and children had been captured and taken away, they knew not whither.

"And where are these people?" we asked.

"They are gone up-river, about eight days ago."

"And have these people burnt up all the villages?"

"All; everywhere, on both sides of the river."

"What are they like, these strange people?"

"They are like your people in your boats, and wear white clothes."

"Ah! And who are all those people we saw yesterday in hundreds of canoes near the islands?"

“They are our people, from our side and from the other, who have gathered together for protection. At night they go to their fields to get food, but in the daytime they live on the islands, with their canoes ready, lest the wicked and fierce people come back. But go away, go away; strangers are all bad. Go to them if you want ivory; go and fight them. We have nothing—nothing.” And the old man’s gesture, with open palms, was painfully expressive.

1883.
Nov. 25.
Yomburri.

We continued on our journey, advancing as rapidly as our steamers could breast the stream. Every three or four miles we came in sight of the black traces of the destroyers. The charred stakes, upright canoes, poles of once populous settlements, scorched banana groves, and prostrate palms, all betokened ruthless ruin.

At 4 P.M. we halted at a camp in a plain just above the devastated site of Yavunga. We had passed, since leaving the Biyerré, twelve villages utterly consumed by fire. In these eight separate communities had existed.

Opposite Yavunga, on the left bank, is the district of Yaporo. Surveying the scene through the binocular glass we could assure ourselves that the tale of the old man was not exaggerated. Not one house was visible, although the extensive clearing indicated that Yaporo had been populous. This would have been evident even had I not remembered, by the peculiar red clay banks, which is such a feature of it, that I

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

had seen a large and long-extended town here. Just above, I also remembered, we had had a tough fight with the people, who had cried "Ya Mariwa" as they charged on us, and there was the Tugarambusa ridge, its outlines not to be mistaken.

On the morning of the 27th of November we were delayed by a scantiness of fuel, due to the extent of the clearing, so that departure was not possible until after 7 o'clock. A mile above our camp we detected some object, of a slaty colour, floating down stream. The *En Avant* steamed towards it, and the man with the sounding-pole at the bow, on arriving near it, turned it over with a boat-hook. We were shocked to discover the bodies of two women bound together with cord! This tragedy, by the appearance of the bodies, must have occurred about twelve hours previously.

Wondering what could have caused the committal of such a crime, we continued to follow the shore, where the current was slack, until we came to the upper end of the crescent bend, which is above Yavunga. At the close of an hour we were rounding the point, when looking up river hastily, we saw a white mass fronting the landing-place of a village. I caught up my glass and examined it. Others appeared in a group, as we edged towards the centre of the stream. They were tents; the Arabs of Nyangwé had been overtaken!

They were evidently in force, for their camp, or village, was evidently large enough for a great number, and a rough palisade seemed to surround it. We

formed ourselves in line and advanced up-river. As we drew near I observed through the telescope that our presence excited a commotion on the banks, which became lined with a multitude of men in white dress who acted as if flurried. I also saw a large number of canoes fastened to the landing-place, which revealed at once the secret of these sudden midnight surprisals. These people had in some manner descended the river from Nyangwé past the Falls.

I felt conscious for a short period of an internal struggle against an impulse, which was almost overpowering, to avenge these devastations and massacres of sleeping people. The picture of those houseless people of Yomburri, the eloquent but most pitiful tale of the old man, the corpses of the two women bound together, which seemed to suggest a cold-blooded deliberate murder—all appealed to me for immediate and complete vengeance. And yet—who am I that I should take the law into my hands and mete out retribution? The devilish deeds are already accomplished—the embers of the burnt houses are cold, the blood shed has long ago been dried. Then, again, came the thought that the captives were still in bondage; the tears of these are still flowing, their sorrow is even yet fresh. And this naked land, raided, and devastated in this cruel fashion, of what possible use would it be when emptied of its people? But it was useless for me to repeat to myself such forcible reasons for revenging these wholesale outrages. I had not the slightest shadow of authority to vindicate the dictates of justice. I

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

represented no constituted government, nor had I the shadow of authority to assume the *rôle* of censor, judge and executioner. Both parties were my friends, at least I hoped so; one party, being stronger, by force and fraud has almost exterminated the other, but without a commission I may not interfere. Had I appeared on the scene while one of these many tragedies was being enacted I might—so contagious is the effect of strife—have assisted the weaker party.

After the usual discharge of blank cartridges from the boats, announcing an arrival, followed by responsive salvoes from the shore, a canoe put out from the bank, and hailed us in Swahili, the language of the oriental coast, to which we replied in terms of peace.

We formed a camp below them, and almost immediately after we had secured our boats, our Zanzibaris were shaking hands with the Manyema slaves of Abed bin Salim, who had invaded and ravaged the country to obtain slaves and ivory for their master.

We discovered that this horde of banditti—for in reality and without disguise they were nothing else—was under the leadership of several chiefs, but principally under Karema and Kiburuga. They had started sixteen months previously from Wane-Kirundu, about thirty miles below Vinya Njara. For eleven months the band had been raiding successfully between the Congo and the Lubiranzi, on the left bank. They had then undertaken to perform the same cruel work

between the Biyerré and Wane-Kirundu. On looking at my map I find that such a territory within the area described would cover superficially 16,200 square geographical miles on the left bank, and 10,500 miles on the right bank, all of which in statute mileage would be equal to 34,570 square miles—just 2000 square miles greater than the island of Ireland—inhabited by about 1,000,000 people.

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

The band when it set out from Kirundu numbered 300 fighting men armed with flint-locks, double-barreled percussion guns, and a few breech-loaders; their followers, or domestic slaves and women, doubled this force.

After spending the morning listening to such of their adventures as they chose to relate, I was permitted in the afternoon to see the human harvest they had gathered, as many of my people had exaggerated the numbers of the captives they had seen in the camp.

Their quarters were about 150 yards above the place we had selected. It was surrounded with a fence made of the hut walls of the native town of Yangambi, which lay without in ruins; the square plats of raised and tamped earth with a few uprights alone indicating where it stood. The banana groves had been levelled, and their stalks employed to form the fence around about their camp.

Within the enclosure was a series of low sheds, extending many lines deep from the immediate edge of the clay bank inland, 100 yards; in length the

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

camp was about 300 yards. At the landing-place below were fifty-four large canoes, varying in carrying capacity. Each might convey from 10 to 100 people.

The first general impressions are that the camp is much too densely peopled for comfort. There are rows upon rows of dark nakedness, relieved here and there by the white dresses of the captors. There are lines or groups of naked forms upright, standing, or moving about listlessly; naked bodies are stretched under the sheds in all positions; naked legs innumerable are seen in the perspective of prostrate sleepers; there are countless naked children, many mere infants, forms of boyhood and girlhood, and occasionally a drove of absolutely naked old women bending under a basket of fuel, or cassava tubers, or bananas, who are driven through the moving groups by two or three musketeers. On paying more attention to details, I observe that mostly all are fettered; youths with iron rings around their necks, through which a chain, like one of our boat-anchor chains, is rove, securing the captives by twenties. The children over ten are secured by three copper rings, each ringed leg brought together by the central ring, which accounts for the apparent listlessness of movement I observed on first coming in presence of the curious scene. The mothers are secured by shorter chains, around whom their respective progeny of infants are grouped, hiding the cruel iron links that fall in loops or festoons over their mammas' breasts. There is not one adult man-captive amongst them.

Besides the shaded ground strewn over so thickly by the prostrate and upright bodies of captives, the relics of the many raids lie scattered or heaped up in profusion everywhere, and there is scarcely a square foot of ground not littered with something, such as drums, spears, swords, assegais, arrows, bows, knives, iron-ware of native make of every pattern, paddles innumerable, scoops and balers, wooden troughs, ivory horns, whistles, buffalo and antelope-horns, ivory pestles, wooden idols, beads of wood, berries, scraps of fetishism, sorcerers' wardrobes, gourds of all sizes, nets, from the lengthy seine to the small hand-net; baskets, hampers, shields as large as doors (of wood, or of plaited rattan), crockery, large pots to hold eight gallons, down to the child's basin; wooden mugs, basins, and mallets; grass cloth in shreds, tatters, and pieces; broken canoes, and others half excavated; native adzes, hatchets, hammers, iron rods, &c., &c. All these littering the ground, or in stacks and heaps, with piles of banana and cassava peelings, flour of cassava, and sliced tubers drying, make up a number of untidy pictures and details, through all of which, however, prominently gleam the eyes of the captives, in a state of utter and supreme wretchedness.

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri

Little perhaps as my face betrayed my feelings, other pictures would crowd upon the imagination; and after realising the extent and depth of the misery presented to me, I walked about as in a kind of dream, wherein I saw through the darkness of the night the stealthy forms of the murderers creeping towards the

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

doomed town, its inmates all asleep, and no sounds issuing from the gloom but the drowsy hum of chirping cicadas or distant frogs—when suddenly flash the light of brandished torches; the sleeping town is involved in flames, while volleys of musketry lay low the frightened and astonished people, sending many through a short minute of agony to that soundless sleep from which there will be no waking. I wished to be alone somewhere where I could reflect upon the doom which has overtaken Bandu, Yomburri, Yangambi, Yaporo, Yakusu, Ukanga, Yakonde, Ituka, Yaryembi, Yaruche, populous Isangi, and probably thirty scores of other villages and towns.

The slave-traders admit they have only 2300 captives in this fold, yet they have raided through the length and breadth of a country larger than Ireland, bearing fire and spreading carnage with lead and iron. Both banks of the river show that 118 villages, and forty-three districts have been devastated, out of which is only educed this scant profit of 2300 females and children, and about 2000 tusks of ivory! The spears, swords, bows, and the quivers of arrows, show that many adults have fallen. Given that these 118 villages were peopled only by 1000 each, we have only a profit of 2 per cent.; and by the time all these captives have been subjected to the accidents of the river voyage to Kirundu and Nyangwé, of camp life and its harsh miseries, to the havoc of small-pox, and the pests which miseries breed, there will only remain a scant 1 per cent. upon the bloody venture.

They tell me, however, that the convoys already arrived at Nyangwé with slaves captured in the interior have been as great as their present band. Five expeditions have come and gone with their booty of ivory and slaves, and these five expeditions have now completely weeded the large territory described above. If each expedition has been as successful as this, the slave-traders have been enabled to obtain 5000 women and children safe to Nyangwé, Kirundu, and Vibondo, above the Stanley Falls. Thus 5000 out of an assumed million will be at the rate of a-half per cent., or five slaves out of 1000 people.

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

This is poor profit, out of such large waste of life, for originally we assume the slaves to have mustered about 10,000 in number. To obtain the 2300 slaves out of the 118 villages, they must have shot a round number of 2500 people, while 1300 more died by the wayside, through scant provisions and the intensity of their hopeless wretchedness. How many are wounded and die in the forest, or droop to death through an overwhelming sense of their calamities, we do not know, but if the above figures are trustworthy, then the outcome from the territory with its million of souls is 5000 slaves, obtained at the cruel expense of 33,000 lives! And such slaves! They are females, or young children who cannot run away, or who with youthful indifference will soon forget the terrors of their capture! Yet each of the very smallest infants has cost the life of a father and perhaps his three stout brothers and three grown-up daughters. An entire family of

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

six souls have been done to death to obtain that small, feeble, useless child!

These are my thoughts as I look upon the horrible scene. Every second during which I regard them the clink of fetters and chains strikes upon my ears. My eyes catch sight of that continual lifting of the hand to ease the neck in the collar, or as it displays a manacle exposed through a muscle being irritated by its weight, or want of fitness. My nerves are offended with the rancid effluvium of the unwashed herds within this human kennel. The smell of other abominations annoy me in that vitiated atmosphere. For how could poor people, bound and riveted together by twenties, do otherwise than wallow in filth! Only the old women are taken out to forage; they dig out the cassava tuber, and search for the banana, while the guard, with musket ready, keenly watches for the coming of the vengeful native. Not much food can be procured in this manner, and what is obtained is flung down in a heap before each gang, to at once cause an unseemly scramble. Many of these poor things have been already months fettered in this manner, and their bones stand out in bold relief in the attenuated skin, which hangs down in thin wrinkles and puckers. And yet, who can withstand the feeling of pity so powerfully pleaded for by those large eyes and sunken cheeks?

What was the cause of all this vast sacrifice of human life, of all this unspeakable misery? Nothing, but the indulgence of an old Arab's "wolfish, bloody, starved, and ravenous instincts." He wished to ob-

tain slaves to barter profitably away to other Arabs, and having weapons—guns and gunpowder—enough, he placed them in the hands of three hundred slaves, and despatched them to commit murder wholesale, just as an English nobleman would put guns in the hands of his guests, and permit them to slaughter the game upon his estate. If we calculate three quarts of blood to each person who fell during the campaign of murder, we find that this one Arab caused to be shed 2850 gallons of human blood, sufficient to fill a tank measurement of 460 cubic feet, quite large enough to have drowned him and all his kin!

1883.
Nov. 27.
Yomburri.

I now understood why the Basoko of the Biyerré were so gleeful when they heard we were about to ascend the Congo. Their talk about the Bahunga was that of people bewildered by the suddenness of the attack upon them, who seized upon the first name uttered to them. They hoped, of course, that we would mutually destroy one another, and thus they would be relieved from their fears.

We exchanged gifts with Karema and his blood-stained confederates. We also obtained guides from them to speak for us to the people at the Falls, and being in a hurry to leave such dreadful scenes, we departed next morning, the 28th, for the cataract.

Yangambi, which we said was occupied by the Arab slave-traders, is beautifully situated on a level terrace, at the foot of the Tugurambusa ridge, which runs parallel with the Congo for a length of eight miles. The summits of the ridge, which are at an altitude of

1883.
Nov. 28.
Yangambi.

perhaps two hundred feet above the river, appear to offer a charming field for European agriculturists. The slopes are delightfully fresh and green, and where the red bluffs rise, they are overhung by verdant masses of shrubbery. The left bank opposite is a flat and level land, with far extended clearings; it is a land for sugar cane, cotton, rice, maize, and millet. The right bank above the ridge is a land for wheat, being at a dry and healthy altitude.

A few miles above the red sandstone cliffs of Tugarambusa are Ituka, Yaruche, and Yaryembi, or rather were, for at this time mere relics of settlements were shown. And yet I remember well their rampant multitudes on the banks and in the canoe flotillas worrying our force in 1877 with the courage of yelping terriers. Both banks were now empty of their peoples, they were abandoned to the silence of absolute solitude.

Soon after rounding the point of Yaryembi, we view before us a straight twelve-mile reach. On the right bank there are three abandoned settlements, and on the left there are five, mere empty clearings. The river varies from 800 to 1600 yards wide, with a strong but steady current. The banks are nearly uniform, from ten to thirty feet high, woods alternating with open sites of towns.

Yarukombé on the right, and a similar town of the same name on the left, stood once at the upper end of the reach.

On the 30th of November our course from 8 A.M. to 1 P.M. was along the right bank in a channel caused

by the large and fertile island called Busanga, which I remember to have been occupied by a tribe of the Yakusu. Now, however, not one hut is seen. Even the clearings where the huts stood can scarcely be found. All the villages on the mainland have been utterly destroyed, and there is not one native of a powerful tribe to tell the tale of the massacres.

1883.
Nov. 30.
Busanga.

At 2 P.M. we arrived at the twin-mouthed river Chofu, each channel having a breadth of about 200 yards, divided by an island whose base line is three miles long.

My guide, who has been up the river marauding, states that it is navigable for about twenty-five miles, when a confluence of two branches is seen, both interrupted by rapids. The left branch is called the Lukebu; the right branch being the Lindi. The Wenya procure their large canoes from this river in exchange for heaps of cured fish.

It rained abundantly on the evening of the 30th, but about 8 A.M. on the 1st of December the skies cleared, and we were enabled to continue our voyage.

We steamed up for about four miles along the right bank, when we struck across the river to the left bank, barely avoiding a small rapid. We held on until noon, when we were abreast of a small island in N. Lat. $0^{\circ} 30'$. We were advised to cling close to the left bank as far as the point nearest the Falls, to avoid frightening the people with the sight of such a flotilla. Arriving below this point, we detached the whale-boat, and sent it up with the guide and one of my servants to speak

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

to the natives. By this method we succeeded in getting touch of the Wenya fishermen, who sent down a few men in two canoes to speak to us. An hour's conversation ended with an invitation to us to approach their village.

Steaming round the point, the lower rapids of the Falls came into view. We were unable to contend against the current. We therefore tied up alongside of the left bank, two miles below the village, until we could come to an understanding with the assembled Wenya chiefs respecting a settlement.

With cunning policy the Arabs in their descent of the Falls, left the Wenya in undisturbed possession of their islands. Even since 1878, after the return of Tipper Tib to Nyangwé from escorting me to Vinya Njara, they made their approaches slowly towards the Falls. Thus they had obtained access to a large island between the Falls, from which, by dint of the exhibition of power coupled with an affectation of leniency—even friendship—towards those who were willing to submit to their impositions, they had succeeded in at last securing the co-operation of the Wenya fishermen. By this means they could descend from Nyangwé to the Upper Falls, and surrendering their canoes into the hands of the Baswa tribe, they could march overland to Asama Creek, while the Baswa fishermen, through their intimate knowledge of the channels, floated the canoes safely down. Thence embarking, the Arabs descended from the fifth cataract to the sixth, while the Wané Rukura fishermen floated the canoes

safely past their cataract. Here the Arabs might safely embark for the seventh cataract of the Stanley Falls, whereat the Wenya fishermen stood ready to navigate them safely through the channels to the head of the navigation leading to the Stanley Pool. On their return with their forcibly acquired booty, a few slaves which they were glad to be rid of sufficed to pay the Wenya, Wané Rukura, and Baswa tribes for their trouble of passing their flotilla up in safety to the quiet river leading to Nyangwé.

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

Stanley Falls consists of seven distinct cataracts extended along a curving stretch of fifty-six statute miles in length.

At N. Lat. $0^{\circ} 28' 30''$, E. Long. $25^{\circ} 24'$, we find the seventh cataract, which, with its smaller rapids, interrupts navigation for two miles. Above this fall there is a navigable stretch of twenty-six miles, whence the sixth cataract is reached. This latter cataract, on the left side, presents an absolutely impassable fall; but on the right it partakes of the character of rapids, which at certain times of the year would offer few more difficulties that vigorous rowing would not surmount. From the sixth to the fifth cataract is another twenty-two mile stretch of easily navigable water with a gentle current. The fifth, fourth, third, second, and first cataracts, are so close together that we only reckon them by the number of distinct waterfalls. Nine miles' journey overland will enable us to pass them all. But judging from the number of times that the Baswa tribe have passed Arab canoe flotillas down-

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

wards and upwards in safety, it is evident that there are channels on the right bank which render the passage feasible and even free of danger. They are likely to be of the nature of Nile rapids on the right side; but on the extreme left the cataracts are decidedly impassable.

At the seventh cataract there are four channels. Beginning from the right bank there is a fordable channel about thirty yards wide, which, at low water, is the leakage between a ridge of loose rocks forming a dam-like barrier at the upper end. The channel runs for three miles between the right bank inhabited by the Bakumu, and an island occupied by the Wenya tribe called Wané Rusari, or sons of Rusari. Beyond the island, which is a quarter of a mile broad, is the main right branch of the cataract, about 500 yards wide, which is separated from the main left branch, 300 yards wide, by a rocky islet occupying the centre. Below the foot of the falls of the main left channel is a rocky isle inhabited by the Wané Mikunga tribe of the Wenya, separated from the mainland on the left bank by a rough channel about twenty yards wide. From the right to the left bank at the cataract the width, across islands and water, is about 1330 yards. Between the two inhabited islands, Wane Rusari and Wané Mikunga, the two main channels unite their waters, and rush with inconceivable rapidity through a narrowed channel of perhaps 450 yards, to be diffused below over low reefs and rocky hollows covering a breadth of 1200 yards. Two miles below the island



SCENE FROM THE COVELET NEAR OUR STATION AT STANLEY FALLS. THE SEVENTH CATARACT IN THE DISTANCE.
(From a photograph.)

of Wané Mikunga navigation is interrupted by rock shoals and little rapids. On the right navigation may be continued either up the creek between Wané Rusari and the mainland for a mile higher, or up the main river to a point nearly opposite the lower end of Wané Mikunga.

About a thousand yards above the cataract begins the islands occupied by the tribe of Wané Sironga, commanded by the chiefs Lumami and Yanzi.

The three tribes number about 4000 people—1500 on the isle of Wané Rusari; 1000 at Wane Mikunga; and 1500 on the islands of Wané Sironga. At the present time they are rapidly on the increase, receiving accessions to their numbers from the persecuted Yakusu.

These people are all devoted to fishing. The two main channels are almost bridged at the Falls. At very low water they plant poles between the rocks, and by lashing cross poles, and propping up the up-rights, they have secured access towards the centre of the raging waters. With cables of rattan they lash their baskets into which the fish are swept, and each day these are visited by the daring fishermen. The little island in the centre is reached in large broad canoes cut out of the cottonwood from below. It is an exciting sight to see forty stout fellows paddle one of these through the waves, heedless of the boiling and dangerous waters. They advance along the left bank, and then by desperate strokes they edge diagonally across the stream; the water above the fall being level with their heads. They miss the island as often

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

as they reach it. If they are unsuccessful, they are swept down the united channel, which is a stretch of roaring water, at "express" speed, to try again the dangerous course. But if they can only succeed in holding their own, by dint of united straining and tearing at the water, they will touch the lee of the island, and a few more rapid strokes will bring them to the shore and to their nets. If the nets are full, the fishermen send up a loud wailing shout, which is gladly echoed by the people on the isles, who have gathered each day to watch the daring venture. Disasters are frequent; the most common being when the canoe has been badly steered, and presenting too much beam to the current, it is soon capsized among the leaping and rolling waves. The people for whose profit they labour, their relatives, and their comrades, who have been regarding them from the rocks then with united voices warn all the isles with the news of the disaster, and dozens of canoes shoot from either side to the rescue.

They think nothing of crossing the raging waters between the islands from Wané Mikunga to Wané Rusari. The feat is performed every few minutes by men, women, and children. Such a ferry was never seen. From a little distance off the river, so rapid is the movement, so steep the slope, that one might say that the voyagers were skating down an ice-covered hill.

The islanders have not yet adopted electric signals, but possess, however, a system of communication quite as effective. Their huge drums, by being struck in

different parts, convey language as clear to the initiated as vocal speech; and all the isles and every soul on them is told what transpires on each island hourly.

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

In appearance the Wenya, Yakusu, and Bakumu bear a strong resemblance to the Basoko, though the Bakumu are slightly lighter in complexion.

The Wenya do not cultivate the ground. Their wealth consists solely of fish. Perhaps the average daily catch may be a thousand of from five pounds to half a cwt. in weight, not including the spoils taken by the little boys in the smaller channels, and at insignificant rapids below. Besides what is consumed daily as meat, and what is bartered with the Bakumu for their vegetables, the Wenya have large stores of smoke-cured fish with which they purchase women, child slaves, canoes, and weapons from the Yakusu and the tribes of the Chofu.

These fisher tribes are, of course, impreguably situated so far as regards their security against the hostility of their neighbours. The Yakusu of the quiet river below, or the Bakumu of the mid-cataract section, would shrink from venturing near the isles of the Wenya, protected as they are on almost all sides by the surrounding dangerous waters.

They are an industrious and an inventive people. In the streets of their villages the fish curers attend their lines of curing-platforms; the old men are weaving purse nets and sieves; the able-bodied men are at basket-work; while others weave rattan hawsers. The women are preparing bread, grinding camwood, sifting

1883.
Dec. 1.
Stanley
Falls.

meal, pounding corn, or making crockery. On the waterside are the canoe-wrights doing odd jobs—binding a split bow, a split stern, or a leaky crack, or perhaps cutting out a decayed part and preparing a piece of plank to replace it.

These are the people with whom we proposed to negotiate for partnership in the proprietary rights over the mainland and the isles of the seventh cataract. With the Arabs for our friends, it was clear there would be no dissentients, since both Arabs and aborigines perceived possible benefits. Our settlement at the Falls would enable the half-castes of Nyangwé to obtain cloth to wear at a much cheaper rate than they could obtain it from the East Coast, and the same might be said of various trifles, such as knives, powder, beads, wire, broadcloth, cottons, tools, thread and needles. Medicines might be purchased from our establishment at the Falls; while the native chiefs might, by monthly subsidies of cloth, receive considerable additions to their hard-earned wealth, and the tribe itself be rendered much more presentable as cloth-wearing people than they are in their unqualified nudity.

On the 2nd we cut a path along the right bank through the jungle, and crossed over to the island of Wané Mikunga. The chiefs of the tribes were all met according to a notice which had been given. They first of all gave us a large present of bearded *Silurus*, catfish, and a species of the pike. Among the pile there was the well-known scaleless Singa of the Tanganika, and scale fish of the size of

mackerel, which we found to be afterwards wholesome and sweet.

1883.
Dec. 2.
Wane
Mikunga.

Our palaver was then opened. In brief, we asked to be allowed to stay with them and build a town, and to live in peace with them as their friends and protectors. This exposition of our purpose elicited a lively response. A speaker stood up, and listening to the words in short sentences from our guides, he seemed to be mechanically repeating them, while the others maintained a profound silence until the speaker ended, when all at once a furious hubbub commenced. One might have imagined they were about to fling themselves upon one another, so violent were they in gesture, and so rapid and voluble in speech. This fury subsiding, one after another got up and expounded his views on the matter. If he spoke well and to the point, they who considered his words pertinent and sensible got up and arranged his grass-cloth that covered his rear parts; those who dissented poured forth a torrent of what we supposed were vituperations. This continued until they exhausted themselves, when the palaver was adjourned until the next day at the same hour.

Late in the day a messenger from the guide came to inform me that it was very likely an agreement would be arrived at the next day, and that I might prepare the goods and have them ready. They consisted of beads, knives, mirrors, cloth, wire, &c.

On the 3rd there were some more violent language and furious colloquial torrents, which gradually subsided into decent and tranquil manners. A price was

1883.
Déc. 3.
Wané
Rusari.

agreed upon, by which full lordship over the isles and the left mainland was ceded, with proprietary rights to all unoccupied territory. As the lands were common property belonging to the tribe, over £160 worth of goods were placed upon the ground to be distributed by the chiefs themselves, according to rank and power, which I need not say occasioned many bursts of wordy violence.

Meantime, in the intervals of these palavers, I had explored, in the whale-boat, both shores, and my choice rested on the isle of Wané Rusari for the station. I was guided to this determination by its extent, its fertility of soil, and the convenience of the access to the right bank, whence provisions could be obtained. We proceeded to mark out a site at the lower end of the island, which was covered with a dense bush, wherein, while we cleared, we discovered relics of former inhabitants. At the upper end, at the distance of 1200 yards from the station, were the villages of the tribe, wherein we had experienced a slight struggle in 1877.

Although we had completed all negotiations with the Wenya in a far more successful way than any one could have predicted, it behoved us to provide for the sustenance of the station, and our guide, accompanied by a few of our own men, was sent to Siwa-Siwa, the chief of the Bakumu, who, hearing how happy the Wenya had been made by the white strangers, advanced from the interior, a distance of five miles, with thirty natives, each weighted with cassava, bananas,



STILL HAVEN.

1883.
Dec. 2 to 10.
Wané
Rusari.

yams, sweet potatoes, and pumpkins, besides which the chiefs' women, at the suggestion of the guide, had not neglected to provide for the necessities of the whites, and had brought eggs and fowls, while a small flock of goats was transported to our new island home.

Between Siwa-Siwa and myself it might be said to be love at first sight. Which of us was most effusive it would be difficult to say. His sunny brown face was aglow with so much candour and boyish delight, that probably this caused a warm and spontaneous reciprocity on my part. I admired greatly the loving possessive manner in which his women surrounded me, and cooed their sweetest into each of my ears, without exciting in the least Siwa-Siwa's jealousy, or alarming his susceptibilities. Agreements with Siwa-Siwa required no casuistry to urge his signature. The Wenya had told him everything, and was present to guide his judgment if he hesitated. Siwa-Siwa confided solely in my honour that my coming among them boded no evil, but who knows what good? "Your people shall be my children," said he, "in your absence. Go in safety. It will be my task to feed them, and until you return I shall dream every night of you." Good Fortune certainly seemed to have prepared for me pleasant places in the wilderness!

There only remained one more duty, and that seemed for a time the most difficult, viz., selecting a substitute for the person whom I had conveyed to Stanley Falls to take charge of the station, only to hear him at the

last, pleading earnestly to be returned to the coast. There only remained three engineers—two Scotchmen and a German—and an English man-of-war's man, who acted as skipper of the *A.I.A.* steam-launch. Binnie, a little Scotchman, about 5 feet 3 inches in height, begged to be appointed, but his very slight appearance caused me to be anxious. However, arguing that if a man, after arriving in mid-Africa and bearing the fatigues of the journey, is so enamoured of a residence there that he volunteers to remain, it appeared to me to be evidence that he was possessed of a superior and firm soul that would carry him through any physical weakness, and Binnie, the engineer of the *Royal*, was accordingly appointed chief of Stanley Falls Station *pro tem*.

1883.
Dec. 2 to 10.
Wané
Rusari.

We cleared about four acres of ground for him, constructed a dwelling-place for him, furnished him with tools, axes, hoes, hammers and nails, gave him provisions of wheat flour, meats, coffee, tea, chocolate, sugar, milk, soups, jam, butter, potatoes, bacon, lard, sauce, tapioca, vinegar, brandy, and candles, and stocked his goods store with cloth of various kinds, beads of many colours, cowries, brass wire, rings, wristlets and anklets, tin plates and mugs and pans. Leaving with him thirty-one armed men—soldier-labourers—and a plentiful reserve of ammunition, with abundance of sage advice to be prudent and just in his government, amiable and patient in his intercourse, trustful and courageous, we committed him to the care of Providence, and on the 10th of December we turned

1883.
Dec. 2 to 10.
Wané
Rusari.

our faces homeward, leaving the little man all alone with his grave responsibilities.

We thus had reached the utmost bourne of the expedition, only one day later than the date I had given to the Comité at Brussels. Further progress before consolidation and incorporation of the work of the Association would be unwise. What was required now was to turn our attention to obtaining the Protectorship of the districts intervening between station and station, so that we might become masters of one uninterrupted and consecutive territory from Vivi Station to the Falls, which, now that we had sown seeds of goodwill at every place we had touched, and each tribe would spread diffusively the report of the beauty and value of our labours, it would be an easy task for an intelligent and patient officer like Captain Hanssens, for instance, to perform. Pure benevolence contains within itself grateful virtues. Over natural peoples, nothing has greater charm or such expansible power. Its influence grows without effort; its subtlety exercises itself upon all who come within reach of the hearing of it. Coming in such innocent guise, it offends not; there is naught in it to provoke resentment. Provided patience and good temper guided the chief of Stanley Falls Station, by the period of the return of the steamers the influence of the seedling just planted there will have been extended by the Bakumu far inland, by the Wané Rukura up to the Baswa at the Upper Falls, by the Yakusu visiting the Wenya with their fruits, to exchange for fish, up the Chofu, and

along their own ravaged river borders down to the hearing of the persecuted families on the islands. The Basoko would then hear of it, and regret that such a seedling had not been left with them, to grow up amongst them, and to overshadow them with its benign shade.

1883.
Dec. 2 to 10.
Wané
Rusari.

CHAPTER XXXI.

DOWN THE CONGO TO STANLEY POOL.

Going with the stream—The Arabs send their confidential men with us—Navigability of the Lumami and Lubilash—Wreck of the *Royal*—Beaching and repairing the wreck—Cold winds on the river—Iboko in confusion—Impudent thieving—A prisoner—"Fast bind, fast find"—A horrified father—Refusal of a ransom—Cordiality at Ukumira—Mata Bwyki in a passion—More prisoners—Restitution of our stolen property—Freeing the prisoners—A horrible massacre—Young Glave of Yorkshire—Bolobo station again burnt—News from the missionaries—Again at Léopoldville—Troublesome news from Vivi.

1883.
Dec. 10.
Yakondé.

BEING borne down by the current of the tawny flood of the Congo assisted by steam was naturally much more exhilarating than laboriously breasting it. A little after noon on the 10th we were in camp again with the Arabs, who had moved their quarters, and were hutted and stockaded on the left bank, on the site of ruined Yakondé.

For reasons of polity I set about persuading the chiefs to send with us to the coast a few of their confidential men, that they might witness for themselves what influences were advancing up the river on whose banks they had created such widespread havoc. It appeared to me the best mode of suggesting to them,

rather than saying so in many words, that it would be wiser to abstain from committing these sanguinary battues, than to risk meeting some day a gunboat with a police force on board, who probably might deal summarily with such a slave-raiding band as we had found housed so openly on the river banks. Meantime they could send specimens of their ivory, and obtain a few necessaries of which, perhaps, they were in need. They accepted the proposal, and they accordingly sent ten of their confidential slaves with three tusks each. It was exceedingly inconvenient, naturally, while engaged in the conveyance of men and stores, and planting stations along the river, to engage carrying passengers; still I regarded it as part of the mission, and by no means the least useful portion of it.

1883.
Dec. 12.
Isangi.

On the 12th we continued on our voyage down river; the Arabs on board could tell us incidents in connection with each of the ruined villages as we glided past. Yaporo was soon passed, and an hour later we came to the mouth of the affluent Lubiranzi. Our passengers had been up this river, and had utterly devastated the country on each side. Twenty-five miles higher up rapids are met, but above these a few miles the Lumami and the Lubilash meet, both being navigable for hundreds of miles. At the large town of Isangi, situated at the left corner of the confluence, the natives had begun to build again, but on our appearance they scrambled and hurried away in quick flight across the river, forming a flotilla with which the Congo might have been bridged easily.

1883.
Dec. 14.
Yalulima.

Probably 12,000 natives were afloat, as some of the canoes were very large, containing about a hundred people.

The mouth of the Lubiranzi was about 800 yards wide, showing that it ranks in size with the Biyerré.

On the 13th we passed by the warrior tribe of the Bahunga, in the district of Bunga, and four hours later spoke with the Barumbu. These are situate on the highlands nearly opposite the mouth of the Biyerré. We left a promise that the next time the steamers should ascend they would be visited and treated with, and camped at evening below Bungungu among the Bahamba tribe. This was the ultimate point which the Arab raiders had reached.

On the 14th my arm was scarified at Iruba, a short time later at Mbungu, and at noon at the new settlement of Yalulima, after stopping an hour at each place in order that our presence on their waters might be understood.

On the 15th we had arrived at the place above Ikassa, whence we crossed over to the right bank in the ascent. Having traced the left bank from Stanley Falls down to Ikassa, and in our ascent traced the remainder, we now stretched across the river to continue the exploration of the right bank. In doing so the steam-launch *Royal* was steered too near the upper extremity of an island, and, striking a snag, sank immediately to her gunwale. The other boats rushed to the rescue to unload her of her passengers and the cargo of ivory belonging to our Arab guests; and, examining her condition, we perceived that she was

upborne by the snag. We were obliged to camp, and let her remain there until morning.

1883.
Dec. 17.
Upoto.

After eight hours' work on the 16th we succeeded in chipping off the snag; and, ramming canvas into the foot-wide rent in her hull, we floated the *Royal* on to a bank, and afterwards hauled her up on the dry land, and turned her over. A space three feet in length by eighteen inches in width was sawn out, as it was hopelessly fractured, and we commenced to rebuild her out of the remnants of dunnage, on which we were accustomed to lay our cloth bales. Our tools consisted of a saw, two gimlets, a brace and bits, a hatchet, a rasp, and two dozen screws. By the evening of the 19th the repairs were completed, the boat was again launched, the engines were fixed, and the loads replaced ready for the morrow's departure.

The Congo, ever since our start up the Biyerré on the 17th, had been steadily falling, and as the *Royal* was a deep boat, drawing three feet six inches water, we found the exploration was not very easy whenever we left the main channels.

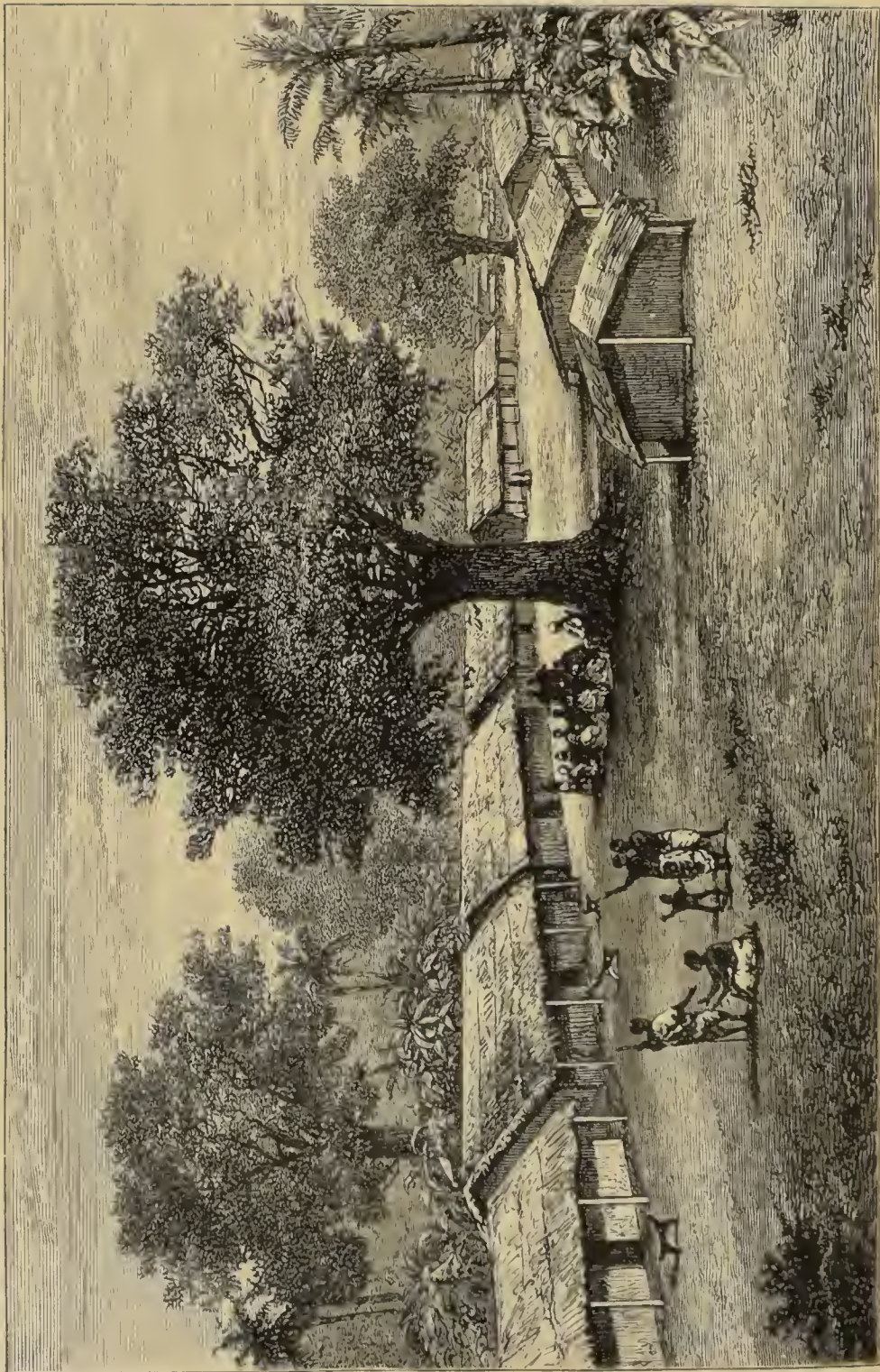
At 11 A.M. we were skirting the hills of Upoto. We halted here to purchase provisions, to make brotherhood with Lubungu and Ibanza or Minyoto, and make a treaty. A beautiful pièce of ground commanding a magnificent view was also purchased. Representatives from Ukelé, Umangi, Mpissa, and Iringi appeared also, and, being neighbours of Upoto, we concluded treaties with them.

On the 23rd we passed the river of Ubika, whence

1883.
Dec. 23.
Upoto.

issued the wild men who had overrun so much of the left bank. As the main force of the flood sheered towards the left bank in this locality, we could only occasionally follow the right bank. The cold winds met in our rapid descent by steam and with the current prostrated us. This was the first time I had suffered the slightest indisposition for months, because while ascending the river we had been retiring before the wind. In coming down from Stanley Falls as far as Upoto, we were proceeding towards the flank of the wind-current. When we finally began to descend along the south-westerly stretch—the force of the current, between two and three knots, blowing up from sea—the six-knot speed of the steamers, increased the force of the wind which we had to face to about nine knots, which at once checked the insensible perspiration, and deranged the system. Two whites and a coloured man fell victims to the first day's experience of this peculiar change. Glass windows, which would have served as a protection against the wind, and enabled us to pilot the steamers, would have saved us many a day's illness.

On the 24th we passed by other villages of the Wabika, who have been in their turn harried by the Bangala. It has taught them to build their village lines along small tributaries of the Congo, the mouths of which can be blocked, and by which they present insignificant points to the foe, and secure safe retreats inland when the Bangala are on one of their raiding expeditions.



A STREET SCENE IN IBADAN.

Passing by Lusengo, we soon afterwards came in sight of the territory of Iboko.

1883.
Dec. 25.
Iboko.

Christmas Day found us halted at central Iboko, at the landing-place of the old chief Mata Bwyki. The ancient of the Bangala was absent at Bukumbi on the left bank. Kokoro, his son, was suffering from a severe ulcer in the foot. Boleko was removing his village and his belongings in order to occupy a new clearing at the lower end of Iboko. Mbembé, the second son, had departed on a trading tour to Langa-Langa. Njugu, the favourite nephew, had lost four children in one day by drowning, and was therefore seeking forgetfulness of his sorrows in the beer-pot.

The "cats being away, the mice began to play." Thieving became rampant; the "unwashed" of Iboko were ripe for mischief; and they gathered on the bank in great numbers, affecting much joy at beholding the brother of their "Lord of Many Guns." But the strong under-current of motives in pressing so warmly forward presently disclosed itself by the sly abstraction of "unconsidered trifles." A boat rowlock, a spear, an opera-glass, a cap, a bag of clothes, an umbrella, and in the strangest manner a tin-box, belonging to one of the whites who was always the most unsuspecting of individuals, and who required to be prompted on every occasion not to put too large a faith in affected friendships.

As continual reports of theft by people who would naturally steal so long as they were tempted by other people's gross negligence of their own properties were

1883.
Dec. 25.
Iboko.

very irritating, our people received warning that the first who brought news of a theft would be punished, and he who first caught a thief would be rewarded. For the result of this we had not long to wait: a man was caught in the act, and a dozen willing hands laid hold of him. The Bangala, however, rushed to the rescue, and seized him also, and would have succeeded in wresting him from his captors had I not hurried up to lend assistance.

We carried our prisoner away in triumph on board the steamer, and bound him securely on the principle of "fast bind, fast find." Orders were then given to make steam.

An hour passed without further alarm. Then a man was caught in the act of abstracting a boat flag, with the intention doubtless of wearing it about his loins. Such an indignity to the golden-starred flag was not to be permitted, and an impetuous rush was made on the prisoner, but he by superhuman exertions escaped.

Kokoro, hearing of all these disgraceful proceedings of his father's subjects, came in a canoc, and was paddled up and down the river-side, threatening dire vengeance in a loud, hoarse voice upon the thieves, but no one paid the slightest heed to him, seeing which he advised me to be on the alert, and catch every rogue among them. He advanced alongside of the steamer, to look at our prisoner, and was horrified to find that he was his own son!

His stoicism was that of the slayer of the Tarquins.

He essayed to speak, but the words would not issue. In a moment of rage he had condemned unwittingly his own son. Poor Kokoro! I saw too well what his emotions were caused by. He thought of his son, the heir of Iboko, being a slave conveyed to unknown lands. It was on the tip of my tongue to order his release to relieve the poor fellow's agony, but I desisted, knowing the African too well. However, I said :

1883.
Dec. 25.
Iboko.

“Kokoro, if this is your son I shall obtain my property back, and your boy will be returned safe into your hands.”

He went away with head bent down and finger on his lips, and never spoke a word, thinking perhaps of what he should say to the mother.

With such an important prisoner on board, Iboko was no place for us, and we steamed across to the island opposite. Thither Njugu came, prompted by his cousin Kokoro, to negotiate for his son's release. He offered two tusks of ivory and two slaves if we would free him.

“Not for twenty slaves, and twenty tusks of ivory. Look here, you Njugu! What do you mean by making blood-brotherhood with me and my people and then robbing us. To steal is to make war. War is met with war. Do you forget the Ibanza, who years ago descended by your town? Have you quite forgotten your trouble with Irebu, caused by the thieving of the Bangala? Go back and tell Kokoro I am going down river to the Bakuti, and I will take his son with me. On the tenth day I shall return, when I shall expect

1883.
Dec. 28.
Uranga.

my property back, and Kokoro will get his boy safe again." Soon after we continued our journey down river.

On the 28th, with many troubles from sand bars, we passed by the populous districts of Usimbi and Ubengo, and at 4 p.m. entered a narrow channel leading to Ukumira.

This last community came into view early next morning. Ukumira seemed to have projected itself in one body to greet us. It consists of twelve villages, extending along a ten-mile length of river bank. The land is very low but densely wooded, and the islands opposite are remarkable for the apparent impenetrability of their bush.

A few miles below Ukumira is the well-peopled district of Bungata, extended in a long line along the right bank. From its upper end a spacious channel of the Congo strikes obliquely across towards the left bank, to be deflected along it by the dry airy bluff banks of Uranga at the confluence of the Lukungu and the Congo. No sooner did we appear than Uranga also poured forth its multitudes, who showed effusive demonstrations of welcome. Our reputation evidently had been widely extended in our absence. Uranga was even more cordial than Ukumira, the left bank vied with the right bank in extending fraternal amenities. Seventy well-manned canoes darted about us, hailing Bula Matari by name, wishing him "more power," dinning his ears with numberless invitations to their different villages, and displaying noisy argumentative-

ness about the superiority of their respective chiefs. One of these clamorous canoe-crews was that which swept Iuka of Lukolela alongside of us. He had ventured to Uranga on a trading excursion, and had already acquired a valuable stock of ivory, while the prospect of increase was promising.

1883.
Dec. 29.
Uranga.

Being an old friend, we accompanied him to his hotel-village, whither presently all the Uranga chiefs gathered to make blood-brotherhood, to fraternise over huge pots full of beer, and to exchange views for the future settlement of a station, and arbitrament of disputes. As every canoe arriving up-river from the cloth-marts of Irebu, Usindi, Lukolela, and Bolobo had been bringing the latest news of Bula Matari's doings, the fruit was ready ripe. We made a treaty with Uranga, while much loud but harmless fusilading celebrated the event.

Starting from Uranga at 8.20 A.M., we arrived at Equator Station at 4.20 P.M., to find that Lieutenants Vangele and Coquilhat were well, and that they had extended their improvements by planting an avenue of bananas, besides in many other ways beautifying the station. Ikengé, the native chief, was dead, and no further trouble was anticipated from him.

Our prisoner, the grandson of Mata Bwyki, was introduced to Equator Station, to the "big house" of the Mundelé, to the other white men and to the garrison, to the piles of goods, including the array of cloths, and the wealth of vari-coloured beads—in order that he might retain the best impressions, and assist us with

1884.
Jan. 1.
Iboko.

his artless story of what he had seen among the pale-faces.

On the 1st of January, 1884, we started on our return journey to Iboko, for the sake of our prisoner and the consummation of other projects. Lieutenant Coquilhat accompanied us.

We arrived at Central Iboko at 2 p.m. of the 5th. Mata Bwyki was present. He had in fact arrived only thirty minutes after I had departed, bound for Equator Station. He was furious at the manner we had been treated, and now when speaking he was almost suffocated by his own angry passions, when relating to me what he had learned on his return.

“As for Kokoro’s son, keep him safe until your goods are restored. You took him away—that made us all sorry at first; but now that you have brought him back we have no fear of you. It will do him good, and he will be an example to the rest.”

The 6th passed away, and still the young fellow was on board, but on the 7th a grand council of the chiefs of Iboko was convened, and a great concourse of men attended.

During the sitting Njugu whispered to me that one of the thieves who was known to possess articles belonging to us was present. “If you can trust your men, seize him and hold him fast. Kokoro’s son must not be a captive alone.”

A few whispered instructions to one of my confidential servants served to bring twenty of the boats’ crews ashore, with cords under their clothes. The thief

was pointed out, and the obedient fellows so manœuvred that he was captured amidst the circle of chiefs. Of course there was confusion and excitement, wild talk and furious gestures, but nevertheless my men conveyed the thief aboard, and bound him hand and foot. The council continued its sitting after the subsidence of the alarm, but in a few minutes another thief was arrested from behind one of the chiefs, and, despite menaces, which one time pushed patience to the very narrowest verge of safety, he was carried away captive.

1884.
Jan. 7
Iboko.

Old Mata Bwyki enjoyed himself immensely, Njugu and Mbembé remained strangely quiet at all this, which caused all the chiefs to ask them what it all meant.

Mata Bwyki rose, and said: "It only means that Bula Matari knows the customs of the Bangala. If a thief is known, he may be held in bond until a restitution of the stolen property is made. Bula Matari has now got three prisoners, one of whom is my own grandson. He shall keep them, sell them, or kill them—just as he may—unless his property be returned to him. Bula Matari has acted like a brother. He was robbed. He went away for ten days; he came back to give us another opportunity. Now find the goods you have stolen from him, or else he shall take his captives away and cut them up in little pieces if he likes. I have spoken."

Seeing which, the chiefs agreed with him that to do injury to a strong man, to Bula Matari, was very impo-

1884.
Jan. 7.
Iboko.

litic. The town-criers were therefore despatched in all directions to announce the doom that would surely befall the grandson of Mata Bwyki and two other sons of the Bangala if the goods were not restored. As Iboko is a very large settlement, this restitution could not be effected immediately, but on the 9th, one by one the plundered articles were brought to Mata Bwyki, and the old chief returned them to me. Then when a due inspection of the goods had been made, and not one of the dozens of articles abstracted was found missing, the prisoners were set free, and conducted to Mata Bwyki, who was seen to smile grimly on his wicked grandson, and was heard to admonish the assembled Bangala to leave the property of Bula Matari severely alone in future lest a dreadful fate might overtake the guilty party.

On the 10th a treaty was entered into with Iboko; and, in peace with all the Bangala, at evening we steamed away down the Congo.

Arriving at Equator Station, a curious story was related to us by two European eye-witnesses of the proceedings, the narration of which recalls to our memories the sanguinary customs of Dahomey. We had heard of cruel sacrificing of life before; but the stories were told by Africans, who have the habit of relating events of this kind in the most matter-of-fact manner. When, however, Europeans describe them they strike home to our sense of horror with a shocking force.

An important chief of the neighbourhood—an old

and long-ago superannuated potentate, of whose existence I had previously been unaware—died, and, according to the custom of the By-yanzi and Bakuti, slaves had to be massacred to accompany him to the land of spirits. Accordingly the relatives and free-men began to collect as many slaves as could be purchased. Lieutenant Vangele was chief of about fifty men, and on account of the good discipline of the station, and the prompt obedience paid to his commands by the garrison, the Bakuti imagined the soldier-labourers in the pay of the Association to be slaves, and proposed to purchase a few of them. Vangele was curious to know why they wanted the men, and he was then informed of the preparations being made to celebrate the burial of their chief with an execution of slaves. Of course the proposal was rejected with horror, and the garrison chased the Bakuti with sticks out of the precincts of the station.

1884.
Jan. 11.
Equator.

The mourning relatives finally secured fourteen men from the interior, and, being notified by the villagers that the execution was about to begin, M. Vangele and his friend proceeded with a few of their men to view the scene.

They found quite a number of men gathered around. The doomed men seen were kneeling with their arms bound behind them in the neighbourhood of a tall young tree, near the top of which the end of a rope had been lashed. A number of men laid hold of the cord and hauled upon it until the upper part of the tree was bent like a bow. One of the captives was

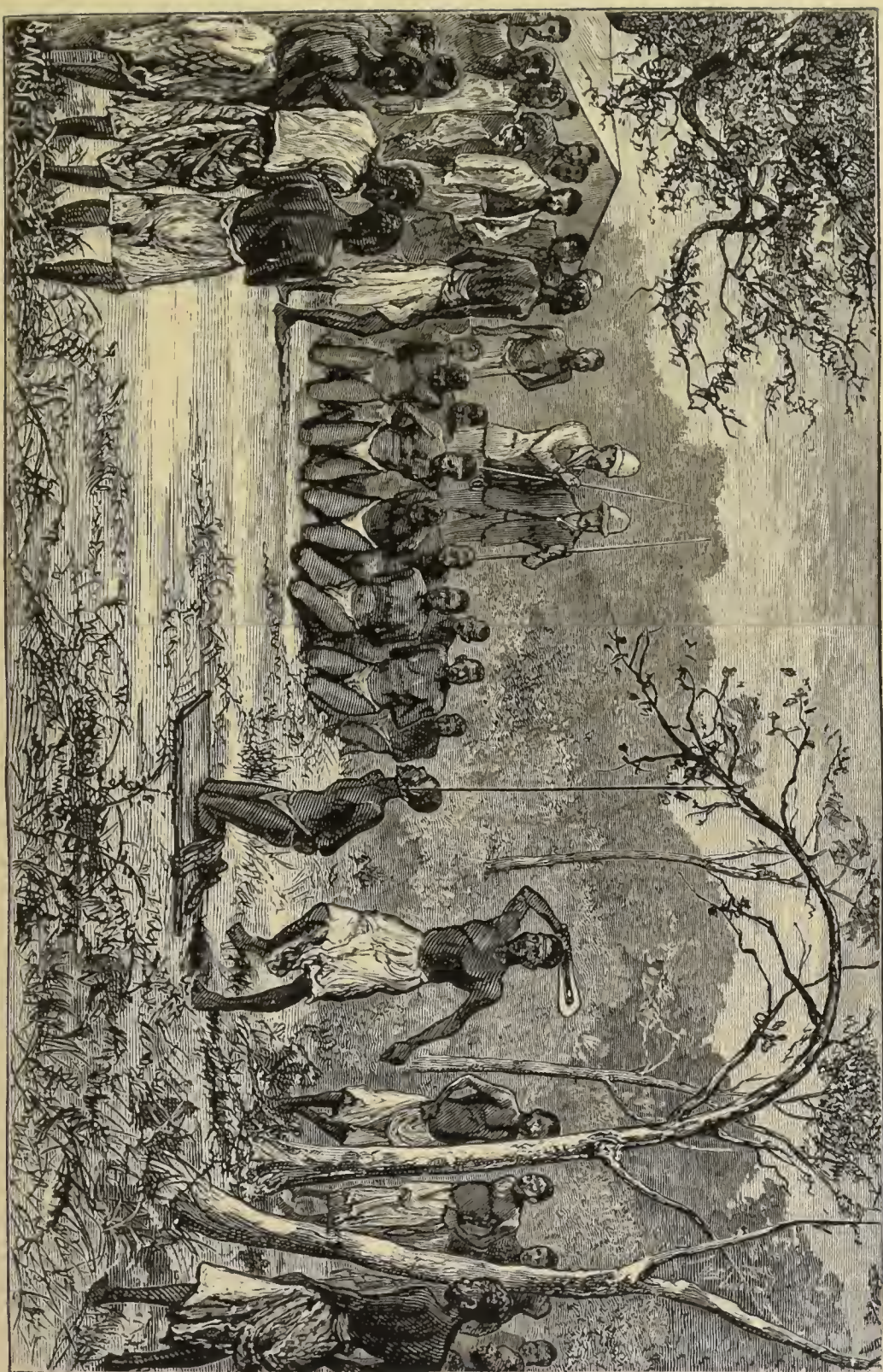
1884.
Jan. 12.
Equator.

selected, and the dangling end of the rope was fastened round his neck; the tree sprang several inches higher, drawing the man's form up, straining the neck, and almost lifting the body from the ground. The executioner then advanced with his short broad-bladed falchion, and measured his distance by stretching his weapon from the position he intended to strike across the nape of the neck. He repeated this operation twice. At the third time he struck, severing the head clean from the body. It was whipped up to the air by the spring of the released tree and sent rebounding several yards away. The remaining captives were despatched one after another in like manner. Their heads were unfleshed by boiling, that the skulls might decorate the poles round the grave. The bodies were dragged away and thrown into the Congo; the soil saturated with the blood was gathered up and buried with the defunct chief.

However much our young military lieutenant might have wished to exert himself to save these victims of savage usage, since money would not buy their liberty, he had to content himself with knowing that he was as yet helpless. The year of grace will no doubt come in its own destined time, but it may not be hurried. To violently resist the butchers with rifles would simply have been to make them victims instead, and to depopulate the land.

On the 13th we left Equator Station, and arrived at Usindi late in the afternoon. Yumbila, the guide, was delivered, with his wages, to his master Miyongo, who

EXECUTION OF SLAVES BY THE WAKUTU, NEAR EQUATOR STATION.



was also made happy with a munificent reward for the loan of the services of his servant.

1884.
Jan. 13.
Ngombé.

Leaving Usindi, we halted at Ngombé, to exchange friendly gifts, and to obtain a promise of concessions; and on the 14th we arrived at Lukolela. Young Glave, of Yorkshire, had not made much of an advance in the construction of his station, as the work was hard; but he himself, which was of more importance, was in extraordinary condition. He was as fat as a butcher's boy, he had become double-clinned, and amplified a third larger in body. Petted by the natives, he was beloved by his garrison, and was on excellent terms with himself. He had been devoting himself to furniture-making—had made chairs, tables, doors, shutters, and shelves. He had a good deal to say of the curious diseases revealed to him during his stay at Lukolela. Fevers were almost unknown; but whitlows, ulcers, sores, and similar troubles, were frequent and annoying.

The gravest news we received from Lukolela was contained in a note from the chief of Bolobo Station. For the second time the station had been burnt to the ground!

On the 15th we arrived at Bolobo, and saw for ourselves the relics of the destructive conflagration—the houses, goods, rifles, even the Krupp's carriage had been destroyed, and the ammunition and shells had exploded.

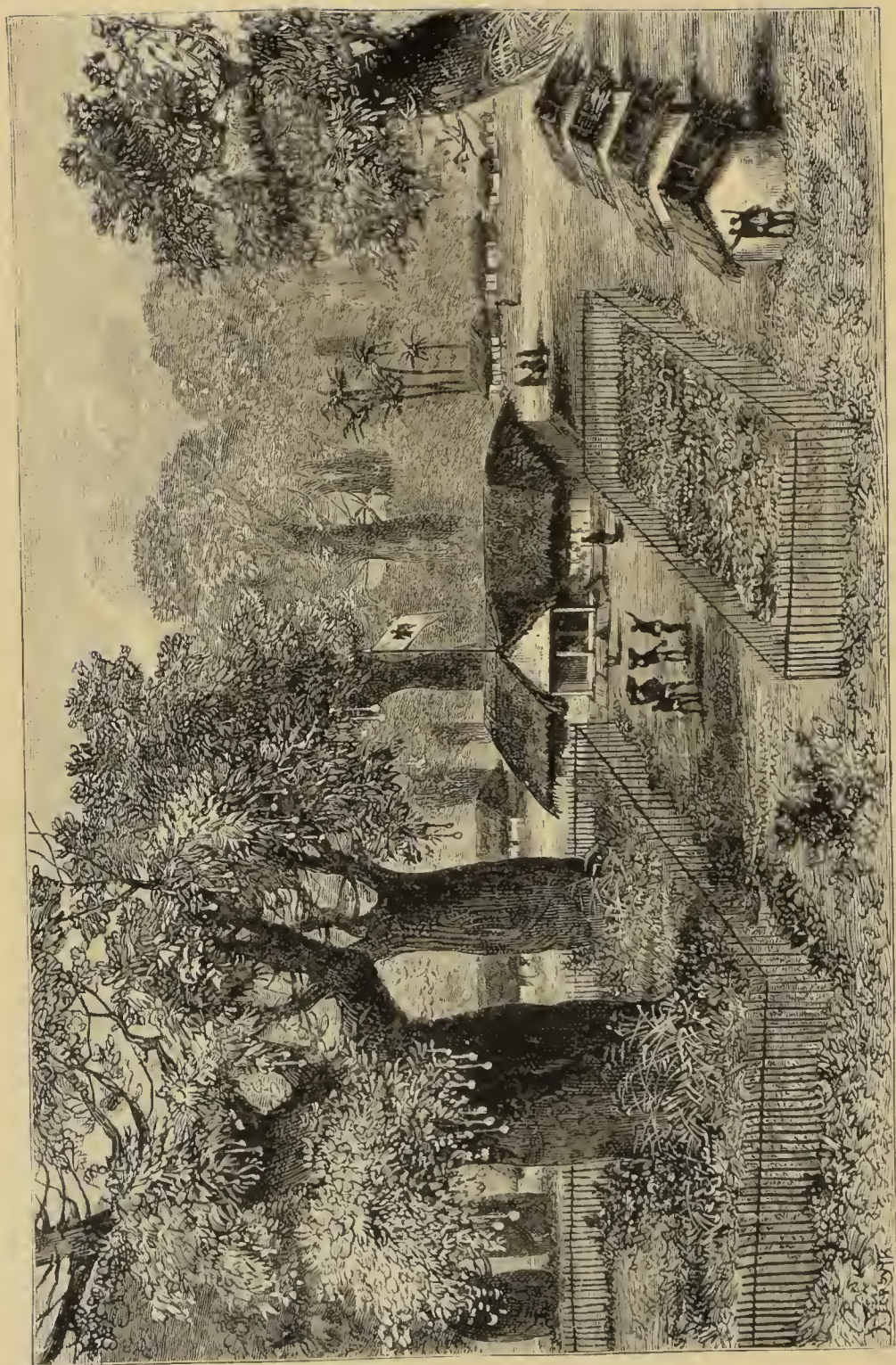
The story told to me was that a sick man, getting light-headed, and feeling that his end was approaching,

1884.
Jan. 15.
Bolobo.

resolved to have an honourable burial. When a chief died the body was enveloped in thousands of yards of cloth, and interred with protracted ceremonies. Kegs of gunpowder were consumed in the volleys fired over the grave; slaves were massacred, and the soil was saturated with the blood; his favourite wives were strangled, and their bodies laid alongside. He, friendless, sick, and dying, pined for this honour, and erept by night to apply the destructive torch to Bula Matari's houses. Although he was arrested while flying from the scene, nothing could be done to avert or check the catastrophe. Being thatched with grass baked crisp by the tropic sun, the fire fiend rushed up to the sky, and was glutted only when a few crimson embers marked the site of our unfortunate station. To avoid the bursting shells the garrison had to fly to the saw-pits, and to the hollows by the river-side. During the excitement the prisoner fled, to die in the forest beyond Bolobo, satisfied, no doubt, with the honours he had won by his mad freak.

But however this second destruction may have been caused, this third event during the administration of the chief of the station appeared to prove that a sinister influence affected Bolobo, which probably might be averted by a judicious change of masters.

Lieutenant Liebrechts, who, while at Léopoldville, seemed to be a sufferer from chronic debility, so that he was inelastic in movement, pallid of face, and infirm of step, had been transferred in September to Bolobo. We half expected to hear that he was among the missing,



KINSHASSA STATION, STANLEY POOL.

or had departed homewards; but our astonishment was very great when a strong, martial-looking figure appeared at the landing-place to greet us, in the perfection of health and condition, and disclosed himself to us as Lieutenant Liebrechts. To see a man thus restored to us flushed with strength, a new and richer bloom of manhood on his face, and the light of renovated life glancing from his eyes, reconciled us to hear with patience the tale of the second burning of Bolobo.

1884.
Jan. 16.
Bolobo.

This is the young gentleman to whom subsequently was intrusted the reconstruction of the station, and, though fifteen months have elapsed since the period of his appointment, nothing has occurred to cause us to doubt that the unkind Fates have not been at last duly propitiated.

The news we learned at Bolobo, relating to political and missionary efforts, was that Dr. Ballay had at last emerged at the mouth of the Likuba, and had constructed a station at Bossi. The chief of the Livingstone Inland Congo Mission had been a visitor at Bolobo prospecting for a site, and had finally selected Misongo, below Chumbiri, as a suitable locality to establish a mission-house.

On the 18th we arrived at Kwamouth Station. The station was well advanced, food was abundant, and the natural advantages were many.

On the 20th of January we arrived at Kinshassa, and were gratified to observe the station not only in process of erection, but rapidly approaching completion, under the grove of mighty baobab which characterises this

1884.
Jan. 20.
Kinshassa.

district. Consistent, patient conduct, and steady forbearance had performed wonders, and the most intractable community on the Upper Congo had been converted to have a perfect faith in our honesty and in the purity of our motives.

Two hours after leaving Kinshassa, the flotilla steamed into the cove of Léopoldville, from which it had been absent 146 days, having meantime travelled 3050 miles on the Upper Congo.

Léopoldville, as might be expected from the happy selection of its chief, Lieutenant Valcke, was a flourishing station. For from the matin to the vesper bells, excepting Sundays, work—purposeful work—ran on in a steady, unruffled current. By this means, nature assisting, the gardens teemed with abundance, and the houses lined the terrace in an imposing row, so that our guests from Nyangwé uttered exclamations of admiration which were indeed echoed by everybody on the boats. Nor on searching into details was there any cause found for regret. All the chiefs round about were on excellent terms with the Europeans; the market held at Léopoldville Plaza supplied all that the community needed. There had been no outbreak of temper, and, consequently, there was no marring or inharmonious incident to relate. The magazines were full of goods and provisions, containing enough to supply all the stations on the Upper River, and for the new places to be established on the next journey to the regions above.

Meantime, on the Lower Congo, owing to the fact



VIEW OF LIÉPOLDEVILLE STATION AND PORT, 1881.
THE BAPTIST MISSION ON THE SUMMIT OF LIÉPOLDE HILL. (From a photograph.)

that the superior person promised to me in 1882 as principal assistant, and second chief or administrator, had not arrived, the confusion had been very great at our principal base. "Captain" D—— had made only a short stay at Vivi, but his reign had been a singularly unhappy one. Owing to some incomprehensible reason, Vivi, both with its Europeans and natives, was in a ferment continually. Finally, Sir Frederick Goldsmith had appeared, and had relieved the station of the presence of "Captain" D——. Sir Frederick had himself made an inspection of the country as far as Isangila, but had returned to Europe, and the kindly influence that had begun to glow on the Lower River became extinguished at his departure. Chief after chief had tried their fortunes with governing this Augean station, but each and all had failed to relieve me of the manifold complaints that poured to Léopoldville during my absence. Out of 120 letters awaiting me on my return from the Falls, all but thirty contained the most deplorable accounts, and revealed a state of affairs that compelled me to abandon the hope that it could ever be remedied while the Chief of the Expedition remained away on the Upper Congo. With an efficient second it might be possible yet, but, excepting the notice of Sir Frederick Goldsmith, who had already returned to Europe, there was no promise or indication that the Comité intended to assist me with any one. Therefore, after seeing the steamers and boats duly prepared and equipped, and framing most elaborate instructions for

1884.
Jan. 21.
Léopold-
ville.

1884.
Jan. 21.
Léopold-
ville.

the guidance of my deputy, Captain Hanssens, besides seeing that our Arab guests had been conducted to the sea and back to Léopoldville, I turned my steps towards Vivi, twenty-four hours before the gallant Captain departed on his long journey to Stanley Falls.

CHAPTER XXXII.

RETURN TO VIVI.

Starting of our caravan—A promising farewell—Ngalyema's last words—Encouraging resolutions of the officers—Hospitality of the natives as we pass—Nselo ferry—Quarrel between Ngombi and Mbimbi—Peace-making—Forms of our treaties with native chiefs—List of districts and their chiefs—The cut-throat Luteté is changed for the better—An extending and dangerous *crévasse*—Lava at Kalulu Falls: "Whence has it come?"—Manyanga "higgledy-piggledy"—Hospitality at the mission-house of Mr. and Mrs. Ingham—A pretty station—Luima and Lunionzo valleys—Climate and health—Congo la Lemba—View of Vivi—Unhappy reflections upon its neglect.

ON the morning our caravan was to start for the coast, I was deeply impressed with the proof of success which our patient labours had won. For on the spacious terrace, covering about 15,000 square yards, which we had carved out of the side of Léopold Hill, and converted into a grand promenade and market-place, were assembled the chiefs of Kintamo and a few hundreds of their people to give me a "good-bye."

Ngalyema had long ago emerged out of the state of childish tutelage. He was a complete man in a state of military subordination—as much as an inde-

1884.
March 20.
Léopold-
ville.

1884.
March 20.
Léopold-
ville.

pendent aboriginal chief could well be. He knew his Sundays as well as any of us, and kept due observance of them by hoisting the gold-star flag at sunrise; he paid friendly visits without requiring hostages, and was not averse to picking up trifles of information respecting the sea-lands; he had dropped his natural petulance and inordinate heroics, and now exchanged gifts without expecting more than their value. A few times also he had surprised me by the utterance of sentiments that caused me to glance sharply at him to detect if possible the spirit that prompted them. For instance, it sounded oddly to be told by Ngalyema that the "gifts of friends should not be examined as to their worth." "A pea-nut from a true friend is better than a bunch of bananas from an enemy." "Among friends you may sleep with open doors." "A look into a friend's eyes is better than a treasure of cloth from a man you doubt."

When I had drawn my men in line, Ngalyema pressed forward for a last word. He wished me to charge my white sons whom I was to leave behind not to be rude to him and his people, now that the father was going away; not to push and smack his children when they came to visit the station, for, said he, "White men differ from one another as much as black men. We are all friends and brothers now, but when the old man is gone the young man's head grows large, and he speaks with a loud tongue; charge the sons you leave behind that they do not forget that we are Bula Matari's brothers."

Whereupon I called Captain Seymour Saulez up, and presented him to Ngalyema for final words.

1884.
March 20
Léopold-
ville.

“See, Ngalyema, this son of mine. Believe in him as you would believe in me. He is slow to anger, not apt to break his word. While he wears this face be not afraid of him. If it turns black you will know that he has become your enemy. Watch it daily, and when it begins to change its colour you will know that the evil spirit is in him; until that time sleep in peace. Fare you well, Ngalyema, Makabi, Mubi, old Ngako, and you Manswala, Ganchu, Enjéli—good-bye all of you!”

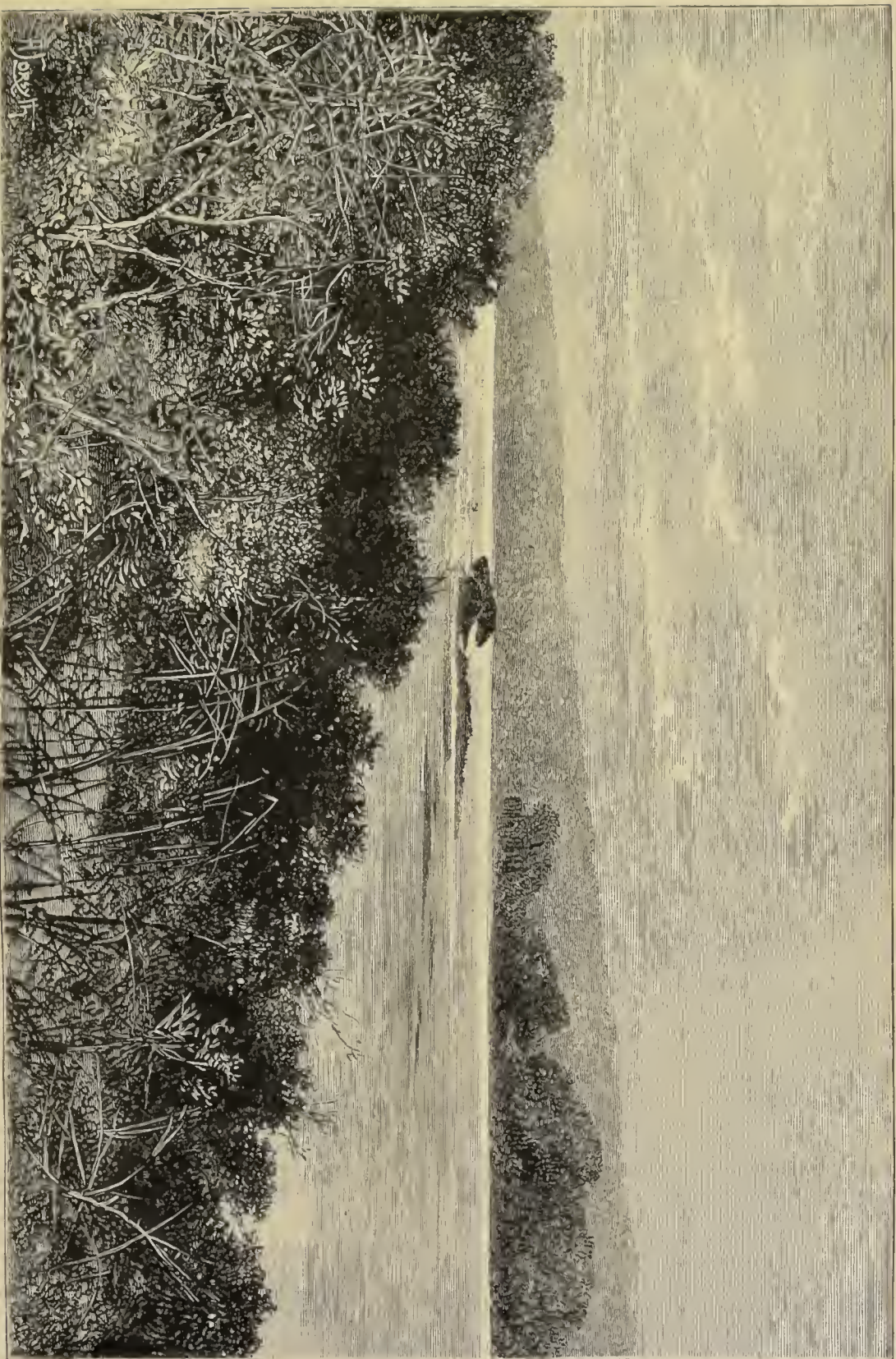
The large caravan lifted its burdens and struck out along the road leading to the coast, many of the men never again to see Léopoldville, which they had assisted to build. The parting with the Europeans was affectionate. With Captain Saulez's promise ringing in my ears, that he would distinguish his governorship by the industrious improvement of Léopoldville, until it became a model station; and the assurance of Dr. van den Heuvel that he would complete his sanatorium on the summit of Léopold Hill, and perform his duties manfully and nobly; with the carpenter Schnoor's promise that I should hear no ill repute of him; with Captain Hanssens' declaration that he would be wary and watchful on the Upper Congo, and patient with the natives;—with good words, in short, of noble resolves from each and all, and loud cheers from the garrison, and waving of hands from the throngs of natives, I followed my caravan now travelling eastward.

1884.
March 20.
Léopold-
ville.

Along the road the friendly chiefs had collected great earthen jars full of fresh and foaming palm-juice. At every village the women had prepared pots of cold water to give myself and my people a parting drink, and to bid us kindly adieus.

Ngamberengi, Ngoma, and old Makoko were by the roadside with their friends, slaves, and children, to see the last of us, and every village we passed showed the appearances of a general holiday. The acquaintance of many months with them had ripened into a full friendship. Not a shadow remained of the doubt which in old times blinded their eyes and clouded their vision. The fond regard we had mutually conceived towards one another was unmistakeably genuine. Their rough hands, often horny from labour and ill-usage, felt as warm to me as any that I had touched elsewhere.

On our march to Inkissi we slept first at Ngoma's, a place which rests lovingly under the lee of the sheltering mountain of Iyumbi. We crossed the breezy ridge whence we may gaze over a world of lower hill-domes divided from one another by the sinuous lines of dark foliage. We plunged down into the cool forest tangle at its base, and emerged into full sunlight tracing the spines of level ridges. We dipped down into the hollows made fresh with streams and verdure, and then climbed up to rest under Mbé's friendly and grateful palms. Along an elevated and grassy tableland, with the Congo a few miles to our right tearing down over its successive terraces, we next journeyed.



VIEW DOWN THE CONGO, A FEW MILES ABOVE THE CONFLUENCE OF THE LULAMBA WITH THE CONGO.

Beyond Kinzila's banana groves we descended to cross the pellucid waters of the brawling Lulu, and a few miles west camped on a square-browed hill opposite the cones of Nsangu, whence we looked down on winding belts of tall woods crowned with impervious leafage, on which the sunshine broke out in sprays as the breeze kissed the pendulous and delicate tops.

1884.
March 20.
Kinzila.

Over a road which gently undulated and followed long, grassy ridges we urged our way, being greeted by pleasant peoples who flocked from their happy villages to see us, until we stood over a deep-wooded gorge through which the full-volumed Inkissi River flowed strongly past the ferry to fall lower down in beautiful cascades to the Congo.

The guardians of the ferry are at Nselo on the western side, and the word is holloa'd loudly that Bula Matari and his people are come. The chiefs of Nselo are in our pay, and receive monthly subsidies like others. They accordingly hasten to ferry us over with their canoes, assiduously, and in their village give us such further welcome as commend them favourably to kind consideration.

Beyond Nselo the country is for a considerable distance level, feeders of the Inkissi skirting, left of us, the plateau on which we travel. We are too far from the Congo to be annoyed by the deeply-grooved hills. We cross a lovely little stream, and follow a gentle inclined spur towards Mbimbi, near which we see,

1884.
March 20.
Mbimbi.

suspended to a tree, a felon whom Judge Lynch of Congo-land has condemned for pilfering in the public market.

The folks of Mbimbi welcome us with gleeful shouts, for here are our carriers who know us all well. They sweep the huts, and tidy them for their guests, while bowls and foaming pots of palm-wine come forth as a grateful testimony of their regard for us.

Ngombi, close by to the right, has excited the anger of Mbimbi, and the chiefs of the latter wish me to advise them how to slake their fury in the best blood of Ngombi. Here is a storm in a teapot, truly! My work of preaching peace and brotherhood is not yet ended, and so they have to listen to paternal admonitions to keep the peace. The road cannot, must not, be closed! No fighting nor sounds of gunshot must be heard; the carrier travels with empty hands but loaded back, and they must not be frightened by the noise of strife, the cries of war, &c. So the people of Mbimbi promise faithfully to cloak their wrath. But to ensure their loyal observance of their promises a treaty is made with them, as with each chief along the route, that, in consideration of certain quantities of cloth to be paid to them monthly, they shall abstain from acts of aggression and violence against their neighbours. The purport of this, as of other similar negotiations, may be best understood by the perusal of the following forms:—

(Copy.)

EXPÉDITION INTERNATIONALE DU HAUT-CONGO.

VILLAGE OF BANZA MBUBA, DISTRICT OF NZUNGI,

March 26th, 1884.

We, the undersigned chiefs of Nzungi, agree to recognise the sovereignty of the Association Internationale Africaine, and in sign thereof adopt its flag (blue with a golden star). We declare we shall keep the road open and free of all tax and impost on all strangers arriving with the recommendation of the agents of the above Association.

All troubles between ourselves and neighbours, or with strangers of any nationality, we shall refer to the arbitration of the above Association.

We declare that we have not made any written or oral agreement with any person previous to this that would render this agreement null and void.

We declare that from henceforth we and our successors shall abide by the decision of the representatives of the Association in all matters affecting our welfare or our possessions, and that we shall not enter into any agreement with any person without referring all matters to the chief of Manyanga or the chief of Léopoldville, or act in any manner contrary to the tenor or spirit of this agreement.

Witnesses—

Dualla, his O mark,
Chami Pard.

Mwamba, his X mark,
of Makitu's.

Keekuru, his X mark,
Chief of Nzungi.

Nséka, his X mark,
Chief of Banza Mbuba.

Nzako, his X mark,
Banza Mbuba.

Insila Mpaka, his X mark,
Of Banza Mbuba.

Iriaki, his X mark,
Chief of Banza Mbuba.

(Treaty.)

HENRY M. STANLEY, Commanding Expedition du Haut Congo, acting in the name and on behalf of the "Association Internationale Africaine," and the king and chiefs of Ngombi and Mafela, having met together in conference at South Manyanga, have, after deliberation, concluded the following treaty, viz. :—

Art. I.—The chiefs of Ngombi and Mafela recognise that it is highly desirable that the "Association Internationale Africaine"

1884.
April 1.
Manyanga.

should, for the advancement of civilization and trade, be firmly established in their country. They therefore now, freely of their own accord, for themselves and their heirs and successors for ever, do give up to the said Association the sovereignty and all sovereign and governing rights to all their territories. They also promise to assist the said Association in its work of governing and civilising this country, and to use their influence with all the other inhabitants, with whose unanimous approval they make this treaty, to secure obedience to all laws made by the said Association, and to assist by labour or otherwise, any works, improvements, or expeditions which the said Association shall cause at any time to be carried out in any part of these territories.

Art. II.—The chiefs of Ngombi and Mafela promise at all times to join their forces with those of the said Association, to resist the forcible intrusion or repulse the attacks of foreigners of any nationality or colour.

Art. III.—The country thus ceded has about the following boundaries, viz., the whole of the Ngombi and Mafela countries, and any others tributary to them; and the chiefs of Ngombi and Mafela solemnly affirm that all this country belongs absolutely to them; that they can freely dispose of it; and that they neither have already, nor will on any future occasion, make any treaties, grants, or sales of any parts of these territories to strangers without the permission of the said Association. All roads and waterways running through this country, the right of collecting tolls on the same, and all game, fishing, mining, and forest rights, are to be the absolute property of the said Association, together with any unoccupied lands as may at any time hereafter be chosen.

Art. IV.—The “Association Internationale Africaine” agree to pay to the chiefs of Ngombi and Mafela the following articles of merchandise, viz., one piece of cloth per month to each of the undersigned chiefs, besides present of cloth in hand; and the said chiefs hereby acknowledge to accept this bounty and monthly subsidy in full settlement of all their claims on the said Association.

Art. V.—The “Association Internationale Africaine” promises:—

1. To take from the natives of this ceded country no occupied or cultivated lands, except by mutual agreement.
2. To promote to its utmost the prosperity of the said country.
3. To protect its inhabitants from all oppression or foreign intrusion.
4. It authorizes the chiefs to hoist its flag; to settle all local

disputes or palavers; and to maintain its authority with the natives.

1884.
April 1.
Manyanga.

Agreed to, signed and witnessed, this 1st day of April, 1884.

HENRY M. STANLEY.

Witnesses to the signatures—

E. SPENCER BURNS.

D. LEHRMAN.

DUALLA.

Tonki, his X mark,

Senior Chief of Ngombi.

Mampuya, his X mark,

Senior Chief of Mafela.

We, the undersigned chiefs of the districts placed opposite our names below, do hereby solemnly bind ourselves, our heirs and successors, for the purpose of mutual support and protection, to observe the following articles :—

Art. I.—We agree to unite and combine together, under the name and title of the “New Confederacy,” that is, our respective districts, their towns and villages, shall be embraced by one united territory, to be henceforth known as the *New Confederacy*.

Art. II.—We declare that our objects are to unite our forces and our means for the common defence of all the districts comprised within the said territory; to place our forces and our means under such organization as we shall deem to be best for the common good of the people and the welfare of the confederacy.

Art. III.—The New Confederacy may be extended by the admission of all such districts adjoining those mentioned before, when their chiefs have made application, and expressed their consent to the articles herein mentioned.

Art. IV.—We, the people and the chiefs of the New Confederacy, adopt the blue flag with the golden star in the centre for our banner.

Art. V.—The confederated districts guarantee that the treaties made between them shall be respected.

Art. VI.—The public force of the confederacy shall be organized at the rate of one man out of every two men able to bear arms; of native or foreign volunteers.

Art. VII.—The organization, the armament, equipment, subsistence of this force, shall be confided to the chief agent in Africa of the “Association Internationale du Congo.”

To the above articles, which are the results of various conventions held between district and district, and by which we have been enabled to understand the common wish, we sovereign chiefs, and others of the

1884. Congo district hereby append our names, pledging ourselves to adhere to
 April 1. each and every article:—
 Manyanga.

	{	Mark of Matanga.
	„	Mahimpi Mbéza.
	„	Mbambi.
	„	Mbango Mpambo.
	„	Mkoté.
<i>District of Khionzo</i>	{	Mango Mbando.
	„	Mbango Mkoté.
	„	Mpambo Kionzo.
	„	Mtimpi Mavungo.
	„	Mtimpi Mpambo.
	{	Mambouko Ntamo.
	{	Massala.
	„	Vivi Mavungu.
<i>District of Vivi</i>	{	Kapita.
	„	Benzani Congo.
	„	Vivi Mku.
	„	Mambuku.
	{	Ngufu Mpanda.
	{	Dédédé.
	„	Samuna.
	„	Sanda Mundele.
	„	Sanda Mallélé.
	„	Sanda Mpolélé.
	„	Mkandu.
	„	N'Sanda Manéna.
<i>District de Nsanda</i>	{	Nebangi.
	„	Nekumbi.
	„	Ngomi.
	„	Netzima.
	„	Suka Madrata.
	„	Makaya.
	„	Mganga.
	„	Kapita Nsanda.
	„	Kapita Fontula.
	{	Sanda Nléllé.
<i>District de Boëté</i>	„	Boëté Nzita.
	{	Fulula.
	„	Mavinga.
	„	Nzau.
	„	Ngombi.
<i>District de Mganga</i>	{	Pambu.
	„	Makambu.
	„	Kapita.
	„	Nimpangi.
	{	Nekinga.

<i>District de Msuka</i>	{	Mark of Msuka Mkweté.	1884.
		„ Msuka Mazinga.	April 1.
		„ Msuka Mavungu.	Manyanga.
<i>District de Sadika Banzi</i>	{	„ Sadika Banzi.	
		„ Banza Manzi.	
		„ Mku.	
		„ Mzita.	
		„ Mtona.	
<i>District de Lefuna</i>	{	„ Matanga.	
		„ Kapita a Matanga.	
		„ Singa Maka.	
		„ Madiata.	
		„ Mavinga.	
		„ Nefula.	
<i>District de Yellala</i>	{	„ Nteté Yellala.	
		„ Ngombi.	
		„ Mambuku.	
		„ Moemba.	
		„ Mbenza.	
		„ Sakala Konzo.	
		„ Makaya.	
<i>District de Kinzala</i>	{	„ Mekukwe.	
		„ Mavinga.	
		„ Netunga.	
<i>District de Lusala Kindunga</i>	{	„ Mavinga Kindonga.	
		„ Mavinga.	
		„ Mku.	
<i>District de Vivi</i>	{	„ Matumbo Nipombo.	
		„ Nélomlé.	
		„ Nefuka Mozza.	
		„ Nigombé.	
		„ Nematta.	
		„ Nicombbé.	
		„ Nesukka.	
		„ Matouks.	
		„ Kapita Chiama.	
		„ Nalafundi Kinkélé.	
		„ Mangofo.	
<i>District de Isangila</i>	{	„ Massuna Mampuya.	
		„ Nzaulélo.	
<i>District de Ngoma</i>	{	„ Ngoma.	
		„ Nzadi.	
<i>District de Chiama Mbongo</i>	{	„ Chiama Mbongo.	

1884.			(	Mark of Izenda N'Zendi.	
April 1.	<i>District of Izenda Nzendi.</i>	.	}	„ Ne Linza.	
Manyanga.			}	„ N'Zanzi.	
	<i>District de Limama Mayoukona</i>		}	„ Limama Mayukona.	
	<i>District de Lutété</i>	}	}	„ Lutété Kimprika.	
			}	„ Tédédé.	
	<i>District of Ndambi Mbongo .</i>		}	„ Ndambi Mbongo.	
	„ <i>Mbinda</i>		}	„ Mazau Chama (Bindu).	
	„ <i>Chionzo</i>		}	„ Chionzo.	
	„ <i>Kibwanda</i>		}	„ Matanga Sissulwa (Kimbwanda).	
	„ <i>Kineati</i>		}	„ Ichiakundama (Kineati).	
	„ <i>Kimbunda</i>		}	„ Ichiamborna (Banza Kimbunda).	
			}	„ Ichiama Mbongo.	
			}	„ Lengo Mbenza.	
	<i>District de Ganga</i>	}	}	„ Iehimo Mvangu } Makari.	
			}	„ Lakali Bwadi }	
			}	„ Matombukelé.	
			}	„ Ntété.	
	<i>District de Sellelé</i>		}	„ Sellelé.	
			}	„ Loanda Maswambu.	
			}	„ Nassoma.	
			}	„ Natela.	
			}	„ Ichiama Kimpioka.	
			}	„ Chiomkiandu (Kilonda).	
			}	„ Lussala Yori } Kussala.	
	<i>District de Maswamba</i>	}	}	„ Ichiamambourn }	
			}	„ Busalla Busundi }	
			}	„ Ichiamkunama }	Monauganda.
			}	„ Sakola Lema (Makanga).	
			}	„ Ichiamdebe (Melonde).	
			}	„ Salamamboina (Makanga).	
			}	„ Lussala Wala.	
			}	„ Inkelia Lubrofa.	
			}	„ Kingoma.	
	<i>District de Natuma</i>	}	}	„ Sukibola.	
			}	„ Lutété Mayungi.	
	<i>District de Ntombo</i>		}	„ Kinkela Lenga (Nsanda Ntombo)	
			}	„ Malonoré.	
			}	„ Mavindi.	
	<i>District de Yonga</i>	}	}	„ Ichiampanzu.	
			}	„ Mavambu.	
			}	„ Ichiakundama (Nganda).	
			}	„ Lutété Ngoma.	
			}	„ Lutété Nsona.	
	<i>District de Kikai</i>	}	}	„ Tiana Sunpa.	
			}	„ Naboea (Nsundi).	
			}	„ Kikundama.	

1884.
April 1.
Manyanga.

	{	Mark of Kinkela Nzita.	
		„ Kinkela Loko.	
		„ Sakala Yeta.	
<i>District de Moinzi</i>	{	„ Mavamba Bevakela.	
		„ Lussala Mkento.	
		„ Malanda Mbako.	
	{	„ Sakola Bato.	
	{	„ Mavambo Msebwa.	
		„ Sakala Nianda.	
		„ Sakala Guila.	
		„ Cheka Navundi.	
		„ Babambu Mkumba.	
		„ Lutété Landu (Kulukingo).	
		„ Thama Lutila.	
		„ Lutété Makundu (Makai).	
<i>District de Kissimba</i>	{	„ Kinkelu Baku (Kinanye).	
		„ Zikidole (Kavunda).	
		„ Sakala Masefo (Muswambu).	
		„ Miku Niema (Mbota).	
		„ Kinkela Manyanga (Banza).	
		„ Ichiamu Mbonga (Monizi).	
		„ Nsakala Ronko (Banzahungu).	
		„ Nsakala Mpanza (Kaizi).	
		„ Ichiamu Lebula (Kissimba).	
	{	„ Lutété Mbondi (Kissimba).	
	{	„ Kenkala Kaji (Kempampala	
			Kinzras).
		„ Lutété Nzemla („ Kionzo).	
<i>District de Kompola</i>	{	„ Lutété Matanka („ „).	
		„ Ichiamu Likombé („ Moanza).	
		„ Ichiamu Mbota („ Kissimba).	
		„ Lutété Msyala („ „ „).	
	{	„ Kenkela Mpossi („ Moanza).	
<i>District de Wunki</i>		„ Sakala Libemba.	
	{	„ Lutété Masiona (Kissemba).	
<i>District de Mkundu Mputu . .</i>	{	„ Suzi Moka (Monakila).	
		„ Sakala Libemba.	
	{	„ Hussala Salu.	
<i>District de Banza-Kivumba . .</i>		„ Sakala Maviamu.	
	{	„ Ntalenta.	
<i>District de Kimbuda</i>	{	„ Kinkela Mbenda.	
		„ Lutété Ngoma.	
	{	„ Ichiamu Kanzu (Monakidi).	
<i>District of Mkundu a Mputu</i>	{	„ Matuna Manza (Mbindi).	
		„ Mavambo Luswaanza (Melondé).	

1884.
April 1.
Manyanga.

	{	Mark of Ionia Mboma (Ngombe).
	„	Lutété Mavungu (Kiamba).
	„	Sakala Mbwoka (Kaiji)
	„	Movenba Motunda (Ntando
		Ngombe).
<i>Distriet de Ntombo</i> . . .	{	„ Siku Zambi (Makanga).
	„	Lutété Mokidi (Nakaji Kuna Zoële).
	„	Kinkela Makinzi (Kinkongo).
	„	Mivinze (Kissinga).
	„	Sakala Makanza (Mankamba).
<i>District de Mokanga</i> . . .	{	„ Mkanda (Banza Nyunga).
	„	Mkanda (Banza Nyunga).
<i>District de Makunga</i> . . .	{	„ Kassungwa (Banza Makango).
	„	Chiko Mayaka (Niviza).
<i>Distriet de Glonala</i> . . .	{	„ Bako (Mbanza Tampala).
	„	Ichiana Kundi.
	{	„ Bangazi.
	„	Matunda Mkassâ.
	„	Kussala Mputu.
	„	Nsuki a Mbongo (Mavula).
	„	Msuka Banza („).
	„	Malembessa („).
<i>District de Bemba</i> . . .	{	„ Chiana Lutuba (Madioka).
	„	Nampollele („).
	„	Glonalla Makuta Didela (Nsala).
	„	Chiana.
	„	Naowaini (Monasala).
	„	Mayemba (Mokinanga).
	„	Kinsiola (Kinkinka).
	{	„ Yandudu.
	„	Namampuia.
<i>District de Ngombé</i> . . .	{	„ Mangomole (Nsieka Mavalu).
	„	Bikandu.
	„	Banumi.
	{	„ Nampampuia (Kunango).
	„	Makaia („).
	„	Kivesna (Kimbuku).
	„	Mandangi (Kimbongo).
	„	Qualuka (Unatiba).
<i>District de Kimpiri</i> . . .	{	„ Mayemba (Kissenga).
	„	Zenga (Ngola).
	„	Moyola (Kinkulu).
	„	Nialubu (Koisefu).
	„	Nalekete (Kintoko).
	„	Mbuku (Kujaji).

	{	Mark of Sunbu (Bulu).	1884.
<i>District de Bulu</i>	{	„ Makito.	April 1.
	{	„ Nabukutu.	Manyanga.
	{	„ Nausudi (Kaladi).	
	{	„ Nawaji.	
	{	„ Nzilabonda (Ntandu).	
	{	„ Kebawe (Kimbonda).	
	{	„ Namoina (Mantoba).	
<i>District de Kibonda</i>	{	„ Mayossa (Mbindi).	
	{	„ Bemba (Kiboli).	
	{	„ Mswela (Kimpange).	
	{	„ Betani (Nsandu).	
	{	„ Minina (Broende).	
	{	„ Kwemsunga (Kulonde).	
	{	„ Sukula Mbonga.	
	{	„ Tambele.	
	{	„ Venga.	
<i>District de Kalembe</i>	{	„ Nampaia.	
	{	„ Nzangi (Makaji).	
	{	„ Gampoia.	
	{	„ Lussilo (Konzo).	
	{	„ Monayendi.	
<i>District de Losi</i>	{	„ Kiboli (Kibunga).	
	{	„ Kimponda (Kitunda).	
<i>District de Kibindika</i>	{	„ Lomba.	
	{	„ Makiona.	
	{	„ Matari.	
	{	„ Niangana.	
	{	„ Mayella.	
<i>District de Ntombo</i>	{	„ Kwakalla.	
	{	„ Makitu.	
	{	„ Filankoum.	
	{	„ Longozi.	
	{	„ Masuka.	
<i>District de Banzi Kimbuko</i>	{	„ Baghidi.	
	{	„ Petelo.	
	{	„ Lovamba.	
<i>District de Ngoya</i>	{	„ Lufuanzu.	
	{	„ Borgi.	
	{	„ Kimbwanga.	
<i>District de Lemba</i>	{	„ Petolo.	
	{	„ Komingo.	
	{	„ Makwata.	
<i>District de Mbu</i>	{	„ Gomantade.	
	{	„ Gongoulu.	
	{	„ Jos.	

1884.			{	Mark of Tanglongo.
April 1.				„ Matuso Mbongo.
Manyanga.	<i>District de Ndandanga</i>	. . .	{	„ Kanza.
				„ Mkossa.
				„ Mavungu.
				„ Luvouma.
			{	„ Petelo.
	<i>District de Ngombi</i>	. . .	{	„ Zoa Manipuya.
				„ Mswalu.
				„ Tong.
				„ Tunzo Mivembo.
			{	„ Mballa.
				„ Petelo.
	<i>District de Mpanga</i>	. . .	{	„ Yinda.
				„ Lolowe.
				„ Missanga.
				„ Melengo.
			{	„ Ngombé (Ngombé).
				„ Makitu (Banza Kandoke).
				„ Lutété (Lufunchou).
				„ Issa.
				„ Dongo (Banza Kindingo).
				„ Tiamutulu (Kinangilwa).
				„ Kinonga.
	<i>District de Lutété</i>	. . .	{	„ Nsumbu (Kimbanda).
				„ Dolorwala.
				„ Ntoba (Fnnzou).
				„ Chiakambongo (Nzoundon).
				„ Petelo Secca (Nkoko).
				„ Petelo Sumba (Kinibenza).
				„ Bemba.
				„ Bolotovo (Kindemba).
	<i>District de Sello</i>	. . .	{	„ Tusa.
				„ Challa.

Copy of Mr. Stanley's remarks.

N.B. At Isangila Messrs. Morgan, Parminter, Van Kerehoven, and Hortwig were present.

From Isangila to Lulu on South Bank, in presence of Messrs. Morgan and Parminter.

Lutete Kuna, a native of Nsanda, present as interpreter.

Originals sent to Brussels with Mr. Morgan, who sent receipt to Lieutenant Valeke.

Gen. Goldsmith received copy.

I received a copy.

H. M. S.

(Copy.)

EXPÉDITION INTERNATIONALE DU HAUT-CONGO.

PALLABALLA, 19th April, 1884.

A Supplementary Treaty made this day between H. M. Stanley, Chief Agent of the Association Internationale Africaine, and the undersigned chiefs of the districts of Pallaballa, to explain the meaning and spirit of term "Cession of Territory," found in the Treaty made 8th January 1883, between Lt. Van de Velde and the said chiefs of Pallaballa. 1884. April 19. Pallaballa.

I.—It is agreed between the above parties that the term "Cession of Territory" does not mean the purchase of the soil by the Association, but the purchase of the suzerainty by the Association, and its just acknowledgment by the undersigned chiefs.

II.—It is well understood by the undersigned chiefs that the right of arbitration between the chiefs and natives of Pallaballa and all foreigners of any colour or nationality, is conceded to the Association Internationale Africaine; that the right of governing, of arranging all matters affecting strangers of any colour or nationality and the natives of Pallaballa; of deciding in all affairs when appealed to by the undersigned chiefs; of deciding what Europeans shall settle in any part of the district of Pallaballa, is conceded in full to the Association Internationale Africaine. The undersigned chiefs also declare themselves as accepting the flag of the Association Internationale Africaine, as a sign to all men that the Association is their accepted suzerain, and that no other flag shall be hoisted within the limits of the district of Pallaballa. In consideration of which the undersigned chiefs are entitled to and shall receive the monthly pay promised them in the first treaty made with Lt. Van de Velde.

All these being fully explained to the undersigned chiefs, they have affixed their marks in testimony of their adhesion to the terms and spirit of this supplementary treaty.

H. M. STANLEY,
Commanding Expdn. du Haut-Congo.

Witnesses—

(Signed) HENRY CRAVEN.

Livingstone Mission.

DUALLA.

Noso, his X mark.

Kiangala, his X mark.

Talenté, his X mark.

Nefutilla, his X mark.

Nelombe-Katendé, his X mark.

(Copy.)

EXPÉDITION INTERNATIONALE DU HAUT-CONGO.

SOUTH MANYANGA STATION, *March 31st, 1884.*

1884. We, the chiefs Dongosi and Kukuru of Voonda, sole masters of the
 March 31. district of that name, having applied to Henry M. Stanley, Chief of the
 Manyanga. Expédition Internationale du Congo, to enter into that confederacy of
 native chiefs now established between Stanley Pool and South Manyanga,
 and all the responsibilities and privileges undertaken or enjoyed by the
 members of that confederacy being explained to us, we hereby enter into
 an agreement with the said Henry M. Stanley, and bind ourselves, our
 heirs and successors, to observe the following articles:—

- I.—We shall keep all roads passing through our district free of duty, tax
 or impost to all strangers, white or black, who shall have the
 recommendation or good-will of the Association Internationale
 Africaine.
- II.—We surrender all right to collect taxes or imposts to the agents of
 the said Association.
- III.—We agree to recognize the sovereignty of the said Association, and
 adopt the flag of the Association, blue, with a golden star, as a sign
 thereof.
- IV.—We shall refer to the said Association all matters relating to the
 government, all questions affecting the peace of the country, all
 troubles between ourselves and neighbours, or between ourselves
 and strangers of any colour or nationality, to the arbitration and
 decision of the Agent of the Association Internationale Africaine.
- V.—We declare that we have not made any agreement, oral or written,
 with any person that would render this agreement null and void in
 any particular.
- VI.—We declare that from henceforth we and our successors and subjects
 shall abide by the decision of the Chief-Agent of the Association
 Internationale Africaine in all matters affecting our welfare, our
 possessions, or our relations to our neighbours, or strangers of any
 colour, and that we shall not act contrary to the spirit of this
 agreement in any particular, on pain of forfeiting all subsidies,
 gifts, or presents made to us by the agents of the Association. In
 witness whereof we have sent our confidential servants as our
 proxies to sign this agreement, having understood its contents and
 given our consent verbally in presence of our people to do and act
 precisely as the chiefs of Ngombi, Inteté, and Makitu have already
 done.

Witnesses—
 DUALLA.

Mdombasi Luboki, his X mark,
 Proxy for the chief Dongosi.
 Lofunsu li Mbulu, his X mark,
 Proxy for the chief Kuturu.

From Mbimbi we descended slowly threading our way through luxuriant grass until, passing the hill-cone of Kizalu, we crossed the stream to which the natives have no other name to give but the "Stream," or "Njali," from whence we follow a lengthy spur, on which the villages of Mani, Ngoma, Kimbenza, and Mpika, at respectable distances apart, are found secluded amid their own particular banana groves and palms. Banza Mbuba comes next, on a commanding height overlooking a wilderness of hills, between which, however, there runs a narrow neck, or saddle of a ridge. Nzungi, a village of carriers, lies to the left. Fat black pigs roam about freely amid the abundant ground-nut fields, and Nzungi's position, if anything, is on a breezier hill than that of Mbuba.

1884.
March.
Mbimbi.

Several lucent streams are passed before we come to Kimpemba, which we find we have viewed several times when on the north bank in our camp at Mpakambendi. It is close to the verge of the Congo cañon, and a certain grand picturesqueness of view is obtainable. From this spot we soon strike in an oblique direction from the river, into the plain of the Mulwassi River, and up over much reddish land to the more promising uplands of Ngombé, of Luteté.

I cannot help smiling when I remember Luteté's bold remark when he first saw one of our agents in 1882. For the pleasure of decapitating the pale-faced man, he was willing to make conditions. Swaggering under a load of palm wine, he affected a loud voice, and

1884.
March.
Luteté.

said to the coloured escort, "Give me that white man, and you may go away in peace."

"What do you wish a white man for?" asked the men, rather astonished at the unparalleled insolence of the demand.

"To cut his throat," replied the chief brutally. He had so often levied blackmail on other wayfarers, and badgered them, and this white being looked so innocent and guileless, that to slit such a man's jugular seemed no great crime to him. The escort, however, did not share his opinion, and took him away safely. On the return of the escort, however, towards the Pool, Luteté laid an ambuscade, and commenced firing. To his utter discomfiture, however, few as were the numbers, they returned a sharp fire, and captured nine of his people, who were kept as prisoners, and for whose release he had to make humble apology. But to-day Luteté presents an example of what may be made of these men. We have a station, a neat and happy station, governed by a British man-of-war's man—a boatswain's mate, who leads as jolly a life as ever he lived aboard any of Her Majesty Queen Victoria's vessels. With only twelve men he lives in peace just one mile away from the "ferocious" chief; and this same throat-cutter of two years ago now furnishes carriers and table-servants, besides sending his children to the Baptist School. In fact, he is a most exemplary individual in every respect.

Between Luteté and Mpangu we pass by several villages inhabited by men for whom I have great

regard. Voonda, in the hollow, enchanting for its cosiness and delicious bits of domestic life among the Bakongo, and Iyenzi, with very tall palms, which promise gifts of their effervescing juice, will not soon be forgotten by men who have seen their open spaces shaded by the glorious leafy trees.

1884.
March.
Mpangu.

By the time he arrives at Mpangu it will have dawned on the mind of the traveller that both the north and south banks of the Congo originally formed one plateau. And if he has intelligently reflected on what he has seen, he will be able to interpret the geological story told by the deep furrows which time has inscribed in the cañon of the Congo, and the complicated system of profound gorges trending towards it from the southward and northward.

For instance, close to Mpangu I stand upon a spot like many I have seen north and south of the river. It is equal in height to the thousand ridges and hill-tops I see around, with the exception, perhaps, of half-a-dozen cones, which may be a few feet higher. A peculiar crevasse near me reveals the nature of the soil for at least 150 feet deep. The sides of the crevasse are perpendicular, a stone dropped from an outstretched arm would fall straight to the bottom without being diverted from its course by a single projection. The crevasse is apparently extending; it has encroached on the public path. At any moment during the rainy season the caravan road at this place may sink to the bottom with the fall of a mass of clayey and sandy conglomerate, which will be pulverised into dust by the

1884.
March.
Mpangu.

shock of the descent from such a height. Another rain, and the powdered *débris* will be swept into the next runnel, thence into the more impetuous stream next to it, and thence into the Congo, to give a little browner colour to the already brown water of the great river. This crevasse will extend deeper into the heart of the narrow plateau ridge on which I stand; it will yawn wider and wider with each year's rains; it will then exchange the perpendicular for a slope, and the *crévasse* will become a gully, afterwards a wide ravine, and finally a valley. In a heavy rainstorm it will collect water enough to plough deeper down, until the rock base of this great bed of clay and sand is revealed.

In such a manner, I understand, has the geological history of this section been disclosed, at least, if I read it in the light of facts obtained by our overland journey. But if I descend into the bottom of the Congo cañon, and look up to the precipitous walls of solid rock that frequently are seen rising 200 and 300 feet (as in the Pocock basin, and all along that tortuous narrow channel between Mpakambendi and Mbelo), the ages which have elapsed since the plateau above was fractured, carries a calculation back through such an immeasurable time that one would fain relegate the incomputable problem to those *savants* who find themselves at home among decimals and recondite conjectures. I can see watermarks as high as 100 feet above the present water-surface; and yet the highest river rise cannot exceed twenty feet above its present level! How many years would be required to wear away

rock of such a durable nature eighty feet down? would be a first question. There is also lava still to be found at low water about Kalulu Falls. Whence has it come? There have been rock slides, as well as earth falls, and at the Inkissi Falls one may see a complete islet which has dropped down, or rather sunk, an intact mass of rock and earth, a clear 400 feet!

1884.
March.
Mpangu.

It is from amid such scenes as this, between Mpangu and Manyanga, that we view the lofty Mount Beri; in the distance is Sphinx Rock, a little to the east of it and on the range of a plain grooved deeply by the small tributaries of the Mpioga river, which empties into the Congo below our station of South Manyanga.

It would be difficult to conceive of a land so fertile as this, and yet presenting such an ungrateful aspect. The valleys are rich, but there is so much slope of red, hard, sterile clay visible everywhere that we are chilled to the heart, as though we were looking at so many blank walls, which hid a fair prospect of luxuriant gardens.

We stopped long enough at South Manyanga to enable me to cross over to North Manyanga and measure the amount of work performed during my absence at that station since its foundation in 1881. I found it in a "higgledy-piggledy" state, without any order or design, which compelled me to order the new chief to pull it all down and rebuild it anew. It was in such a backward condition that any station a month old on the Upper Congo was more advanced. And yet this

1884.
April 2.
Manyanga.

place alone must have cost the Association £10,000! For such a sum, and in three years, a European with thirty labourers ought to have been able to present something worth viewing; but here was a "hotch-potch" of rickety-looking structures which one would have imagined to have been made by a lot of poor squatters preparatory to prospecting.

Here I met Mr. Spencer Burns and the gallant Croat, Mr. Lehrman, fresh from an expedition which they had made from the mouth of the Kwilu. Mr. Lehrman was commissioned with the command of Phillippeville on the Kwilu-Niadi. Mr. Burns, who had specially distinguished himself on this occasion, was sent down to Vivi by the river, while his natives were led overland along the south bank by myself.

April 2nd.—We continue our journey from South Manyanga westward, edging away from the chilly gorge, over the well-washed hills, down over the murmuring waters of the Ngaku, and up along steep slopes to the more fertile levels in the vicinity of Ndunga.

A few miles beyond this favoured and amiable community of Ndunga we begin the descent into the broad valley of Lukunga, where we are hospitably received by Mr. and Mrs. Ingham, of the Livingstone Mission. I should have wished that my "chiefs," who have affected to labour at Manyanga, had seen the pretty little station which this soldier missionary had constructed with half-a-dozen men, or rather, boys. The mission cottage was as dainty within as any residence need be. A spacious garden behind it presented a vivid promise; a well-

kept court or plaza in front was surrounded by store-rooms, kitchen, and schoolroom. Under the shadowy eaves were to be seen the mission children, who have a striking likeness and family resemblance to the black mission children seen at Zanzibar, Sierra Leone, Old Calabar, and the West Indies. They have the same subdued air, as though they were impressed with the awful mysteries of the alphabet. I think it rather encouraged me to believe that the Congo climate, even in that low hollow of Lukunga, was endurable, when I here saw a delicate-looking lady bear herself so bravely. I utter literal truth when I say that my sojourn for twenty hours was enjoyed with the most exquisite pleasure. Ten men might have utterly stripped and carried away the veneer of civilisation on that mission-house, and left it bare and barbarous; but the art was in the lady's hands, and the rich gift of taste, inherited in far-away England, had diffused attractiveness over the humble home. £100 was probably the value of all I saw, but then the £10,000 expended at Manyanga failed to excite pleasure or admiration in my thoughts.

1884.
April 2.
Lukunga.

From the cheerful mission-house of Lukunga the caravan climbed the steep slopes leading up to the plateau-land once more. A day's journey carried us over miles of level expanse, which might, if cultivated, supply thousands of people with wheat and corn; and if its dense crops of wild, tall grasses were superseded by what industry could sow, plant and build over the great waste, then we might see more of beauty and richness displaying the fertility of the soil better than

1884.
April 3.
Vombo.

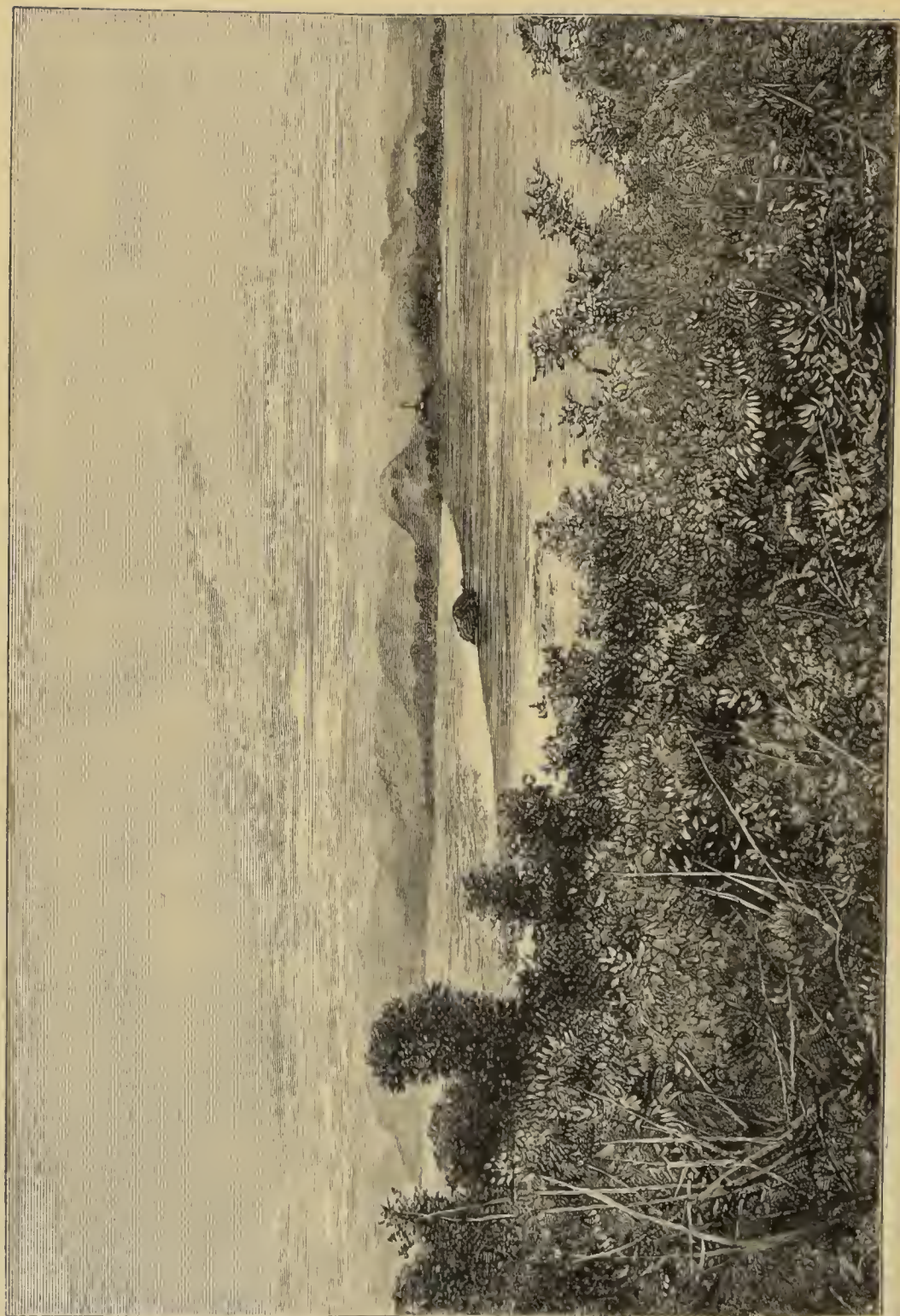
the dead monotony of aspect which now enshrouds its potent powers of production.

Vombo is situated on the verge of one of these plains overlooking the Lukunga valley; Mwembé stands on its western edge. The next day's march takes us over narrower grassy ridges separated by small streams, until we arrive on the grass-robed plain of Muluangu, whence we descend into the trough of the Kwilu River, which a few years before we ascended in the steam-launch *Royal*. It is possible to descend to the Congo from the ferry of Kondo, but the navigator must beware of hidden snags.

Beyond the Kwilu we discover the broad valley of the Luima, which is remarkable for its exposed bed of calcite and shale projections. One of these broader valleys may at a future time be utilised for routes to Stanley Pool, as almost all these rivers start from a broad, uniform ridge, which is the water-parting between the tributaries of the Kwa and the Congo.

Between the valley of the Luima and the next valley—that of the Lunionzo—there is an easy pass by which a railway might lead from Voonda at the head of the long reach above Isangila. Crossing the Lunionzo, we pass under the cool sable shades of Ntombo Lukuti grove, and then over a grassy expanse to the station of Banza Manteka. Close by the station is the settlement of the Livingstone Inland Congo Mission, in a steamy hollow, too well sheltered from the breezes blowing over the western uplands.

From any of the hilly remnants of the ancient con-



..... FROM NEARLY OPPOSITE ISANGILA.

tinuous plateau at Banza Manteka we see the groves of many villages, such as Mubangu, Banza Nkosi, Kinkanza, Banza Kulu, Ntombo Lukuti. These villages are great producers of ground-nuts, which are carried to the Lower Congo factories to exchange for cloth and gin.

1884.
April.
Manteka

Six hours took us from Manteka station to Isangila station, where I witnessed much to grieve me, in the inertia under which our own people had fallen through the lack of superintendence. A house remained still unroofed that had been fourteen months building. Into the store-house the rain leaked through the rotten grass roof, spoiling a valuable stock of goods. There were over 400 bales within, yet our gentleman in charge, rather than add to the grass covering or re-roof it completely—which five days would have done—preferred to unroll the bales and dry the cloth!

The next valley we meet westward of the Ntombo Lukuti is that of the Lufû, a considerable stream with a rapid current, from whose woody fringes we rise to breast rock-strewn slopes and cross pebble-sown hill-summits, until after a short series of these we thread the twilight aisles of a forest-covered mountain side. Ascending here we view a wild world of ruined upland, rent, torn, fissured and disfigured, in line after line, cone after cone, top after top, until the eye is fastened upon Pallaballa, and Nokki, and Vivi, at such distances that we distinguish only their blanched and meagre outlines. The irregular cañon of the Congo is traced

1884.
April.
Isangila.

far below Vivi. On the south side lie these disintegrated heaps of utterly useless land. On the north side the plateaus of Mgangila, Sadika Banzi, and Kionzo present a deceptive appearance of level.

What a lesson about the climate Europeans could be taught from this tall mountain pulpit! For here they have before them at one glance of the rough and uninhabitable land the causes which render them weak-knee'd and faint-hearted. With collapsing frames and stomachs feebly nourished by tough goat-meat and insipid bananas, they press on over those heart-breaking hills, with the endless ascents and descents, through winding labyrinths of suffocatingly tall grass, and each time they emerge into light and glare the cruel sun strikes their pale and tender half-dressed bodies, burns their white arms, scorches their necks, and roasts their backs. Presently they are hid from sight at the bottom of grassy tunnels, to issue reeling from the terrible atmosphere of reek and slop and humid heat, to quench their thirst in oceans of cold water from the sparkling runnels that thread the gullies. Some of them, under the fiery impulses of getting on, on, and on, will march their fifteen miles per day, and on arriving at the Pool at the end of their journey, they will turn round and deliberately curse the land, the climate, and the people, but never their own idiotic frenzy. Yet, if I could take them through such a land as this in twenty-four hours, they might live as long in Africa as in moist England. These are the men who in England take cabs and hansoms to drive a mile;

who partake largely of beer and brandy; who eat enormously of beef and mutton; whose every waking hour is devoted to the consideration of the kind of a lunch or tiffin they will take, or to serious meditations upon the best viands to be consumed for dinner; who have baths frequently; whose hardest labours have been inditing scented letters to friends; and whose happiest moments have been passed in ogling the pretty dames of the theatre. Surely, then, this sudden rush, this frantic pace, these endless climbings and furious gulplings of water, do not indicate the wisest course to adopt. It were well to be a little more cool and deliberate in movement than to encourage these wanton and wilful attempts at suicide.

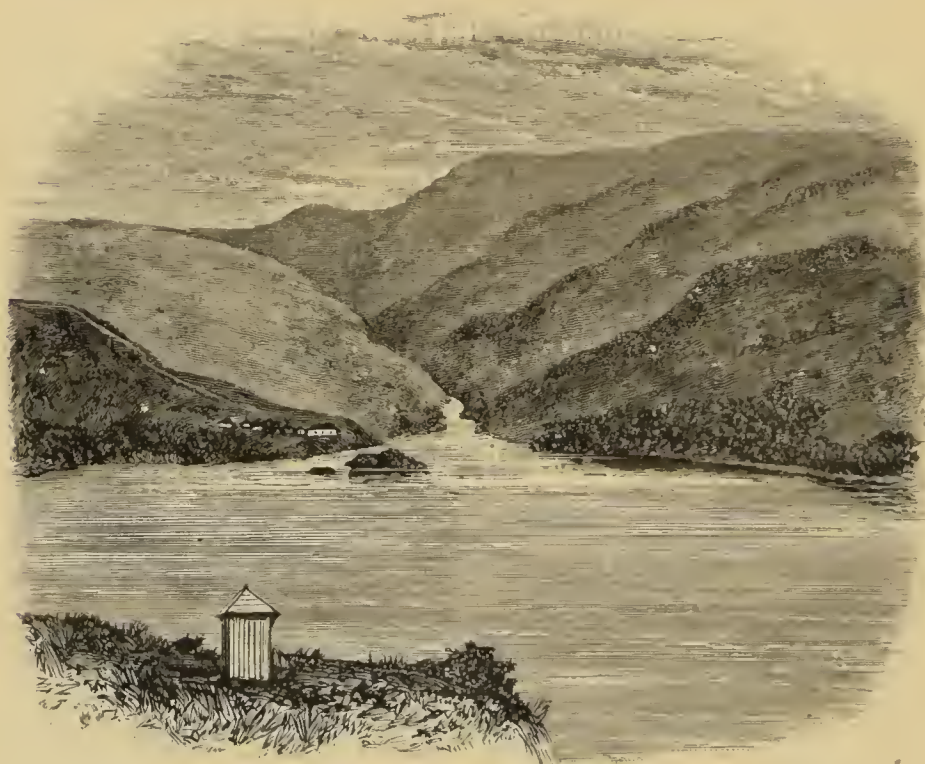
1884.
April.
Congo la
Lemba.

A few miles beyond we come to Congo la Lemba, and from this pleasant village we descend to the Luizi valley and river. Yellala mountain is in view on our right, and Pallaballa mountain in our front. The latter we have to climb about a thousand feet, to find ourselves five miles from Vivi, on a height 1700 feet above the sea. On this fortress-like plateau a community of natives, in the midst of which another English mission is planted, lives in peace and plenty. Its airs are cool, its atmosphere bland, the surface of the earth is a rich reddish loam; groves of tall trees crown it, affording a grateful shade; plantations of bananas and clusters of palms add to the beauty of the scene; and good and cool water is found. The native disposition is amiable; the mission has its pupils; and the old chief Nozo has erected a lodging-house for strangers, a miniature

1884.
April.
Congo la
Lemba.

caravanserai, the walls of which he has garnished with ancient chromographs for the amusement of his guests.

We rest one night amid this respectable community, and take the road next morning for Vivi. We descend about five miles, and from the crest of a hill overlook-



VIEW OF MPOZO STATION AND RIVER FROM VIVI.

ing Yellala Falls we view the upper Vivi Rapids, Vivi Station, and all the well-known features of the locality. I seat myself, glass in hand, to scan what improvements have been made during our long absence in the interior; and I confess with regret that I cease from the survey, wishing earnestly that I could sponge out the history of this unhappy place from my tablet

of facts. Were it possible to do so, I should be relieved from a burden of knowledge which infects my opinion of the Europeans. It is unnecessary to select and specify which of these from among the many deserve the lash of censure for their ineptitude. From among the currents of European life that streamed to Vivi in the course of five years, some were fixed here mainly by their own election, others by appointment. But, like him who sat and brooded and grieved over the ruins of Carthage, I can only grieve that my memory is haunted by so many shadows of puerile manhood, and of figures of youth without substance. I have wistfully searched for one small evidence of progress; one finite proof that a strong and willing soul has attempted to modify the pristine ruggedness of the place, or wrestled with its wilfulness of irregularity. Were it but a yard of graded roadway even, or a rocky obstruction pulverized or removed, I should be grateful. But, so far as I can see, not even a hut has been thatched. What a poor result after the passage of 260 Europeans of all nationalities through the station! Grieving and sad at heart, I continue my descent to Mpozo Station, whence I take boat, and cross over the Congo to Vivi.

1884.
April.
Vivi.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

TO OSTEND.

Climate and conduct—Vivi in confusion—A cure for sham illness—Removal of the station—Description of the changes at Vivi—General Gordon's probable work—I embark on the *Kinsembo*—Loango—Sette Camma—Coast trade—Gaboon Gulf—Fernando Po—The Cameroons—Duke Town—Exploring a great "oil" river—Native chiefs buying iron houses—Bonny—Lagos—Quetta—Sierra Leone—My arrival in London—Report to H.M. the King of the Belgians.

1884.
April.
Vivi.

ON the Upper Congo the marvellous richness of the soil seemed to have infused something of its own prolific vigour into the souls of the gallant young gentlemen at Equator Station, Kinshassa, Leopoldville, Mswata, and those detailed for other duties than station building; and I presume, if this is true, then the sterility of the soil around Vivi, and the hard, stern profiles of naked hills, had dwarfed and contracted the souls of those at the latter station. There are people who are so impressionable that they reflect their surroundings. In England, with its moist climate, I am told there is a vast majority of people who are afflicted with a desire to moisten their throats continually with beer; and I believe Belgium and Germany are very much alike in that respect. But

in the dry Arab lands we have a people who drink but rarely; in the moist climate of the palmy Congo land palm-wine is drunk in prodigious quantities; but south of the Zambesi we have people who drink but little save a small quantity of milk, or occasionally water. Well, then, perhaps it is the barrenness of Vivi to which the barrenness of results of five years' labour may be attributed!

1884.
April.
Vivi.

On landing on its shores I find that the gentlemen of Vivi have erected a store-room and residence for the accountant, close to the "beach." The material mostly has been taken from a frame mansion-house, costing £2000, the other portion of which has been lying nine months about, and no one seems to know why it came, or what its purpose was. Letters from Europe informed them it was for a hotel for the residents' comfort and convenience; but then, to a lot of people without a leader, of what use can it possibly be? So the accountant shall have his share of it; the carpenter may build a shed out of it; the hospital may have other fragments of it, and the rest may rot!

I ascend the original road which was made five years ago for temporary convenience, to roll my wagons up, and I see that it has remained untouched to this day. On the top of the hill there are two houses less than I built; the garden is a waste, the fence broken down, the mangoes and papaws and oranges and tropic pears are now large trees, but then that is Nature's work. The houses look squalid, dilapidated and unpainted. There are about twenty-

1884.
April.
VIVI.

five whites, most of whom appear as if they did not know how on earth they came, or what business they had there. A few bear a truculent scowl on their faces, as though they were labouring under an uncommon load of trouble, which they would gladly shuffle off in some manner. At the *table d'hôte* I find them all assembled, and when the red wine of Portugal has taken due effect there is a strain of vivacity perceptible in their manner, and when the meal is finished many of them hasten to bed, even in mid-day. Wine and heat, I observe, make them somnolent. I do not see any work performed, although perhaps the coloured labourers may be doing something in a shiftless manner, since no European is supervising them.

In the morning, when the matin-bell sounds to muster, I observe there is an extraordinary sick-list; about thirty-five of the coloured people require boluses, potions and salves—just thirty per cent. of the entire force! Fearing an epidemic is raging of which I had heard no report, I examine more closely into their faces, and find—for seventeen years amongst black people furnish one with a great deal of knowledge respecting negro characteristics—that the colour is rich, and their skins freely effusing oil, the eyes are bright also, although the contortions of pain evinced by their features are enough to evoke pity. The veterans from up-river, inured to toil, and who are models of discipline, understand a certain signal, and the steady approach of a dozen of these in martial

A FEW OF THE WOMEN AND CHILDREN OF OUR COLOURED EMPLOYEES.



array attracts the attention of the sick, the crippled, the cholical and the dysenteric patients, who no sooner see them coming than with a rush the doctor's window is cleared. Duke Humphrey of Glo'ster's miraculous cure was only performed on one man, but here were thirty feeble creatures restored to perfect health by merely looking at a few men gravely advancing towards them !

1884.
April.
Vivi.

Shocked by the condition of Vivi, I resolved to remove it bodily away to the larger plateau. Preparatory to this a new road was made, with an easy grade to the Nkusu, which was spanned by a bridge. We then lay a Decauville railway between the two plateaus, and the work of construction of the new station was commenced.

The new Upper Congo steamer having been dismantled, was placed on its several wagons and rolled up the hills from the landing-place to the plateau, and Lieutenant Valcke having returned from his temporary leave of absence, was constituted chief of the transport force, to convey the steamer to Stanley Pool.

Reorganisation of the staff was urgently required. Many of the Europeans had not the least idea of their work or of their duties. This was all due, of course, to the fact that the Chief of the Expedition had been absent, and no fit person had appeared able to maintain Vivi in order, and to control such a large number of undisciplined whites fresh from their homes in all lands.

The following quotations from letters to the Pre-

1884.
April,
Vivi.

sident of the Association will serve to explain this and several other matters.

"Mr. E. Massey Shaw has been appointed Chief of Vivi Station, and Mr. John Rose Troup Chief of Police.

"Major Parmenter, who was the most superior chief of Vivi we have had yet, was obliged to retire owing to domestic matters at home. He was a man of marvellous industry, but the regret of it is that I have lost him just as he was restoring this place to order, which needs a strong man.

"Mons. Monet's capabilities are of a very high order. He fills the place of the retiring accountant. Mons. del Commune is the Chief Transport Agent of the Lower Congo, and I feel assured the Expedition will feel the benefit of this change. His headquarters will be at Boma, and he will be responsible for all goods received in future, and for the good behaviour of the staff on the steamers."

"VIVI, 23rd April.

"Two days ago I reached Vivi, and I have been since in a fever of dismay at what I have seen here. The buildings are precisely as they stood in 1882. I exempt the accountant's, of course, which does look passable. I found twenty-five whites here. The new house, which cost 29,000 francs, is utterly ruined, many sections of it having been employed for trivial and pitiful purposes. I am informed by a humorous person that each of the many chiefs who have retired during the several months that have elapsed since its arrival has expressed boundless thanks for the gift of the timely and munificent donation. What is left of it, however, now will make a small frame-house or cabin thirty-five feet long.

"Two events occurred to-day which inform one greatly of the state of mind these young gentlemen are in who have been so long without a leader. One declares that he will not leave the station, though he has been dismissed for four gross offences, and mutters strangely about violence. Another says, 'Well, I don't care; I will go and do that little job at Boma, then I will go home and explain to the Comité.'

"At dinner-time I took advantage of their presence and delivered a lecture to them upon the lamentable state I discovered the station and themselves were in. I sketched out the state of Vivi as I left it, and how I found it. I repeated the dismal tale of changes and scenes that had occurred in my absence. I took the trouble of defining what was generally understood by the term duty, and how each was legally and morally bound to perform that which he had contracted to do to the best of his ability. Mine was to execute the orders of the Committee; theirs to abide by their contracts; if they failed to do so they must abide the consequences.

"I had arrived at Vivi to bring order out of chaos before leaving the

command of the Expedition to General Gordon, who will be as little likely to sympathise with indolence and thriftlessness as I am.

1884.
April 23.
Vivi.

"We have been so extremely patient, paternal, and lenient with them, and they have been left so long without a chief, that the conduct of some of them has been most shameful.

"The new steamer *Ville d'Anvers* is a capital little steamer, and exceedingly staunch. If well looked after she will be a great acquisition.

"*Le Stanley*, stern wheeler for the Upper Congo, will be at once dismantled for transport to her destination.

"Mons. del Commune has to-day informed me that he has treated successfully with the natives of Boma for the Protectorate. Mons. Kirkhoven has extended our territory until Vivi is now joined to Boma.

"Between Nokki and Stanley Pool the sovereignty has been ceded to the Association by the native chiefs. Thus, from Boma to the Lubamba



MONS. DEL COMMUNE.

River on the right bank, and thence north to the Kwilu—Niadi, through the efforts of Hanssens, Van de Velde, Destrain, Miekie, Grant Elliott, and Spencer Burns, the territory is all one—intact; and from Nokki on the left bank to Stanley Falls. Such places as are already unoccupied on the left bank Hanssens will complete by July. Signor Massari goes up the Kwa to perform the same services for our political interests.

"While coming down the south bank, I learned enough to satisfy me that three-fourths of the transport required for up river will be accomplished by our enlistments of natives; the rest will go up by north bank as before. Voonda Station, on south bank, will be established to give more employment to the boats on the mid-section of river.

"I beg to enclose copies of the Treaties securing the sovereignty to the Association of all the districts between Nokki and Stanley Pool. All

1884.
April 23.
Vivi.

has been done that is possible on the Congo, and Europe should be the theatre of operations now to secure the recognition of the Association by the Powers.

"I am obliged to express my surprise that in the letter announcing the immediate departure from Europe of General Gordon for the Congo, no instructions are furnished to me as to what his particular mission is to be here. It would be desirable in a matter of such importance to be told whether he is to be Chief of the Expedition, Director-General, Administrator, Special Commissioner, &c., &c. I have received only a few brief words introducing a man already well known to me. Before turning over the command to him, it would be well for me to know precisely how to address him in clear and distinct phrase. Finally, the letter* I received



LA VILLE D'ANVERS STEAMER.

from himself makes it still more difficult for me to understand his mission. I gather from him that he has some views hostile to the slave-trade in the Soudan. A very laudable purpose, undoubtedly, but I am not told

* (Copy.)

"BRUSSELS, 6th January, 1884.

"MY DEAR MR. STANLEY,—

"His Majesty has asked me to go out and join you in your work, which I have gladly assented to, and come from Lisbon on 5th February. I will serve willingly with and under you, and I hope you will stay on, and we will, God helping, kill the slave-traders in their haunt,

whether we are to abandon the Congo, and be diverted from our work of settling, extending, and consolidating along this river, to make raids upon Soudanese slave-traders in the Nile basin. In short, the whole affair is very mysterious to me. 1884.
April 23.
Vivi.

"As I have already intimated to the Committee in October, 1882, January, July, August, 1883, and January, 1884, my intention of leaving the Congo, according to the original understanding at Brussels in 1878, I have arrived at Vivi, in the strong hope that I should find General Gordon here; but I hear by this last mail that he has accepted a commission under the British Government to go to the Soudan. I am compelled to stay here then until I am relieved by a fit person."

"VIVI, 11th May, 1884.

"Colonel de Winton arrived here a few days ago, since which time he has been occupied in acquiring the knowledge of the details necessary for comprehending thoroughly the situation.

"Though it is better late than never, I cannot refrain from expressing my keen regret that such a person as Col. de Winton was not sent fifteen months ago to assist me.

"I hope to be able to leave the Congo about the latter part of this month, by which time Col. de Winton will have understood his duties, and grasped the situation. It will be well to remember that Sir Francis de Winton, as Chief of the Expedition, cannot leave the Lower Congo, otherwise the troubles of Vivi will commence again. An occasional residence at Leopoldville, and an inspection of the intermediate route, will be all that is necessary. You may rely on Capt. Hanssens fulfilling his mission well on the Upper Congo."

"VIVI, June 2nd, 1884.

"The new station at Vivi is advancing rapidly. Five houses have been erected, and a banana plantation set out. The bridge is a great success. A railway connects old Vivi with the new place, though to be completed we ought to have about 500 yards more of rails.

"The steamer *Le Stanley* is now six miles from here. The hauling force numbers 269, of whom 10 per cent. will be daily ailing."

for if we act together in the countries where they hunt, and make treaties with the chiefs, we can prevent their raids and truly stop the slave-trade. All the slavers are now engaged with Baker & Co., and so if we can (*D.V.*) push on we will find the field free.

"No such efficacious means of cutting at root of slave-trade ever was presented as that which God has, I trust, opened out to us through the kind disinterestedness of His Majesty.

"Yours sincerely, in haste,

"(Signed) C. G. GORDON."

"BANANA POINT, *June 8th*, 1884.

1884.
June 8.

Banana Pt.

"I have to inform you that I left Vivi on the 6th of June, accompanied by Col. Sir Francis de Winton. At Boma I saw your new Sanatorium. I admire very much the building and its position, and Dr. Allard's devotedness and provision for sick men's comforts deserve great praise. It is really like a respectable hotel."



CAPT. HANSSENS.

On the 10th of June the British and African steamer *Kinsembo* departed from Banana Creek northward along the coast, and as I had a strong curiosity to understand more of West Africa, and to compare it with the Congo banks, I proceeded with her as a passenger. I do not propose to give more than a few useful jottings by the way.

Seven hours' steaming brought us to Landana, a beautiful place judging from the external view. White factories, alternate with dark green masses of vegetation. From the summit of a tree-clothed upland peeps out the mission of the French *pères*, whose gardens and orchards of fruit-trees are admired by all visitors. The next day at 4 P.M. we halt at a cluster

1884.
June 10.
Landana.



LANDANA.

of factories called Black Point, and after receiving a certain amount of produce, pass on to Loango, which we reach at noon on the 12th. Here I receive reports from the officer in charge of the Kwilu-Niadi division. On the 13th we anchor abreast of Myumba, or Mayomba, a fine baylet open to the west, and the next day's run brings us to Sette Camma, situate

1884.
June 13.
Myumba.

south of a river called Sette. The huge breakers rolling and pounding the shore do not deter the shippers, who bring puncheons of palm-oil and rubber, and a young gorilla on board. The 15th brings us to Impango, where there is a custom-house established, as we have now entered abreast the Gaboon colony. On the 16th we arrive in the Gaboon Gulf, and



FROM AMBRIZ TO THE CAMEROONS.

anchor abreast of the town of that name, which is the seat of Government for the French colony. There are also present in the roadstead a guardship and three French men-of-war, four colliers, a few small coast and harbour steamers and lighters. On shore, conspicuously in view, are three brickbuilt Government buildings, a brick church with a corrugated iron roof, a great pile of coal, and the commencement of

the erection of a stone pier. An irregular line of buildings attached to eight or ten factories, a French (Catholic), and an American (Protestant) mission, with a small store or two, and a boarding-house, show us the whole of the French settlement established since 1842. Mangoes planted perhaps some sixteen or twenty years ago are also conspicuous for their globes of dense foliage, and are seen in uniform lines in front of the mission and public buildings. Altogether the aspect of the place is pretty and agreeable. The little hills along the shore, dotted with white houses and green groves, shining clear amid tropical vegetation, assist the general attractiveness of the view.

1884.
June 15.
Gaboon.

On the 18th we arrived at Elobey Island (Spanish), situated at the entrance to the River Muni in Corisco Bay. The island is about an hour and a half's march in circumference. German and English factories absorb most of the trade, which is all similar in character. Four or five small steamers coast about collecting produce.

From Elobey Islet we strike west to deep water, and rounding Cape S. Juan bear northward to Fernando Po, a lofty island in the Bight of Benin. We anchor in Clarence Cove, a rifle-shot distance from shore. The island is called after its discoverer Fernando-Poo, a Portuguese. It is about 600 square miles in superficial extent, and principally famous for its towering cone, whose summit is 10,190 feet above the sea. Westward about twenty miles the Mount Albert of the Cameroons Mountains begins, and lifts

1884.
June 20.
Fernando
Po.

its bold outline to the height of 13,800 feet. The lower slopes and shores of Fernando Po are a marvel of tropical vegetation; but the upper tracts appear to be grassy and denuded of trees. The inhabitants seem to be more degraded and forbidding in features than any I have seen in Congo-lands.

The 21st of June we arrived at Duke Town in the Old Calabar or Cross River. This is said to be one



OLD CALABAR FACTORIES, NEAR DUKE TOWN.

of the best oil-producing rivers. About 500 casks of palm-oil had been shipped only a week before we arrived, and there was a freight of 300 casks ready for the *Kinsembo*. As a cask weighs about 15 cwt., it may be imagined what tonnage of palm oil leaves this river.

Through the kindness of the traders I was enabled to proceed up and "explore" this oil river. For

company I had Mr. James Munroe, Dr. Mackenzie, Mr. Albert Gillis, and Captain Jolly, of the *Kinsembo*. I saw Creek Town, and a Scotch mission there. We wandered amid sea-washed creeks, and then returned to Duke Town. The sketch on the opposite page will enable the reader to imagine Duke Town. But what struck me was its miniature reproduction of the Upper Congo. Could I have been suddenly lifted in the *En Avant* at night, and deposited on the river near Ikunitu, I should have seen nothing very different to the scenes which the darkness of night had hidden from me. There were the same palms, perpendicular, inclined, or fallen over into the stream; the same density of forest, the same sweetly green verdure, the same rich reddish loam, the same kind of clearings, and the same architecture of huts. But at Duke Town and Creek Town I observed a sight which was priceless to me. I saw that the residences of the native chiefs had been constructed in England, and transported section by section and erected here—one costing £4000, one £3000, one £2000. This was the result of peaceful barter of palm-oil—corrugated iron buildings for African chiefs! They were furnished, too, in European style with carpets, chairs, mirrors and window curtains! Conquer that horror of the march from Vivi to the Stanley Pool, and I can conceive Ngal-yema, Makabi, Bankwa, Ibaka, Mangombo, Mugwala, Mata Bwyki, and a host of Upper Congo chiefs ordering corrugated iron houses and furniture from Europe for their ivory, their palm-oil, their rubber, their gum,

1884.
June 24.
Duke
Town.

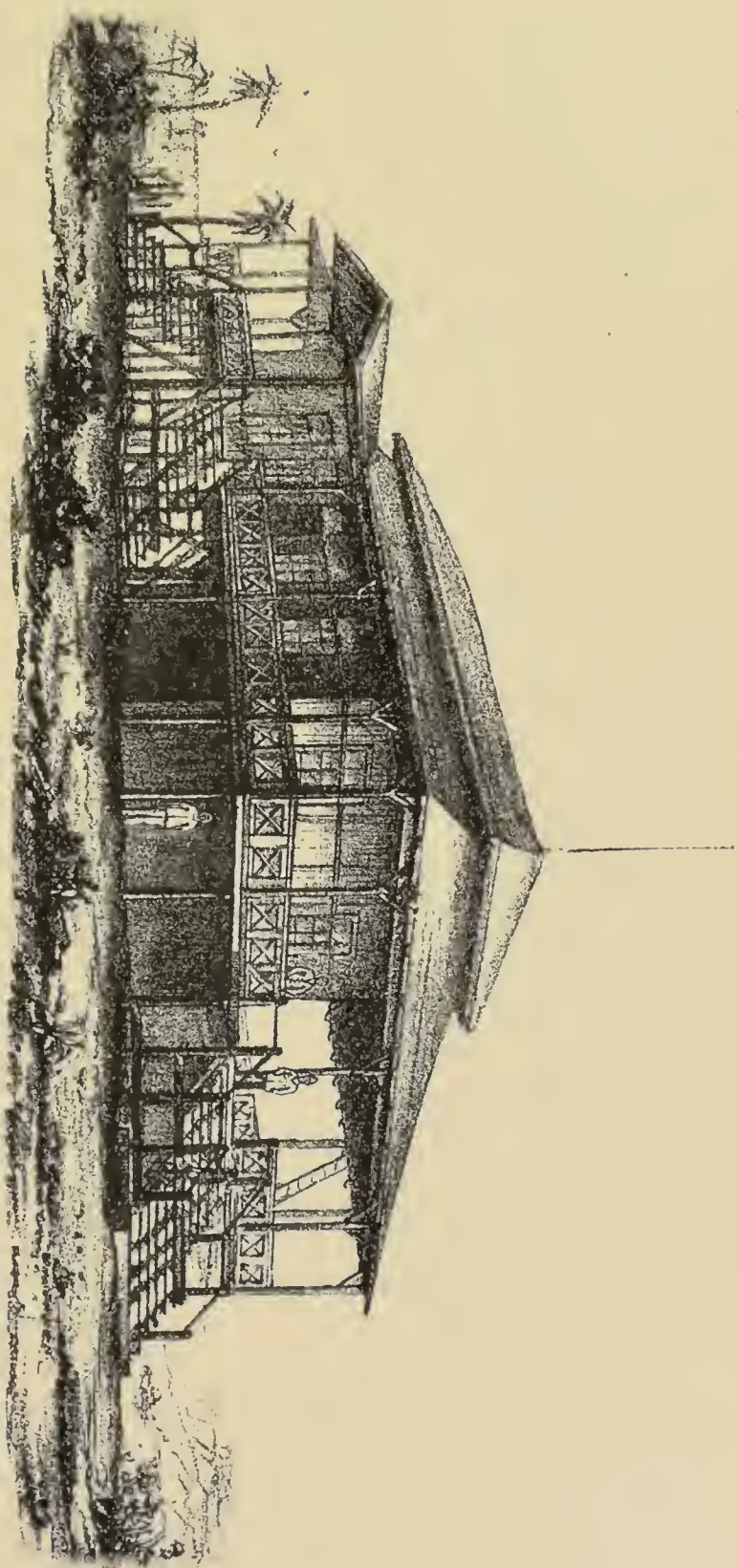
1884.
June 24.
Duke
Town.

camwood powder, orchilla weed, beeswax, grains and spices. Duke Town shows how remarkable a civiliser is fair trade. There is no government here. Now and then a man-of-war steams up and returns. The Consul was absent, but still all lived in unity and concord.

On the 28th of June the *Kinsembo* anchored in Bonny River. The great hulk *Adriatic*, commanded by Captain Bell, lifts its giant form, and displays the magnificent model of one of the old Collins's Trans-Atlantic steamers. At Bonny, also, there are houses worth £3000, owned by native chiefs. There is a cluster of factories on shore: numbers of old hulks are in the river, and a prosperous trade seems to keep every one busy in one of the saddest and most gloomy climates I have ever experienced. The great fear of the climate, however, is vanishing from the minds of men. The factors live well, and in comfortable houses. It is the fashion now to build corrugated iron houses, framed within with wood, and appropriately furnished. One inhabited by Mr. Whitehouse, 50 by 34 feet, possessed a covered verandah 11 feet broad, which is as near perfection as the genius of its designer had attained. Another story added, and each story three feet higher, with uniform and prudent life, and a fuller conquest would be achieved over the vitiated and destructive atmosphere which clings to the muddy shores of the rivers in the Bight of Benin.

From Bonny River, which is the main channel to New Calabar River, we proceed north-west, and

SANATORIUM AT BONNY.



anchor on the 2nd of July in the roadstead ten miles off Benin River.

1884.
July 2.
Benin R.

The steamers *Biafra*, *Dodo*, and *Formosa*, were discovered at anchor. While rolling in the troughs of large and languid sea-waves undulating shoreward,



FROM THE NIGER TO OSTEND.

the produce from the Benin River conveyed by the *Dodo* was transferred to the *Kinsembo*, while continued rains wetted the decks and cargo, and imparted a gloomy feeling by their tedious monotony. The next

1884.
July 2.
Benin R.

day the SS. *Loanda* appeared from England with dates up to the 11th of June.

On the 5th we passed Lagos roadstead, where three steamers and two sailing vessels were at anchor, and on the 6th we arrived off Quettah. By this time the *Kinsembo*, collecting produce at these various small ports, had been well nigh filled by the bountiful shipments from the Bonny and Benin Rivers. Nun River, the main channel of the Niger, we did not see, owing to the inscrutable bye-laws which govern these various steamship lines from Liverpool. The local news at Quettah is that a white man has been sentenced to eighteen months' imprisonment for whipping a negro! At Bay Beach we passed the *Mové*, a German war vessel, at anchor.

On the 12th we arrived at Sierra Leone. My friend, the harbour-master, who once mistook my steamer for a pirate ship, is still flourishing, and Her Majesty's coloured subjects still continue to dwell with exasperating emphasis on the merits of "this colony." Captain Jolly, of the *Kinsembo*, however, differs from the coloured gentlemen of Sierra Leone. He obtained a slight hint that there was a pestilence in the town, and hastily proceeded to sea after only a three hours' stoppage, and we thus saw the last of the African continent.

On the 29th of July the directing managers of the British and African Steamship Company kindly permitted the *Kinsembo* to land me at Plymouth, whence I hastened to London. Four days later I presented

my report to His Majesty the King of the Belgians, who was spending the summer at Ostend, that the mission he had given me to perform in the Congo Basin was accomplished, with vastly greater success than the most sanguine of those gentlemen who sat in the Council held at the Royal Palace in December, 1878, could ever have anticipated; and I have no reason to believe that His Majesty was displeased with the results of these long years of bitter labour.

1884.
July 12.
Sierra
Leone.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

EUROPEANS IN AFRICA.

European opinion of African life—Repelled by the absence of comforts—*“Amour propre”* and “susceptibilities”—Few heroes of labour—Extravagant hopes—“Bah! I did not come for work”—Types of neglected and prosperous stations—Malingering—Unintelligent workers—“Nothing like whisky!”—“Sojering”—A happier theme—The earnest workers of the expedition—New aspirants—Young officers in search of adventures—A sad accident—Our physician—A plucky Scot—The way to gain a good reputation.

Europeans
in Africa.

“WHEN in Europe we were men who believed ourselves capable of heroic work and immense effort, could we but have the opportunity of proving our strength, our natural wit, our native valour, our acquired intelligence, and our fortitude under privations; but, alas! when we landed in Africa, we discovered that most of us were without nerve, without wit or fortitude; that our strength and much of our native valour on which we had prided ourselves had vanished, and that our acquired intelligence was valueless, since we had never known the practical art of living away from the guardianship and sympathy of our parents; and when privations confronted us we completely collapsed.” Such a confession might be truthfully written by some

of the young men who returned home, after the discovery that they had simply been seduced by their own fancies and super-fervid imaginations to believe that their limited experience of a few smoothly gliding years in their own perfect lands had prepared them for the rough life of the pioneer in Equatorial Africa.

Europeans
in Africa.

As they appeared on the Congo, one after another, singly or in threes, or in larger groups, supremely ardent, grandly proud that at last the mettle of which they boasted was about to be proved in distant Africa, it was an interesting study to note how the sudden or slow descents to far below zero—often from the topmost altitude of assurance—were effected; to observe how the exaggerated anticipations, by which they had duped themselves, took quick flight before the revelations of reality.

Instead of meeting the usual conveniences of civilisation, which they seem to have taken for granted already existed, they found themselves confronted and repelled by the task of preparing these for later comers, and by the drudgery and toil it involved. They were quite prepared to enjoy the labour of the earliest pioneers, but they were extremely loth to undertake to do for their successors what they had inconsiderately assumed was already accomplished for themselves.

In the presence of this astonishing revelation I began to hear words and phrases that sounded strangely to me, because I had been abroad, alone for so many years that I had well-nigh forgotten them. These were

Europeans
in Africa.

"amour-propre"—self-love? "susceptibilities"—vanity? which were shot forth like so many delicate antennæ, and when touched by the imperative necessity of some one being appointed to undertake the work caused them to shrink back offended and alarmed if a delicate hint was given that it was their "turn." Little by little we discovered that these magnificent men not only lacked the necessary attainments, but were also most poor in the spirit of endeavour.

Of those heroes of labour who distinguished themselves by intense striving in the work-markets of Europe, I encountered but a few. Of those noble aspirants for bread or for honour of whom we read so much about in the annals of industry, I regret to say it was not my good fortune to meet many examples. For the first three years I may say their number was only about four per cent. And the rest—well, they did not allow me to forget their existence.

Can any man have read this book so far as these pages, and taken into due consideration the character and nature of our work, without readily perceiving and admitting how very necessary a strong and willing soul was to me in the matter of assistance, how such would have been honoured and blessed by me, how devoutly I should have admired him for his devotedness, and courted his company for the vital value of his presence?

Many Europeans no doubt succumbed from physical weakness; others had simply mistaken their vocation. The influence of the wine or beer, which at the first

offset from Europe had acted on their impulses like the effect of quinine on weakened nerves, soon evaporated in a wineless land, and with their general ignorance of adaptation to foreign circumstances, and a steady need of the exhilarating influence of customary stimulants, an unconquerable depression usurped the high-blown courage it inspired, which some called nostalgia, and some hypochondria. Many had also, as they themselves confessed, come out merely to see the river; their imaginations had run riot amid herds of elephants, lions, buffaloes, and hippopotami, while the tall lithe-necked giraffe and the graceful zebra occupied the foreground of those most unreal pictures. Their senses had also been fired by the looks of love and admiration cast on them by their sweethearts, as they declared their intention to "go out to the Congo," while many a pleasing hour must have been spent as together they examined the strange equipments, the elephant-rifles, the penetrative "Express," and described in glowing terms their life in the far-off palmy lands watered by the winding Ikelemba or the mighty Congo. Thus they had deluded themselves as well as the Comité, whose Members looked up with eyes of commendation; as the inspired heroes delivered with bated breath their unalterable resolution "to do or die."

Europeans
in Africa.

But death was slow to attack the valorous braves while the do-able lay largely extended before them. The latter was always present with its exasperating plainness, its undeniable imperativeness which affronted their "susceptibilities," and ignored their titles and

Europeans
in Africa.

their rights to distinction. The stern every-day reality, the meagre diet and the forbidding aspect, humbled their presumption. When they hear that in this land there is neither wine, nor beer, nor comforting cognac to relieve the gnawing distressful hankering they suffered for their usual beverage, their hearts beat more feebly; and they see that those bright African images and beautiful dreams of tropic scenery and excitement are replaced by unknown breadths of roadless regions, exuberant only with tall spear-grass and jungly scrub. The hot sun dares them to the trial of forcing a way through such scarcely penetrable growth; but the distance and fatigue, seeming to be immense, overmasters their resolution; and, alas! there are no fair maidens with golden hair to admire their noble efforts at doing and dying.

Conscience, or the prickings of shame, may whisper to a few not quite abandoned and shameless, that there is brave work to be performed, and that they may experience the colonist's pleasure of seeing the vegetables and fruit-trees and plants grow instead of that cane grass and jungle now covering the broad acreage.

"Bah! I did not come to work; I came to hunt, to play, to eat, and to receive a big salary from the Comité," some answer.

"Do you feel fatigued? Try some hot tea or coffee."

"What!" shriek they. "Try Congo water! No, thank you; my stomach was made for something better than to be a nest for young crocodiles."

Let me illustrate a few instances. One, who has loudly professed himself to be heroic, is conducted to the site of a station. Forty docile, disciplined black men are delivered over to his control. Three companions of white colour are allotted to his assistance. A stack of bales of cloth, bags of beads, and enough brass-wire to ballast a large boat are given to him as currency to barter, and to put into circulation with the aborigines for provisions such as the country may furnish. The river close by swarms with fish which, if he will, he may catch; the villages around about possess fowls, among which, doubtless, laying hens will be found; sheep and goats are also procurable, and a sufficient number of she-goats will supply him and his white companions with fresh milk; the natives in the neighbourhood will sell him sweet potatoes, which when boiled or fried, roasted or stewed, are nutritious; fields of cassava are extensive, and its edible root may be prepared in a variety of agreeable ways. Tomatoes, beans and pumpkins are not difficult to obtain, which, augmented by a store of rice, tinned vegetables and wheaten flour, besides tea, coffee, butter, jam, and condensed milk, tinned fish, meats and soups from Europe, may well permit a sumptuous diet to be enjoyed, provided there is a little exertion and personal superintendence directed in the preparation of the food.

Europeans
in Africa.

To start the station fairly, we build a strong block-house and a native village before our departure, to house the whites and their goods. Milch-goats are collected, and laying hens are purchased. The abori-

Europeans
in Africa.

gines are invited to a solemn palaver, at which both whites and natives are initiated into the groove of social relationship.

The instructions, few and simple, to him are: "See now, sir, this is your domain, legitimately acquired. It has become, by the power invested in you as chief, your estate, over which you have absolute control, subject to none other than myself. I must leave you as master and sole arbiter in all questions. Let justice attend your dealings; be kind to your people, for remember you are their father and their mother. Show me on my return that a fit choice was made when I selected you. By industry you may make your place a model to be followed by others less experienced than yourself; by due care you may make it the happiest place in Africa. You have sufficient native moneys, and abundant provisions. On this paper you will see the plan which I wish you to follow."

I am absent ten months from the scene, but I find on my return that the condition of the place is far worse than when I departed. The warm promises made by him created in me an ideal paradise; but instead of my bright, and, alas! too florid an ideal, I see the wild grass has overrun our native village, so that it is scarcely visible. Not one house has been added to those structures we had raised for him. The station is also in a state of siege; a palisaded circle shows that once an alarm had bestirred him to spasmodic action; famine beleaguers the garrison; four days searching far and wide only brings enough to last a few hours; the stores

are empty; there are only enough brass rods to last Europeans in Africa. three days. The natives leave him and his station so severely alone that he is in actual risk of starvation. What a great contrast it is altogether to that beautiful ideal of mine! How very reverse to those glowing promises, letters, and reports!

“Why, how is this? Good heavens, this is a very ruin of a place!” I exclaim. “See the village—the road, the street, the station, is buried in grass!”

Oh, this is a too harsh vibration on the fine-fibred susceptibilities! The immaculate and stiff-starched gentleman cannot, and will not, stand this. He writes: “I have the honour to send you my resignation;” which, of course, is accepted, for he is too high-stomached to accept a position where he will be less harmful, and which I would willingly give him, so that he would be powerless for harm.

A change of masters brought about a happy result. The station soon began to be worthy of its importance. There are now large flocks of sheep and goats browsing around it; scores of fowls and ducks in the fowl-yard. The table *menu* is as good as that which might be obtained at any second-class hotel in Europe. A grand market is held every morning in the plaza of the station, where I can see the little ebony children play at my door. From the assembly of native women, 500 persons could purchase fresh native bread every twenty-four hours. The houses devoted to the accommodation of the officers are 630 feet of aggregate length; the garden is about 200 acres in extent, where there are 3000

Europeans
in Africa.

bananas, 500 papaw-trees, and lime, orange, guava, and mango trees, in a flourishing condition. European and native sweet potatoes, yams, and a variety of vegetables are produced in sufficient quantities. Nine thousand square feet are devoted to a grand esplanade, and the approach to the station is along a broad, clear road. All these results, with other numerous improvements, prove the character of the changes which patient industry, in conjunction with wakeful diligence, can create in a wilderness.

In the above will be found the type of those externally magnificent creatures who suffered from an incurable hunger for a diet which rustic Africa could not furnish in its present stage of undevelopment; and who were unwilling, despite fair wages and bounden duty, to practise a little exertion to start the improvement of their position. On the contrary, they allowed unnatural bilious humours to ferment within them until they became a living eyesore to their friends and a torment to themselves.

Another type of futile manhood was the malingerer. The art was carried to perfection by one who deceived every one for weeks, and might—so annoying to some men is unnecessary rupture and rage—have protracted his skilful shamming to an indefinite length of time, had he not voluntarily ended a long period of successful malingering by an abrupt and unexpected letter of resignation. Nine weeks had this cunning artist practised his histrionic art to perfection! What soothing blandishments had I not lavished on the first artful

dodger who chose to ply his art on the Congo? The number of paces I had walked on my visits to him during his supposed affliction by computation amounted to several miles. The value of the medical stores; condensed milk, jam, marmalade, butter, soups, wine, biscuits, which were held in reserve for men who—sickened of goat-meat and cassava bread, accompanied by hourly transitions from heat to cold—required the delicacies which were consumed by this specious rogue, amounted to some hundreds of pounds sterling. When he assumed the air of a convalescent, what promises of promotion are not made to him? What encouragements are not held out to him when he adopts the tone of one being discouraged by protracted sickness? How strenuously I lay myself out to dissipate his mock moodiness and dispute his hypothetic unfitness! And, when the medical luxuries are nearly exhausted, and signs of worn-out patience are visible, he rounds it all off with a letter of resignation!

Europeans
in Africa.

In few but intelligent phrases he is told to dismiss all hopes of an early return to the coast—something is muttered of an unfulfilled contract, services due, excellent shamming, necessity of caution, triangle, &c. And our “artful dodger” is seen at work half an hour later, with jacket off and sleeves rolled up; and his after history contains a good deal of work fitly done.

Another of these Europeans, who have troubled me not a little, can be best described by an extract from my diary dated October 14, 1880.

“Poor man—let us call him Frank—like all other un-

Europeans
in Africa.

intelligent men, regards his beautifully easy life on the Congo as almost unendurable. Were he the sole reporter of his experiences since last November, people would scarcely credit the fact that Africa was pretty well explored, so many new discoveries could be furnish them with—of the soul-harrowing kind. His face daily increases in length, and seems to approach day by day nearer in resemblance to the melancholy features of Don Quixote, which I have seen somewhere. And with increasing length of face there is an increasing ill-humour. But sick men are always peevish and grumble, and are notorious for entertaining unjust feeling towards their physicians.

“ The conditions of a healthy enjoyment of life in Africa, are very little understood, if at all, by ‘ Frank ’ and his class. It is a difficult thing to impart to them the rudiments of the lesson of life. It is a most thankless task, and the effort is so ungraciously received that I have been often repelled by the visible signs of non-appreciation. Rarely have I been encouraged to proceed by those to whom counsel was addressed. They do not seem to take any interest in what concerns their own health. They duly acknowledge that it is a duty they owe to themselves to be as careful as possible, and to be prudent and circumspect; they are civil in their replies, and are ready with promises of amendment. But they never practise what they promise, and that active zeal and watchful prudence which would seem to govern one who loves his own life I never see exhibited. The performance appears to be too irksome, and neither their

intelligence nor their conscience are provoked to assist them. I remember Frank Pocock also, on the second expedition, who must (almost as the sound of my advice died away) have been meditating on that step by which he lost his life, and caused me for months a pang of sorrow, each time I thought of his sad end.

Europeans
in Africa.

“I have observed also that not only in matters of self-preservation is this apathy evident, but that it is present in the every-day duties of the expedition, which they are pledged to perform, and for which they receive remuneration. Any single order they will perform well and creditably; but if I accompany it with the expression of a hope that they will consider it as a daily duty, the order becomes at once inoperative, for it is never observed.

“If I command a native to convey such and such a box to a certain camp, and assist him with it until he feels its weight properly balanced on his head, off he departs cheerfully, and deposits the box faithfully according to the order. But if I add, “and on your return take this box also in the same manner,” experience has taught me that I have tasked his memory or his intelligence beyond his capacity, for I shall undoubtedly be compelled to await his coming, and repeat the operation of placing a box on his head. In the same manner if I tell Europeans, who in Europe would be supposed to possess sufficient intelligence to understand any reasonable order of the kind, to mend all sails, tarpaulins, tents, or baggage-covers, the order to do so is never observed, but any particular rent in a tarpaulin,

Europeans
in Africa.

tent, or baggage-cover indicated will be repaired to my satisfaction. Or if I say to such a person: 'Just cast your eye about the camp, and see what ought to be done,' I have discovered that such an order is too general to be followed; but any particular order will be mechanically obeyed. A promise of promotion, or higher pay, or a display of tender solicitude, create no impression, and as yet I know no motive powerful enough to excite the European or West African aborigine to distinguish himself by what I call an assiduous interest in his work. The only people on whom my words take due effect and create a prolonged impression are the foreign coloured employés.

"Now, to what may I attribute this absence of intelligent interest in their work which is characteristic of the European and the West Coast native? Is it to the climate? Then why does it not affect Albert and myself? I admit to enjoying a vitality unusual to me in Europe—to a buoyant feeling, to an irresistible desire to be on the move, for bodily activity, and for personal exertion of every description. As for Albert, he is never otherwise than full of life and action."

But perhaps Frank and others may feel strange yet, or—

"May be they are not well.

Infirmity doth still neglect all office

Whereto our health is bound; we are not ourselves

When nature, being oppressed, commands the mind

To suffer with the body. I'll forbear

• * * * *

To take the indisposed and sickly fit

For the sound man."

But of all the rabid absurdities I have encountered in the tropics, the preaching of a young fool on the merits of intoxicants, who has heard from some old fool that there is nothing like whisky, astonishes me most. Mr. Puffyface, while in a semi-maudlin state, has been heard declaring, in the hearing of our youthful enthusiast, that "after fourteen years acquaintance with the African fever, despite all that may be said against it, there is nothing like whisky after all for the curing of it." It reminds me very much of what I heard in the ague regions of the South-western States, and recalls to my memory the South-western saddle-bag with its inevitable whisky-bottle. But, for the benefit of the after-comers, let me prick this bloated bubble. Show me one of these old bloaters on the West Coast of Africa, and I will show you a sham and a delusion; I will prove to him and to all spectators that his supposed immunity does not rise from his devotion to whisky, but simply to his expertness in the art known to nautical men as "sojering." A few hours hard work or marching in the interior would lay the lazy lion as low as a dead donkey. Gin and whisky "topers" have lived long elsewhere than on the Niger and the Congo. But if you meet him on the African coast, a glance at his shirt or linen, after twelve hours wearing, will tell the whole truth to you as clearly as similar evidence would be deemed invaluable by a police-detective. You will be able to gauge the amount of bodily exertion he has been undergoing. If it is free from stains of body exudation, then he has been simply "sojering," and it

Europeans
in Africa.

Europeans
in Africa.

would then be difficult to say how long a time must elapse before the liver shows a deadly abscess, or becomes indurated. But, if you want to do humanity a kindness, trot him out with you on a ten-mile march through the African wilderness, and then note the result. A little war which occurred between traders and natives lately on the African coast, supplied me with valuable details, which seemed to be of no special interest to any one but to myself, as confirmatory evidences.

With us on the Congo, where men must work, and bodily movement is compulsory, the very atmosphere seems to be fatally hostile to the physique of men who pin their faith on whisky, gin, and brandy. They invariably succumb; and are a constant source of expense. Even if they are not finally buried out of sight and out of memory, they are so utterly helpless, diseases germinate with such frightful rapidity, symptoms of insanity are numerous; and, with mind vacant and body semi-paralysed, they are hurried homeward to make room for more valuable substitutes, lest they draw down a few more objurgatory phrases on Africa, which should be justly applied to themselves.

Military commanders during their campaigns or manœuvres, great journals which have despatched a body of special correspondents to report the incidents attending these campaigns, large firms who have commissioned a number of travellers to secure business, wealthy companies who own numerous factories along the African coast, will all have good reason to know the great difference that exists between man and man,

of those under authority or in their employ. They will doubtless know what broad lines may be drawn between the one who "lushes," or "perpetually sips," and who seems to think that the whole duty of man lies in "liquoring up," and the sober, earnest worker, who knows when to temper the harsher experience of life with a needful sedative or stimulant.

Europeans
in Africa.

If I in this genial manner relate my experience of the last six years, it is most certainly not with a view of making allusions to any of those who fell by the way, or were returned to Europe. Far from it. That would be too painful; sufficient for those who were failures have been the consequences to themselves. Their own sins have in many cases proved their Nemesis. If any have scented after impurities, or wallowed in mud, proved incompetent and intemperate, or bristled over with susceptibilities, allowed spleen to mar their prospects, or been indifferent to their duties, lacked manliness or were of depraved nature, all I can say is—may their own regrets be their reward.

It is well, however, for many of them that the expedition did not belong to some national government, otherwise extreme measures would often have been taken to curb the excessive licentiousness to which some were too prone, and punish severely the many sins of omission and commission of which some were guilty. All we could do was to discharge them quickly, to keep the expedition as pure as possible. That good order and quiet prevailed generally was only due to the rigorous exercise of the sole means we possessed to

Europeans
in Africa.

enforce due respect to moral laws. But had we in our service on the lower river some superior officer, capable not only of governing men, but also of self-government, much that shocked and grieved me during the first four years would have been impossible.

The evils of brandy and soda in India need only to be remembered to prove how pernicious is the suicidal habit of indulgence in drinking alcoholic liquors in hot climates. The West Coast of Africa is also too much indebted to the ruin effected by intemperance; and despite the frequent reprieves given by a generous government—furloughs of six months after only a service of twelve months—valuable lives are destroyed.

But it is my belief that the other extreme is unwise. To abstain entirely from drinking wine because intemperance is madness is by no means what I endeavour to inculcate, nor even do I recommend what is called moderation. Once we admit this last word, irreflective people may suppose that I advocate “liquoring up” moderately at any time, provided the imbibor always keeps within the limits of sobriety. I suggest nothing of the kind. In the tropics I advise no one during the hours of daylight to touch liquor, unless a medical man prescribes a certain quantity to be taken when it is absolutely necessary; that wine—good red or white wine—should be taken only after sunset, at dinner; half-a-pint, watered, if more agreeable, is what I consider as a moderate quantity, that may be safely taken as soothing to the nerves, and provoking early sleep. After a full night’s rest one will rise with a clear head,

clean tongue, and can as easily do a full day's work in the tropics as he can in temperate latitudes. Europeans
in Africa.

But now let us turn to a happier theme, and endeavour to show that human nature is not all weak and vile. There are scores of officers now on the Congo who are distinguished for their gallantry and moral courage, and for the noble virtues of manliness and steady well-doing. It is a proud and pleasing task to me to review the unblemished careers of those who have served their term faithfully and with honour, though it is still too early to speak of many most promising among those who yet remain there.

The first who served his full term well and honourably was Albert Christopherson, a young Danish mariner. He came out in July 1879, and returned home in July 1882. From the first starting of the flotilla from Banana Point to the founding of Mswata Station and the discovery of Lake Léopold II., he accompanied me. Ever prompt in duty, uniformly civil in his deportment, he proved himself to be a young man who gloried in his strength and enjoyed his African life intensely. The first year he could not impress the foreign African employés with his value, as the country, its manners and language, were all novel to him; but as soon as he understood sufficiently the vocabulary, he was not long before he became a general favourite with our employés, and his frank manners and hearty manliness won the hearts of the aborigines.

There was no duty such as one of his capacity could perform that he did not carry out with willingness and thoroughness. When requested to undertake any duty,

Europeans
in Africa.

if he gave me an affirmative—he seemed to have a certain code of honour to which he religiously adhered—I never had reason to doubt that the work should be done conformably with the order, barring accidents. Had his education and other attainments been equal to his goodwill, Albert Christopherson would to-day have been in an enviable position. The young fellow was as free from the stupid vice common to most of his calling as his constitution was free from defect. A Paladin for his strength, perfect in good humour, almost boyish in his frankness, he taught the natives to discern in him from amongst the Europeans a guileless friend.*

The next was Captain Anderson, a Scandinavian mariner. He also served a term of three years. The very movement of this man was a great pleasure to me. No coloured employé could resist, in his presence, the wish to do his level best. When he lent a hand to haul a heavily-weighted wagon up a steep hill; his keen eye glanced along the lines of tugging, panting

* I remember one day that a moody Zanzibari appeared before me to complain of Albert for having struck him. His lips were swollen and face disfigured, as evidence that something unusual had occurred during my absence. Albert was called, and appeared with his sleeves rolled up above the elbows—a fair-skinned young giant.

“Well, what is this, Albert? I hear you have been striking this man?”

“Yes, sir, I have. This man had been boasting to his fellows that he could tackle me, and he sought an occasion of it, by language and looks of defiance, when I told him to be a little more lively. The last time I told him so I gave him a little push, when he at once turned on me in a boxing attitude, learned among the sailors at Zanzibar, I suppose. I could scarcely believe it, but, seeing every one else look up, I saw that the whole thing was planned by Kungurugwa for a little sport. I gave him one from the shoulder, which felled him. He was some time coming to, and he did not try another round.”



MR. A. B. SWINBURNE, CHIEF OF KINSHASSA STATION.

men, and detected immediately the slack arm and almost despairing owner. To this place he sprang with a shout, threw himself forward, and by his gestures inspired the company to renewed effort, until the hill's summit was at last attained. While another might have stormed and threatened, and become frantic with rage, he merely electrified his company by the healthy spirit of work that was in him.

Europeans
in Africa.

Captain Anderson had been too long in command of ships not to know the value set upon honest goodwill in the performance of duty, consequently he knew no shirking, and thus left the Congo with an unexceptionably good character, and a more substantial testimonial for excellent service rendered.

The third is Mr. A. B. Swinburne, formerly a student of Christ's Hospital, London. He has now served forty-one months on the Congo, first as clerk, then as camp storekeeper, and afterwards as chief of Isangila station. Young as he was, he constructed the first brick storehouse above Boma, and was the only station chief who could for some years be taught that a vegetable garden was a valuable adjunct to a station. He impressed me very favourably by his gentleness and his quiet, mild disposition, by which he effected a marked impression on the aborigines in the neighbourhood of his station. His small company grew attached to him—there was peace, and an utter absence of jarring in his place, until it grew to resemble a family circle. His house afforded a quiet, cool resting-place for people bound up-river. The little decorations and finical “nattiness” bespoke

Europeans
in Africa.

the young creature fresh from home influences. On his spare bed one could repose surrounded by a neatness which conjured up memories of civilisation.

The Congo cañon, with its chill winds, proved at last too depressing for him; he was sent to England to recruit. But, after only a few weeks' stay, he returned again, bringing with him a large detachment of coloured recruits, which he led to Stanley Pool in good order. He was then appointed to Kinshassa station, and was the best young man that could have been chosen for the peculiar qualities of sweetness and gentleness, which endeared him to black and white. Being a man who had the moral courage not to resent native arrogance with pistol shots, the place was safe. From the day he planted his flag there, noisy clamour and suspicion were hushed, and the Association had gained an important post through the qualities which alone could have won and maintained it in peace.*

* A letter from Mr. Swinburne, January 1885, relates what progress he has made in gardening, which will be interesting to those who wish to know what may be grown in Central Africa:—

"If I had only a sufficient variety of seed I could have almost anything here. The ground is really splendid, and most favourable to European vegetables. A few English potatoes Tenz gave me are in an advanced state. I tried an experiment with them by cutting shoots, and sticking them in the ground; and the other day I pulled up one, and was astonished to find three potatoes of the size of marbles; the originals are thriving, though they had been carried all the way from England here. The eschalots are magnificent. I have also a small field of rice, another of sorghum, another of Indian corn of prodigious growth. Sugar-cane is abundant. Cabbage, onions, carrots, English turnips, cress, and parsley and parsnips, have been tried successfully. At Léopoldville they are doing wonders at gardening. The mangoes, oranges, and papaws are springing up almost visibly. Dr. Sims is pleased with his coffee experiments. A gardener is coming, from whom I shall beg more seed."

The last of the first pioneers was Francois Flamini, an ^{Europeans} Italian. This was also a hard-working, striving man—^{in Africa.} a mechanician who concentrated his affections on his wife and his engine. With the last piece of mechanism, he proved himself in beautiful harmony, judging by the happy results: the senseless iron seemed to respond to his love; it obeyed him, it seemed to sympathise with him. To it I believe he disclosed the fact that he had a supreme love for a woman who was in far blue-skied Italy, but it was not so absorbing that he and it could not do their duty. Therefore they laboured lovingly, affectionately together, without discord or jar. For the first time I possessed a delicate little engine, which, though slight and slenderly made, ran smoothly yet perfectly, while the patient soul of Flamini affectionately governed its motions.

Among the later arrivals on the Congo to fill the void created by desertions and disease there are numerous aspirants of superior rank, intelligence, and capacity, and the equal of the first pioneers in their devotion.

When the International African Association assumed direction over our affairs in the western part of Africa, the Comité d'Etudes du Haut Congo was displaced by the Comité of the Internationale Association du Congo, which carried on the vast work inaugurated under the auspices of the president and officers of the Comité d'Etudes du Haut Congo. The first to arrive were Belgian military officers, who, able to obtain leave, utilised their leave of absence by enlarging their views

Europeans
in Africa.

with the lessons derived from a rough campaign in Africa.

From among their ranks the worthiest men advance steadily to the front, "fit to do anything or go anywhere," as the English say when with laudation of their gallant soldiers they close their festivals. I name these at random, not necessarily according to merit: Captain Hanssens, Lieuts. Valcke, Janssen, Parfoury, Grang, Vangelé, Coquilliat, Destrain, Dr. Allard, &c.

Captain Hanssens, besides the mechanical duty of paying exact military obedience, possesses the commendable forward spirit of proving himself above the common place. His impulse is to aspire to show his fitness and capacity. With a lofty mind he overcomes the harsh unlovely matter of his surroundings, and disdains to notice the numberless wearying though trivial impediments to the perfect enjoyment of the life he has chosen. Before adventuring into the region he seems to have taken pains to reflect upon the character of the life he was to lead, and clothed himself with the only armour that would be proof against the pitiful circumstances that he would meet, viz., an honourable moral courage. He comes amongst us well prepared to find that as yet there are no grand hotels with their captivating *menus* and luxurious chambers. Therefore he enters his tent or his thatched cabin and seats himself between mud walls with a collected dignity as though he had a life-long experience of the camp of a pioneer. If he is ordered on an expedition into unknown districts to build stations he sets about it in

a workmanlike manner; he omits nothing in the memorandum, from a needle to a rifle; and when he departs the compactness and completeness of his column is our assurance of his success, and we hear no more of him until we receive his happy bulletin. Europeans
in Africa.

Lieut. Valcke was an earlier comer into our ranks—a mere youth from the engineer corps, wherein, strange to say, Captain Hanssens was his examiner. His first essay in pioneering was but feeble. He was asked to blast about a dozen rocks that were in the roadway at Ngoma. He fell sick, and was afterwards put in charge of our first camp at Isangila, where his inexperience of practical details in the conduct of the camp and continued ill-health caused him to be sent back to Vivi.

Kept there for six months to acquire a little more experience, he was then permitted to join the advance party. He was taken to Stanley Pool on a reconnaissance, where we learned that a few more articles of finery would be a boon, and consequently he was despatched to Loanda to purchase these, and to return with them as quickly as possible. He bought the goods and shipped them to me, but he himself, falling ill again, departed homewards.

I have no further knowledge of him until eighteen months later, in January 1883. He has grown more manly in appearance, and, though doubting his ability, I despatch him on a little mission, which I am compelled to admit is well performed. I try him in a different field, and here also, although it is unusual for him, there is an exhibition of intelligence and

Europeans
in Africa.

pleasing fidelity. Merit wins quick promotion in such a work as ours. Lieut. Valcke is appointed chief of Léopoldville, which sadly needed some man of calibre; and in a little over two months a wonderful change has come over the most important station of the Upper Congo. The rising buildings, the expanding terrace, the utter absence of discord, prove that the place has found a fit master. There are no complaints from Europeans of poor diet, no murmurs from native employés of severity and cruel injustice, nor do I hear of any controversies with the aborigines. The plaza is alive with marketing and innocent chaffering; the aboriginal chiefs are in perfect confidence assembled by his side; the garden is green with growing bananas, plots of potatoes and other vegetables; the caravans are regular in their coming and going, and the store-rooms are filled with goods and provisions.

Then comes a different trial. Vivi, the only weak link in an otherwise perfect chain of stations, is in disorder for want of a similar faithful agent. The letters from the lower river show that there is a crying need for the presence of some one possessing firmness and capacity. Lieutenant Valcke is selected with full powers to act as my deputy, and the effect of his presence is such that I am enabled to devote my attention to the pressing duties up-river. He is hastened to his duties at Léopoldville, which by this time is the centre of a large area, and in the district of Stanley Pool there are three other stations, directed by the presiding officer of the principal station. Hence this

group of four stations, influencing an area of 2000 square miles, is called the Division of Stanley Pool, the political interests of which are becoming of greater importance every day, so that only a person of tried ability can be intrusted with it. Lieutenant Valcke is

Europeans
in Africa.



LIEUTENANT VALCKE.

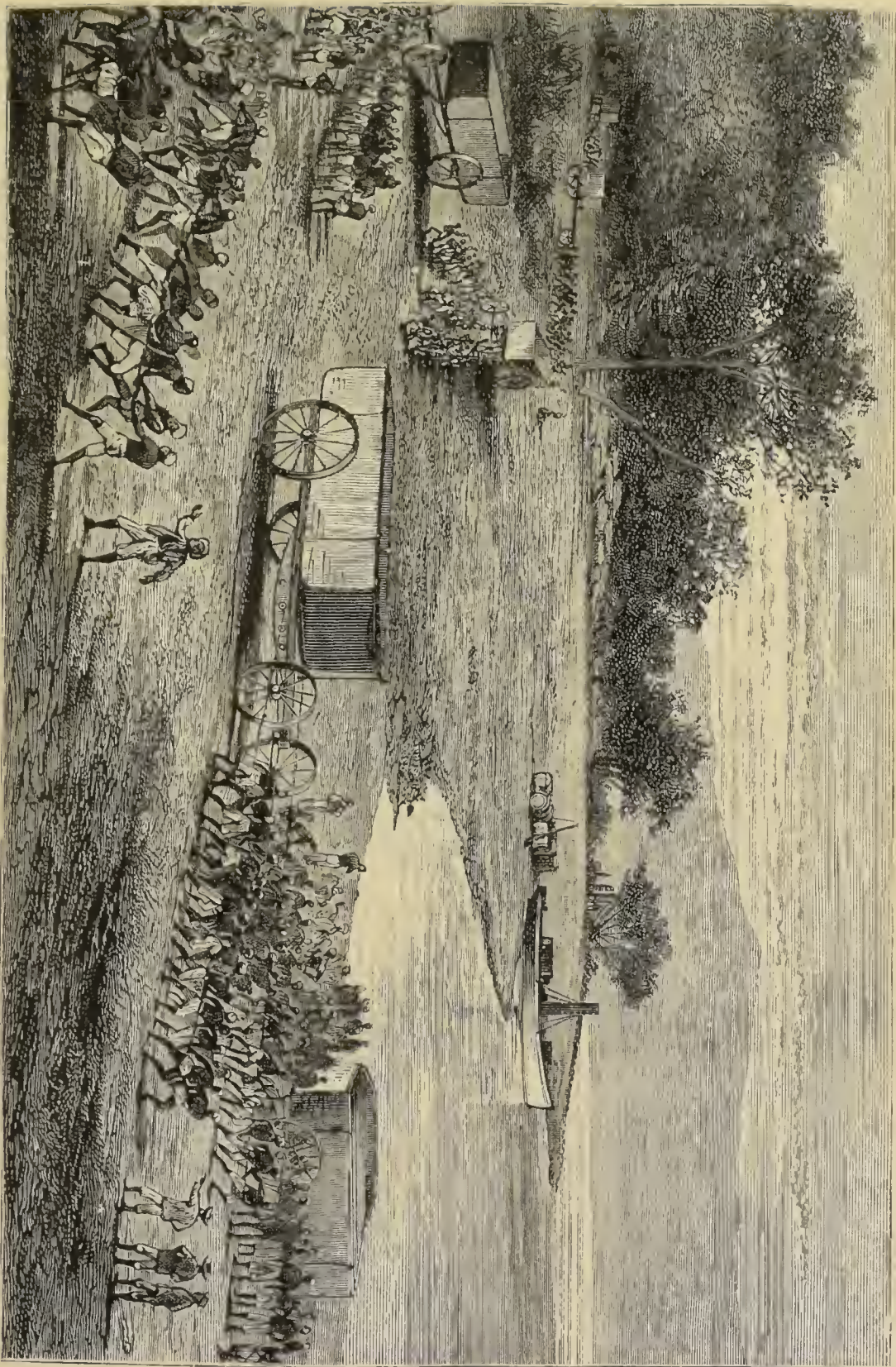
therefore appointed Divisional Commander. For five months he governs it admirably, and executes the various and manifold duties which the government of such a constantly fermented district implies, with precision, intelligence, and unflurried patience. From none of the two scores of chieftains of Bambundu,

Europeans
in Africa.

Bateké, and Babari do I hear the slightest whisper of dissatisfaction.

Finally comes the last trial of his abilities. The sectional steamer *Le Stanley* for the Upper Congo has arrived. By a fatal accident to Captain Anderson we are deprived of that officer's invaluable services. Captain Hanssens is appointed to a mission requiring certain abilities which eminently distinguish him alone. Therefore Lieutenant Valeke is selected for the serious task of transporting the vessel overland to Stanley Pool. With sufficient power such a task is by no means difficult; it is the exasperating tedium of operations which include the transport of the sections piece by piece, the oft-repeated marching and counter-marching, the painful care of the countless miscellanea attached to the steamer (the loss of a single atom of which might lead to grave consequences), which, united with many other troublesome manœuvres, make the responsibilities attaching to the work most onerous. That he was not unequal even to this mission is proved by his arrival with the steamer halfway, at last accounts, to Stanley Pool. He is still very young, but the qualities that have marked him are neither common nor usual; and no doubt this well-deserved recognition of such merits as he has developed will spur him on in a career which to-day abounds with hope.

Lieutenants Vangelé and Coquilhat are a pair of most promising young officers of the Belgian army, who have employed their "leave" manfully. Few officers in Belgium will ever be called upon to dis-



THE SECTIONAL STEAMER "LE STANLEY" LEAVING VIVI BEACH.

tinguish themselves in the manner English officers ^{Europeans} are called upon to do in the Indies and in Africa, ^{in Africa.} or like the French in Tonquin, Madagascar, Tunis and Algiers, and the Americans in the spacious West. A barrack life from youth to old age, it appears to me, with all its charms of uniform and military title, cannot offer the advantages and excitements which the adventurous young and brave crave after with an in-



LIEUTENANT VANGELÉ.

satiable hunger. It may suit the predilection of some to be the warders and armed police of order and peace in a quiet country like Belgium; but, in whatever civilised country the literature of adventure is diffused, there must be many young men whose hearts beat high as they read the stirring tales—

“Of moving accidents by flood and field,
Of hair-breadth 'scapes i' the imminent deadly breach.”

Incipient chivalry is found in numerous youthful breasts, well tired of the daily routine of marching

Europeans
in Africa.

from barrack to park, and park to barrack, with no higher purpose than being drilled. To be drilled from year to year, from the cradle to the grave! Good heavens! think of some 500 millions of Asiatics, 300 millions of Africans, and 50 millions of Indians and Pacific Islanders requiring some small share of that drill which is so lavishly given to thousands of accomplished officers, who perhaps would be better for a little less of the training and a little more of the sight-seeing in the big world without!

So the young officers came out to Africa, both unspeakably excited at the prospect of adventures in the far interior. Like many others, they had but a dim idea of the real truth; still, when the vain fancies had vanished, there was enough of sterling worth found in them. They became sobered by the grim painful realities of wretched diet, and the intercourse with the unlovely natures of thousands of savage brutalised beings among whom they had to live, often putting their natural politeness to a hard test. With their ignorance of native languages, they could only discern the kernels of the humanities which they met. They had to learn the meaning of Ba, Ki, and Wa and M, and no sooner had these profound studies been mastered than they were pushed amongst other tribes whose gabble sounded excessively unintelligible; and before long they were shifted still higher up the river; but little by little they detected, by the slim knowledge they had gained, that underneath these crude bronze masks of faces there beat warm impulses varying

from anger to joy, hate to friendship. And lo! what with honest striving and fast purpose, the goal of happy contentment was reached in triumph. ^{Europeans in Africa.}

Now if gold medals should ever be struck by the Association to reward industry, Lieut. Vangelé should receive the first and Lieut. Coquilhat the second, for the construction of the best well-made station on the Upper Congo. These two officers are the founders of



LIEUTENANT COQUILHAT.

Equator Station. To know the intrinsic value of the rich land of Africa, visitors cannot begin their estimate until they see the bananas grow in the fat soil around this station.

An accident, sad in the extreme, deprived me of a brilliant young officer after he had shown nearly three years of assiduous effort to win an honourable name for gallantry, good conduct, and industry. This young gentleman was Eugene Janssen, lieutenant in the Royal Belgian Army. He had come out as inexperienced as

Europeans
in Africa.

a boy. In eighteen months he was so far ahead of his compeers that he was selected to occupy Mswata, near the confluence of the Kwa and the Congo. After fifteen months at this place he had been so successful as a commandant, through his gentle arts of pleasing suasion, that old Gobila, the chief, consulted him in everything he undertook. He had become the pet of old and young, male and female, and his sobriquet, the "White



LIEUTENANT JANSSEN.

Chicken," had been borne up the river for a distance of 500 miles, as the name of one who was the good friend of all. The canoes fastened at the landing-place of his station, either bound up or going down river, contained hundreds who had simply halted to say good day to Nsusu-Mpembé (white chicken).

He was requested to build a station a little higher up than Mswata, and to show the Abbé Guyot a portion of ground where he might have his mission-house erected. Their canoes, returning in a hurry to Mswata

in the teeth of a gale of wind, foundered when opposite Ganchu's Point, and both the young lieutenant and the Abbé, with several of the coloured men, were drowned. Europeans
in Africa.

One of the most excellent men was Lieut. Parfoury. He lived long enough to show that in him were contained all the elements that make men greatly esteemed for intrinsic worth, moral bravery, and the indefatigable spirit of capacity ; and yet, being a little indiscreet



LIEUTENANT PARFOURY.

one day under a burning sun, he was gone from us, just as I was beginning to feel comforted at the number of worthy men flocking to the standard of the Association in Africa.

Another estimable, honest soul was Lieut. Grang. For fifty days he lived in the same camp with me, and during this period I had gathered, by the light such close intercourse with him had given me, that I could count a true man in him ; for every spring within his character was set moving by downright honesty—honest motives,

Europeans
in Africa.

and honest intentions. In all his composition there was not a grain's-weight but what was pure manliness. His frame was as grand and true as his nature. And yet, while I was only waiting for a few finishing touches to a steamer that was building in the port of Léopoldville, to take him with me—he was too trusty a man to be left behind when the Upper Congo was still vacant—he forgot something at a camp ten miles from Léopold-



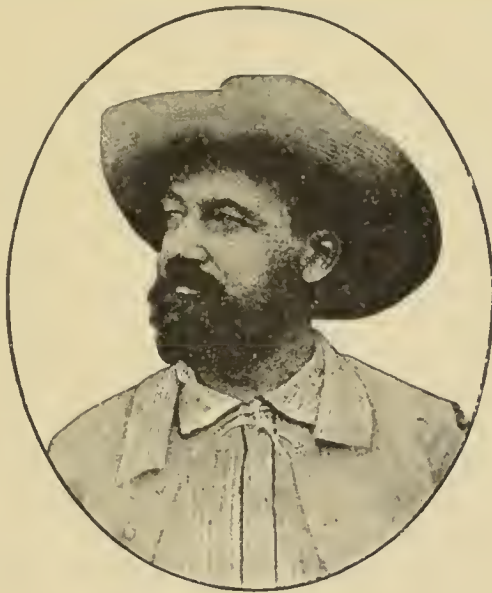
LIEUTENANT GRANG.

ville. Travelling back in a pelting rain-storm which overtook him, he was wetted, and afterwards chilled for want of an immediate change of clothing. He fell ill, and daily grew worse, and the first grave at Léopoldville was dug to bury the remains of this noble man.

Dr. Allard deserves warm praise from me, as one of the most amiable men living, and as one of the most painstaking physicians it has been my lot to meet. To some men work is as necessary as food, and to this gentleman's active mind any restraint in the pursuit

of some task it had set upon accomplishing would be a cruel deprivation. Fortunately we have been able to accommodate him in this respect; and the construction of the hospital at Boma has been an intense gratification to him. It was essential for the general good of wayworn travellers and sick officers that some such commodious building as this, with its ample verandah, airy rooms, and civilised conveniences, should

Europeans
in Africa.



DR. ALLARD.

be within easy reach of men distressed by bodily fatigue, enervated by climate, or reduced by wretched diet. But without Dr. Allard it would have been most difficult to have found a person on the Congo capable of directing the construction. To him, however, it was a labour of love, and a sick man must indeed be far gone if, with Dr. Allard's cheeriness and the pleasant surroundings of bed, board, and attention, he cannot recover. Years of acquaintance with him have but deepened my sense of his rare and invaluable qualities.

Europeans
in Africa.

I should mention Lieut. Destrain and Mr. Hodister, of the Kwilu-Niadi Valley, as further examples of manliness and indefatigability among the Belgians; but I have no intimate knowledge of these gentlemen. I infer so much from the number of years they have been engaged in the service, from the reports of officers from that locality and from a knowledge of Destrain's frequent tours of inspection and survey in the valley, and the value of the details which he has furnished to us.

Among the later British arrivals who have been conspicuous for their capacity and their all-round fitness for special fields of labour—although it would be premature as yet to detail at large their services—are Captain Seymour Saulez, Major Francis Vetch, Major Parmenter, Mr. E. Massey Shaw, Mr. Spenser Burns, Mr. John Rose Troup, and Engineer Binnie.

Captain Saulez, on Lieutenant Valcke's appointment to the command of *Le Stanley* Transport Force, assumed the command of the Divisional District of Stanley Pool. He has been tried only for a few months, but, although the district was at one time the centre of an adverse effort, he has contrived through his calm behaviour and consistent, watchful, prudent conduct to preserve the peace.

Major Vetch is the chief officer of the Native Transport. To him is intrusted the conveyance of the ten tons of goods and provisions, sent monthly from Vivi to Stanley Pool along the south bank. He is a great favourite with the natives, and the most onerous,

services have been uniformly and unexceptionally well rendered. Europeans
in Africa.

Every one who has come in contact with Major Parmenter has been impressed by his extreme suavity of manner. From some of those whose evidence may be considered of weight, I have learned that he is regarded as "a complete gentleman." To which I must add the very favourable impressions derived from his reports, which I venture to say were the fullest and the most detailed descriptions of events occurring at Vivi that I ever received. While he was in charge of our lower station, every courier bore a perfect record of events, written in an excellent, nervous style, through which I felt that Vivi was drawn nearer to me, and within my control. Personally I have not had the pleasure of seeing him.

Mr. E. Massey Shaw, of London, deserves honourable mention at my hands for some months of excellent governorship of Vivi during a term which, I fear, gave him more pain and anxiety than comfort or pleasure. For his sturdy, calm conduct under distressing circumstances, this hearty acknowledgment is due him. We had been unfortunate enough to have accepted the services of an applicant who, through an alleged long term of service in the United States Navy formerly, and latterly as American consul at St. Paul de Loanda, was supposed to be well worthy of this important appointment. If one may judge by results, a very serious error was committed by me when I accepted this person and appointed him to Vivi. After a short, but

Europeans
in Africa.

disastrous term, he was dismissed. To repair the many mischiefs resulting from mismanagement, and to restore confidence in the minds of the panic-stricken natives and frightened employés, was a task which fell to his successor, Mr. Shaw. Vivi had received such a check in its career that rebuilding was slow work, consequently Mr. Shaw has not had a fair opportunity to distinguish himself. While expressing my utter dissatisfaction with the state of our principal station on the Congo in April 1884, I entirely absolve Mr. Shaw from blame for its condition. I would rather express my pleasure at the visible signs of restored confidence which I met after my long absence in the interior, and which was solely due to Mr. Shaw's excellent temper and method of treatment.

It is my belief that in Mr. John Rose Troup we have a thoroughly good officer. No doubt in a short time, as opportunities offer, his services will be more fully recognised, and a position befitting his superior qualities may be found for him.

Mr. Spenser Burns has unfortunately been out of my immediate control, otherwise my very short acquaintance with him leads me to believe he would have held a prominent place in the record of notable and worthy pioneers.

And now, before closing the list of the British worthies on the Congo, I come to a little Scotchman named Binnie, a hero in spirit, and, although physically not of heroic mould, great as the greatest in courage. Those who read the account of how I estab-

lished Stanley Falls station and left this mite of a Europeans in Africa. volunteer all alone in the very heart of Africa, removed a twenty days' journey from the nearest station, and doomed to at least six months' isolation from the sympathetic world, with only the thought of a large work before him, while his only companionship had to be found among some 1500 barbarians 400 yards off on the same island, with more than 10,000 within easy reach of him, will at once acknowledge that the brave heart merits honourable notice here.

Though it might be supposed that when he volunteered he knew not that "he was taking arms against a sea of troubles;" but when at parting the tears stood in his eyes, it was a proof that the little fellow was fully conscious that he was in a critical position.

I know not what his "bringings up" may have been, but, as he was a Scotchman, he may have learnt a prayer in his childhood; and it may be that his feeling of loneliness that first evening recalled half-forgotten words, and forced him to his knees in the silence of his thatched hut. I cannot say, for I have not seen him since I saw the tears in his eyes over a year ago.

But on the steamer's return, the little man was discovered to have done nobly. He had enlarged his possessions; he had extended his clearing, and built an entire village; he had been planting and making gardens, and the savage natives round about him acknowledged him as their friend. Binnie was the umpire in all arguments, the arbiter in all political

Europeans
in Africa.

controversies—in short, he was the general referee in all the disputes which occurred in the locality.

This case of manly endeavour ought surely to be taken to heart by some of the many puling fellows who returned to their homes and friends to curse Africa and to frame excuses for their own utter want of the quality which raises a man from the low level of incapacity. Here was an engine-driver who volunteered from his lathe at a Scottish machinis s', and came out to Africa—by no means a strong man, not quite nine stone in weight—to win bread for his old mother. He rises to the top rank of proper men through sheer pluck and bravery of spirit. What had he to say of "*amour propre*" and "susceptibilities"? It is doubtful whether he heard such fine phrases. A Scottish machine-shop is not the place where one would expect to hear them; yet he acts bravely and loyally, through a correct understanding of the term *amour propre*—self-respect. He feels that he has given his word to be a true man, and that no one in after years, or at any time, can twit him with acting disloyally to his promise. So jealous is he of his self-honour or self-respect that he becomes the mainstay of my forlorn hope in an hour of need.

Germany was also represented by a man equal to the best from any land. This was Frederic Drees, a mechanician, but a very nobleman in working dress. Quiet and gentlemanly in demeanour, and gentle in language, he seemed to have put on a working garb just to show how well dignity befitted honest labour.

He never even used rough language to his black fire-
man, and that is great praise if you know the usual
bilious humours of the average engineer. Throughout
three years of service he performed his duties with the
gravity of a philosopher, the dignity of a gentleman,
and the general character of an honourable man.

Europeans
in Africa

There is a gentleman named Lehrman, a Croat, who, by the remarkable power of development that he possesses, has taught me not to be too rash in judging from externals. For certainly no one bore such an unpromising exterior and seemed so utterly inexperienced as Mr. Lehrman, yet to-day he deservedly ranks very high in my estimation as a thoroughly valuable officer. Energetic, bright, alert in mind and body, possessing a fine control over his men, and enjoying splendid health, no better man could be found to take the command of Phillippéville, on the Kwilu-Niadi. It was so isolated in its position that no one seemed willing to accept the appointment, but Mr. Lehrman, seeing the reluctance of others, and previously too modest to obtrude himself upon my notice, volunteered for the post, and has kept me ever since free from anxiety about himself, his own men, or the natives.

There are many officers yet deserving of notice. Foremost among them are Lieutenant Liebrechts, Mr. Monet, and Count Posse. Their trial, however, has scarcely been sufficient yet. The "roll of honour" must not be too loosely kept. The labourer is justly entitled to his hire, and the trustworthy agent or officer

Europeans
in Africa.

must not be slighted after full proof of his worthiness. In the above sketches of noble characters, others who may aspire after distinction in the fields of work may discover what special attributes are necessary for honourable mention and are most appreciated. All of them are beautifully and clearly summed up in the words of Solomon, the wisest of men : "Seest thou a man diligent in his business ? He shall stand before kings !"



LIEUTENANT LIEBRECHTS.

A wise Greek said to a friend that "the way to gain a good reputation is to endeavour to be what you desire to appear."

A wise Briton has said : "The most unhappy of all men is he who cannot tell what he is going to do, who has got no work cut out for him in the world, and does not go into it. For work is the grand cure of all the maladies and miseries that ever beset mankind—honest work which you intend getting done."

Surely if what the Jew, Greek, and Briton uttered each to his own nation is true, it must be also true for the two hundred and sixty Belgians, British, French, Germans, Swedes, and Americans who during the last six years have tried their fortunes on the Congo. Let those who are yet there, and still hesitating, think of this.

Europeans
in Africa.

CHAPTER XXXV.

CLIMATE—PART I.

Value of reliable knowledge—A youth's welcome to the tropics, and its results—Wet flannels and fever—Intemperance—Carelessness in Europe—Inquiry into the causes of sickness at the stations on the Congo—The cases of some of our invalids—The best positions to build upon—Captain Burton's advice, "Beef and beer"—European opinion of Africa compared to African opinion of Europe—Banza Manteka: a missionary station—Dangers of low-lying localities—A fatal "pare"—"Observe the native custom"—Sickness not all due to miasma—Number of deaths in our Expedition—Instances of how the deaths occurred—Urgent advice to those who wish to thrive in the tropics.

Climate—
Part I.

THE clearer I can make this chapter, the better suited it will be for those individuals who, either now, or perhaps in the course of the coming years, may have intercourse with the regions under and near the African Equator. There are so many wrong and utterly absurd conceptions abroad regarding the African climate that it is about time some one capable of speaking from experience should utter his opinions bravely and plainly; and as this book, as may be judged, has its purpose, it would be incomplete without this chapter.

It should be begun with a confession by the author of having himself lived ignorantly for many years in Africa, just as there are men along the African

coast, and up the oil rivers, the Niger and the Congo, living at this minute in the densest ignorance of the dangers around them, and of the simple philosophy of living healthily and well amid these dangers. It may be presumed, also, that if I live in Africa again, I shall still be in ignorance of many things, despite my accumulated experience of seventeen years. But, unlike many others, I have an intense desire and strong inclination to acquire as much of the wisdom of life as a man's naturally slow wit can acquire. In the same measure as my past conduct, which has been a compound of ignorance, indolence, indifference, and natural ineptitude, has been more than frequently scourged with the pains and the penalties due to my dulness, rashness, and temerity, so shall I be in the future a victim to punishments, unconsciously self-inflicted, whenever I shall trespass against the silent and unwritten laws of health.

The young European—

“His mother's joy, his father's sole delight
That with much cost, yet with more care was bred,”

sighing after adventure, volunteers his services, and sails hopefully to the Congo. He is evidently in splendid health on his arrival, but what to do with that priceless blessing, which has been, if possible, bettered by the long sea voyage, he knows no more than (if the Darwinian theory is right) his long-tailed progenitor. He has heard that it is slightly warm on the Congo—at least, so the meteorologists say; but in Europe, he smiled at this; thought he could well endure

Climate—
Part I

that heat, since Europe in summer was “ever so much hotter.” Still, after the ship drops anchor in Banana Creek, an uncomfortable quantity of perspiration exudes through the pores of his skin, and the flannels that were endurable at sea become almost intolerable. On stepping ashore this warmth increases, the flannels absorb the perspiration until they are wet and heavy, and cling uncomfortably to his body. The underclothes are full; the outward clothing has begun to be damp, and dark streaks along the seams of his coat show that they are actually wet, until in fact he represents a water-jug covered with wet flannel such as we sling up in the tropics as a water-cooler.

The youth is innocent of any idea if aught should be done by him as a precaution against the furtive influences of the new climate. The temperature without is perhaps 105° – 110° Fabr.; but it will be cooler in the verandah. And now, having arrived and being hospitably invited to take a chair, he gladly accepts the invitation, at the same time doffing his helmet, wiping his red, parboiled face, and fanning himself with his pocket kerchief. He himself observes that the temperature is near 25° cooler than outdoors. No one would offer water to a stranger, but wine, schnapps, beer, gin, seltzer, &c.

See the unsophisticated home-bred youth, how bashfully he accepts! Is he not in Congo-land? Why may he not ape the moustached and brave manhood about him? “I will take wine, if you please.” Thanks! and a glass of black-red Portuguese wine

is handed to him, which after trial he discovers to be more potent than a bottle of champagne.

Climate—
Part I.

This strong draught of wine has infused courage in him; it leads to conviviality and apparent loss of strangeness. He sits longer, and becomes interested in the gossip of the coast, which, with men of his class, is usually made up of fevers, frivolous localisms, of crocodiles, or hippos, or “niggers,” and such recitals as would outlast a Lapland night. But it is now evening and dinner time.

The ill-fated youth has enjoyed his dinner and potent wine, and a comfortable arm-chair receives his repleted form. The night is cool, and gracious, and bland; the stars shine brightly, but there is an unaccountable chilliness in the air, and the poor young man has long ago forgotten the wringing-wet state of his flannels, and could not discern, through his verdant experience, that he was like a water-cooler. At last he seeks the couch offered him by the hospitable trader, on which he tosses about till cockcrow with disturbed dreams. In the morning he feels unwell; his tongue is furred, and a strange lassitude has taken possession of him. This feeling grows into a nauseous sickness. He is visited about the time of *déjeuner*, and is discovered with flushed face, watery eyes and a rapid pulse, and declared to have a fever!

Then there is the medicating of the sick man in a rude unskilful way, and a rough but kindly nursing of him. But the personal attendant is a black negro, to whom the white man is an absolute stranger. The

Climate—
Part I.

scene ends after a few days with convalescence perhaps, and a slow recovery, or, in an extreme case, with death, when the body will be interred at the Point among the remains of other unfortunates. But no lesson will be drawn from that death any more than from the many preceding deaths, until those who can read and learn will obtain it from this chapter.

Truly it is extremely discouraging to feel that of the twenty other young or mature gentlemen who may have seen this youth, and perhaps enjoyed his society for this one evening, there is not one of them can make an approachable guess at the real cause which cut him off so prematurely. Each will have his opinion: the old veteran will remark that it was a pity such a boy should have left his mother; another will hazard a remark that, no doubt, it was some form of organic disease; another will attribute it to hereditary weakness, and he will quote De Bloeme and Greshoff and Muller, and several others who came out as boys and thrived marvellously on the climate. One thoughtless man will cry out, "Another victim of Africa! Cruel, murderous Africa!" while one may perhaps venture to utter his belief that it was the Portuguese wine, which, if not very much diluted, is as bad as brandy! And so on—all mere surmises, as far opposite to the truth as the truth is to lying!

The fever was caused by sitting in his wet flannels in the cold night air. We know how a young man in Europe, returning home in wet clothes, feeling shivery, may be attacked with inflammation of the lungs, and,

despite the most loving attention and highest medical skill, may be carried off by death.* Life in Africa does not exempt another young man from a like effect arising from a similar cause. Strange to say, young men fresh from Europe are very prone to believe that if their flannels are made “wringing wet” from violent perspiration, they are not liable to the same dangers as one who has been wetted and chilled by a wintry rain-storm. On their return to Europe, however, they have rather inverted their opinions, preferring to believe that a sudden exposure of the body when perspiring to a cold draught is not so dangerous as a similar experiment would be in Africa.

Many will say that this is incredible, but such errors of judgment occur nevertheless. There are about twenty cases to my personal knowledge to prove the statement. One case, resulting in pneumonia, was lately telegraphed from Berlin over to England, and a friend of mine died but a short time ago from inflammation of the lungs, after successfully enduring several years’ work on the Congo. Several of my English friends have also lost coloured men from Africa through their rash forgetfulness of avoiding draughts when heated by the warm temperature of their rooms. I have been a victim to my own carelessness repeatedly, and though I know well what the

* A medical authority in New York has lately drawn attention to the fact that the violent exercise indulged in by 20,000 young people at the skating rinks every evening has caused an alarming increase of pneumonia, 149 deaths in one week being reported. This exercise induces copious perspiration and fatigue, and, thoughtless of consequences, the young have sallied out from the rinks to encounter the keen cold blasts.

Climate—
Part I.

tedious, exasperating consequences of such thoughtless folly will be, an unlucky abstraction of mind or some hapless oversight has caused me to look out of the window of a warm room ; or some bore has button-holed me before an open door through which the gusty wind enters ; then comes the tedious catarrh, the painful bronchitis, and their protracted chest affections, tempting me to exclaim, like the Roman patrician of old, who denied zealous duty to his Emperor in cold, chilly, feverish Albion, "Ob, England ; cruel, murderous England !"

At Vivi, for instance, I would undertake that the strongest man would have a fever within a few hours, but it will depend on the condition of the man's system how severe or how mild it will be. Given a case, having blood already impoverished by poor food, with system sapped and weakened by various trifling little African "colds," the fever that could be inflicted on him might prove dangerous to life, while the strongest man, with all his fresh blood, his splendid physique, and prophylactic precautions, would be sure to regret during five or six days that he had exposed himself to it.

At Vivi there is an excellent place to prove the above truth ; let some Dr. Koch try it. I should say in this manner : "Go down to the Nkusu Valley, or Vivi landing place, become well heated, perspiring, walk briskly up hill, which will no doubt increase your perspiration ; then seat yourself on the brow of the station hill in a comfortable cane chair, and occupy your mind with Fothergill's, Fayrer's, or Lauder Brunton's ex-

planations of malaria, say, for an hour, until you are well chilled, then go to dinner that evening with what appetite you may."

Climate—
Part I.

I have suffered during my long African experience over 120 fevers, great and slight, and I may have suffered over one hundred before suspecting that many of these were preventible in other ways than by taking quinine, and its preliminary remedies, and that there were other causes productive of fever besides malaria, and miasma. The last six years in Africa have enlarged my experience greatly. Added to my own personal sufferings have been those of about 260 Europeans as ignorant as myself of the causes of these fevers. The sick lists of various stations have been inspected by me, and the inspection has created a desire to know why fevers and sickness were more frequent at one place than another. I have been astonished to discover that fevers were more rife at a station near which no one could possibly find sufficient putrefying vegetation to account for the sickness.

Old Vivi, for instance, is situated on a rocky platform, with a sudden drainage on three sides, and only during the rainy season does the wind come from the north-west, where rises the towering mass of Castle Hill. For a distance of forty miles, between us and the low ground near Boma, the Congo flows between the rock slopes of two mountain lines, which rise from 200 to 800 feet above it. Yet, old Vivi, excepting Manyanga, is the most sickly spot in all our possessions, if the sick list is at all reliable, and I personally suffered more

Climate—
Part I.

vexatious “little fevers,” at that station than at any other. The third most unhealthy station is Léopoldville, though during the last year there has been a decided improvement in it. But if our old-fashioned ideas of the cause of fever were correct, it should have presented a much cleaner health-bill than several of the stations on the Upper Congo, some of which are situate only about ten feet above high water, with perhaps many hundred square miles of black fat loam or damp forest on three sides of it. Yet to despatch debilitated persons from Léopoldville to these upper stations, in apparently unhealthy situations had the same effect as sending them to a sanatorium of established repute. Young Glave, of Yorkshire, while at Léopoldville, is seen gradually becoming cadaverous, his form becomes less and less rigid and upright; his pallid face, white lips, and dark lines under the eyes, warn us that he undergoes the strange vicissitudes common and necessary to unfledged Europeans. At his own request he is commissioned to build a station at Lukolela, and the change in two months is simply astounding—he becomes at least three stone heavier in weight, living light is in the eyes, his form is pliant, vigorous, his movement quick; his every action betokens lusty young life. Lieut. Liebrichts, at Léopoldville, is a subject creating great anxiety to me. I whisper my suspicion to the medical man in charge, that this is another unfit case for Africa. Suggestions are not wanting, but the doctor is himself inclined to despair. He is taken to Bolobo on my way to Stanley Falls. My return down river is haunted by a fear that

bad news of him await me there, instead of which a magnificent specimen of manhood greets me, and after a wondering gaze from all of us on the steamers, something in the tone and manner remind us of our sure-to-be buried friend. Why, it is Liebrichts himself, a hearty, sleek man, who has a strong grasp, and a bright cheery welcome to all of us.

Mr. Swinburne, one of the "faithful" among the expedition, is always ailing, ulcerous or feverish continually, at Vivi, Manyanga, or Léopoldville; but being dispatched to Kinshassa on Stanley Pool, only five miles above Léopoldville, he lives eighteen months, to my knowledge, without a single attack of indisposition—a constant marvel to his friends, that a low-lying station like Kinshassa can preserve such a man alive and well.

Lieutenants Vangele and Coquilhat, the builders of Equator Station, and the vanguard of the Europeans on the Upper Congo, each time we visit them, are anxiously asked, "What of the climate?"

"Splendid!" the gallant young officers cry. "Nothing could be better. Do not trouble yourself about us; give us a little coffee or tea, and enough to have a *petit verre* occasionally for our *café noir*—that is all we want; our own gardens produce all the rest. As for health, we two ought to satisfy any one of the salubrity of this region."

When I examine the muster-roll of those along the Upper Congo since 1882, I find there have been twenty-nine Europeans above Léopoldville, out of

Climate—
Part I.

whom two have been drowned and only one died of sickness, and twenty have either served their three years' term of service, or are nearly completing their term. Only one has resigned through reason of severe illness.

Considering that the further they have advanced into the interior, the less certain the Europeans are of receiving external aid and supply of customary adjuncts to their economic fare from Europe, the above statement is most creditable to the climate.

Léopoldville,—which, since 1883, has been steadily improving its sanitary condition by the increase of its comforts and conveniences, through the enlarged views which the natives entertain of white men, added to the immensely greater ability and experience of the Europeans in charge,—despite the larger extent of cultivated area, and the more perfect order and cleanliness of its surroundings, is still subject to light waves of sickness occasionally, although they show nothing approaching the former severity, which sometimes, in one day, incapacitated one half the number of whites at the station.

In the moral atmosphere of Léopoldville there is no fault to be found. The conduct of all the people is decidedly virtuous and above reproach. Neither can they be charged with liberal consumption of the strong wine or ardent spirits, which are so plentiful on the coast, because these cannot be transported in such quantities as to permit of such extravagance. The houses are large, commodious, cool, airy, well ventilated, and

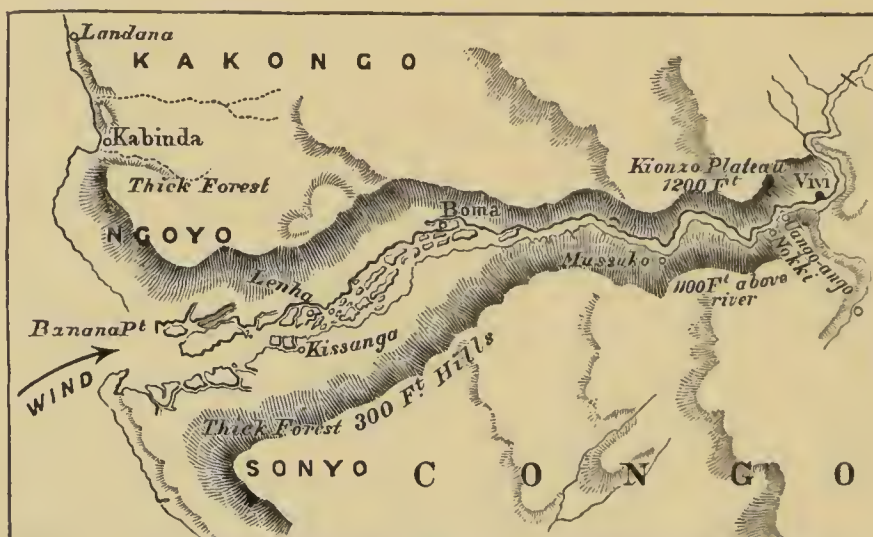
well protected against the heat of the sun. With more labour, and in time, many additional improvements may be effected in draining and clearing all that remains uncleared in the immediate neighbourhood of the station. Every square yard of clean open ground will be a little gain in health. Yet, at the same time, I doubt if it will ever be perfect in its present position.

Vivi, again, to which the steamers from the seaport bring constant supplies of necessities, even luxuries, never lacks wines or spirits, and is many degrees better, for furniture-equipment of its buildings than Léopoldville, is much inferior for the salubrity of its position. This cannot be ascribed to the fact that it is nearer to the lowlands of the sea-coast than Léopoldville, because Luteté Station, situate on the plateau eighty miles nearer the sea-coast than Léopoldville, is one of the healthiest stations on the Congo. Nor can it be attributed to the fact that immoderate indulgence in wine and spirits might be charged to some that have disgraced themselves, since the most virtuous and well-conducted have also suffered, though not nearly to the same extent. The rocky composition of the site of the station, the innumerable means of drainage around, the entire absence of anything likely to vitiate the atmosphere from putrefying vegetation, render the problem still more difficult to resolve, without the key to the solution afforded by a comparison of the sick lists and the positions of each station.

The truth is that the sickness of Vivi is attributable to various causes, but first and principally to its defective

Climate—
Part I.

position, being situate on a projection in the neck of a mountain funnel. The mouth of this funnel gapes about fourteen miles to the Atlantic Ocean, then contracts just above Boma to about a mile in width, and at Vivi to about 1300 yards. The pier platform on which the old station was built projects about 300 yards across this breadth, receiving the cold south-west sea-breeze, which, blowing a five-knot breeze at Banana, is felt of the force of fourteen knots at Vivi.

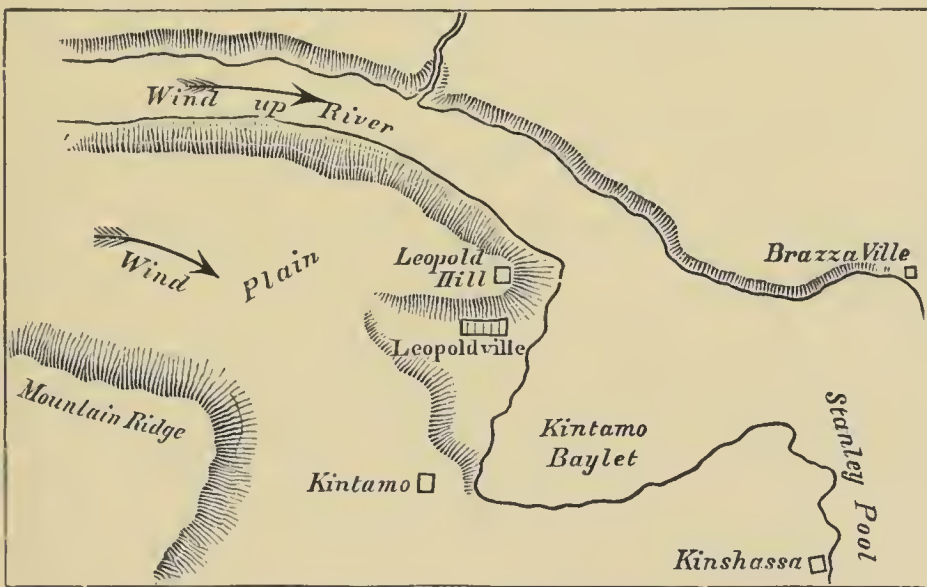


THE FUNNEL-SHAPED GORGE OF THE LOWER CONGO.

Manyanga, another unhealthy station for its unfortunate position, is only higher up the neck of the funnel. Léopoldville again is placed slightly better, but still defective, being on the slope of a hill by which the plateau winds and the upper strata of cañon blasts escape, to be diffused over the expanse of Stanley Pool. Boma is superior to Vivi for its position, because near it the Congo Valley is less confined, and would be consequently more salubrious were there some drainage of

the flats around it effected. Banana Point ought to be superior to both, because the hills are still farther removed, were it not so low, and its neighbourhood so offensive. The site consists of sea-sand, through which the sea and river water percolate underneath; the hollows within present malodorous abominations, and perhaps the absence of strong moral public opinion has conduced to its past evil repute. At the same time, a wise expenditure of money, and good order,

Climate—
Part I.



PLAN TO ILLUSTRATE HOW THE GORGE DISCHARGES ITS WINDS AT
LÉOPOLDVILLE.

would greatly improve the chances of life on the sandy point. It is certain that a position on the sea coast, if well chosen, with cleanly living, aided by wisdom in the petty details of life, ought not to be more unhealthy than any other place on the globe; because the mere heat is no worse than mere cold—it is the careless exposure to both that invokes its malignancy. The heat is as cruel to the unprotected body as it is to the head

Climate— of a European, but so is the extreme cold. It is the
Part I. wise government of conduct that renders both equally harmless.

An open position then, especially if its surroundings are happy—that is to say, removed as much as possible from all deposits and deleterious influences of putrefying vegetable matter, with the air freely diffused around, with careful provision against accidents from the extreme heat, with changes of temperature guarded against by the same precautions that are adopted in Europe, with good food, with work to amuse or interest the mind, with due means to check the influences resulting from such a total change in life as the tropic climate demands, and with proper moral conduct, I maintain, will enable the European to thrive in a hot climate as well as in any climate under the sun.

Travellers vary in their estimation of what is fitting for the intending immigrant to the tropics. Captain Burton, after a brief visit to the Congo, cries out for “Beef and beer.” However startling at first sight this may be, yet there is some truth in it. “Beef,” by all means, that is good substantial nourishing food. Let there be a variety of fresh animal food; well cooked beef, mutton, game, fish and fowl, with vegetables—potatoes, turnips, cabbages, beets, carrots—and good bread, butter, jam, tea, or coffee, with all sensible dishes that the cook’s skill can furnish. Even although other externals are not quite perfect, good food will better enable one to live and withstand the troubles of climatic change than bad food. But about “beer” I differ.

The English beers are too bilious for Africa, and the German beers are not absolutely necessary, so long as red and white wines—claret and Madeiras—are obtainable; and I would strongly recommend that these should be taken moderately, with dinner, and never—absolutely never—during daylight. If one exception should be allowed it would be after a severe strain of the system, when you will be compelled to confine yourself to your house until the effect produced by it has completely passed away. For, however small this effect may be, whether a slight exhilaration, or complete intoxication, it emboldens or inspires you with a false courage that may be fatal, if you are tempted to defy the direct sun-heat while under the elevating influence of the beverage.

The Duke of Wellington's receipt for the promotion of health in India, is also applicable to the Congo.

“I know but one receipt for good health in this country, and that is to live moderately, to drink little or no wine, to use exercise, to keep the mind employed, and, if possible, to keep in good humour with the world. The last is the most difficult, for as you have often observed, there is scarcely a good-tempered man in India.”

All those officers on the Congo who have reflected at all will admit that a moderate life has been proved to be more successful than an immoderate one. Moderation in food, as well as in drinking ardent liquor. To drink little wine is excellent advice, but I am not yet prepared to admit that total abstinence from wine

Climate—
Part I.

is better than temperance, either in Africa or in Europe. Employment for the mind I have already urged; and if a man can keep in good humour with the world it means that he is in good health from wise living, a happy situation, agreeable employment, and that the world is pleasant with him.

It must be remembered, however, that if a man in a violent state of perspiration subjects his unprepared person to a cold draught of wind while in such a condition, the fact that he is temperate in his life and habits, and has always dieted his body wisely, richly, and nobly, will not save him in Africa from a fever, any more than that it will save him in northern Europe from a cold and its tedious pains. Neither “beef and beer” or “beef and brandy,” nor all the drugs of the pharmacopœia will save him. Or, if the position of his house is so unwisely chosen that his body is perpetually subjected to violent changes of temperature—one minute in a state of profuse perspiration and the other minute outdoors without additional clothing, exposed to a chilling blast that closes the pores, and chills the damp flannel pressed against the body—his perfect diet will not avail him. My wonder is, not that so many have returned to Europe disheartened at the weakness of the resistance their constitutions were able to offer to the vicissitudes which their ignorance subjected their own persons to, but at the fact that there are still so many who bravely endured all. And, now that so much has been cleared of what was before so mysterious to us in Africa, let us try how it would answer in well-

drained and well-fed London, or any other English city. Let us heat our sitting-room, until the under-clothing gets thoroughly soaked with perspiration, then walk outdoors to a street corner, and stand on a windy day without additional clothing, and wait till next morning for the result. Or go to a London ball, become heated with dancing in a crowded room, then walk home in the same dress, and tell me honestly if, in addition to months of this experience, you add months of poor diet, bad cooking, and other indescribable discomforts, you wonder that the African continent has an evil character, and that so many unfortunate pioneers of trade and exploration have left their bones in its earth.

Let future governors of Sierra Leone bear this great cause in mind, and see if they cannot rectify the position of their residence, and that of the barracks in their town. It may be, a new light will dawn on them, to the great benefit of themselves and the comfort of their families.

I have said that Vivi owed its unhealthiness principally to its defective position, to its exposure to the cold blast blowing up the mountain funnel from the south-west. I have taken Vivi as a type—and the same is applicable to any similarly exposed camp, station, town, or city in equatorial Africa. Another singular illustration of this is the fact that in ascending the Congo, notwithstanding the long array of swampy islands and shores, and the want of exercise on such small boats, we enjoyed excellent health. But when

Climate—
Part I.

descending the river at full speed the wind, sharp, cold, and chilling, frequently prostrated us. Under shelter, in the cabin, or when protected by the bulwarks, the temperature was warm enough to induce an insensible perspiration, but when we emerged for some duty from behind our shelter, the wind produced that feeling which ended in fever. A glass barrier in front of our bodies while piloting the steamers down river would have saved us from these distressing attacks.

I have said, also, that this exposure, and the quick and frequent transitions we thereby experienced, though the principal, were not the only causes of fever; and I have also asserted, and proved, that the warm temperature of equatorial Africa is not dangerous; that the ill-effects suffered indirectly through it are easily remediable, provided circumstances will permit it, and mostly all other causes are preventable.

Europeans going into Africa are precisely in the same state of ignorance as Central African aborigines coming to Europe. Both commit the gravest imprudences, and being severe sufferers through their imprudent follies, they ignorantly blame the country and its climate. "Cruel, murderous Africa!" exclaims the northern European. "Deadly and hateful Europe!" exclaims the dark aborigine from the African tropics, when the first cold draught from the open window or door visits him with a protracted bronchial sickness.

I have pointed out our short-comings in judgment, and the sick lists at Boma, Vivi, Isangila, Manyanga, Bayneston, and Léopoldville will prove my words. But

I must now point out another cause of sickness, to illustrate the long-suffering and numerous calamities which purchase experience, although nothing short of dynamital terror moves the majority of mortal men to immediate action.

Climate—
Part 1.

I will take Banza Manteka, a station of the pious, hard-striving, long-enduring missionaries, belonging to the "Livingstone Inland Congo Mission," as a type of another cause of sickness. It is situate in a hollow, like a bowl deep sunk in the bosom of enfolding hills. Perhaps from one hill crest to the opposing hill crest, a line drawn exactly bisecting the station would be a mile and a quarter in length. On one side, however, that opposite to the prevailing winds, it is open, having access to the valley of Ntombo Lukuti. Here, one would say, is a snug nest, where the howling winds cannot chill to death the pale-faced European; and to make it still more snug and cosy the poor fellows in their zeal for work have planted gardens of bananas and papaw-trees, whose beautiful fronds and leafage almost hide the dwelling of these God-serving men.

In the high, exposed places we consider the rainy season as the healthiest. Some have supposed it to be so from the greater clearness and purity of the atmosphere whereas in fact it is only because the cold winds are hushed and we enjoy an uniform warmth. But if this season is the healthiest at Vivi and other stations in the Congo cañon, it is the most unhealthy in hollows like these of Banza Manteka and Lukunga stations.

After a rain-fall the atmosphere is clear and the sky

Climate—
Part I.

is of an Italian hue. During this temporary clearness the atmosphere offers the least obstruction to the direct power of the sun. If powerful on the hill-tops it must be of baking heat in these bowl-like hollows. It is shot forth relentlessly through the thickest cork-helmet. If an umbrella is used, while increasing the safety from danger above, it only causes a more profuse perspiration by the confinement to the body of the ascending cloud of warm vapour which surges upward from the damp earth, and encompasses the person at every step. According to the nature and quality of the inorganic bodies in the neighbourhood, it either rises in denser or in a more heated volume. If the neighbourhood is rocky the heat blazes in the face almost insufferably and bakes the clothing; if of wet grass or damp earth, there is an excess of moist, penetrating warmth, which soon deluges one with perspiration. The top of that swathe of dead grass is nearly dry, but put forth your hand and place it underneath, and the astonishing warmth of the moisture, whose temperature is like that of an oven, will illustrate the means by which rapid decay is caused in these lands. Have you never tested the heat to be found in your own dung-heap at home, even in mid-winter? If you inhaled the stifling atmosphere long you suffered what no constitution could endure with impunity. Well, then, at Banza Manteka station, the hot, muggy, steamy atmosphere rising up with the clouds of moisture, and bearing the deleterious influences upward in a continued, undrifted volume from old decaying grass at the base

of the green shoots, or from decaying leaves gathered at the base of the beautiful bananas, is more pernicious to health than life on a dunghill in an unfloored house in Europe would be, unless you put a great hot stove inside to equalise the quantity of malaria—bad air—that is inhaled in the sickly hollow of Banza Manteka. It is reported that such and such a missionary was obliged to go home after suffering from a "pernicious" fever, that is, a bilious fever of unusual severity. A young military officer built a native cabin in the Nkusu ravine, near Vivi, in the middle of what he romantically called a "parc." He had caused avenues—"Avenue de Valcke," "Avenue Stanley," "Avenue de Bruxelles"—to be formed in this "parc," and, to enjoy the romance thoroughly, he dwelt in his native chalet to luxuriate in his beautiful romance. Poor fellow, he was soon taken ill of a bilious fever, and he died about sixty hours later. This trough of the Nkusu was still more confined than the bowl of Banza Manteka.

On open ground, during the rainy season, the air diffuses this pestilential vapour, heavy with putrefaction and decay. Movement over it is not only a relief from the dangerous heat from above, but from that which, when a person stands still, rises up in a thin, invisible column to the face behind the bulwark of the person.

But some one, hard to satisfy and prone to doubt, remarks that on open high land there is sickness also. You cannot call "open high land," a plateau, or plain, where the face of it is uncleared of its forests of tall grass and obstructing scrub. The grass of the tropics

Climate—
Part I.

is several feet higher than the height of a man's person ; the more confined the cleared area in which you stand is, the more unhealthy is your position. Begin at the narrow foot-wide path, with the grass from two to five feet above your head, with a hot sun glowing burningly on the earth, and your position will be unendurable if you stand still long. Advance into a small open market-place in its midst, relief is instantly felt. But could you suppose that you had an area of a few square miles of plain, or gently-rolling land, without swamp, lagoon, or stagnant body of water, that the dead grass was clean cleared off, and only vegetables and grain growing, that your two-storied house was prepared with windows to admit light, and could likewise admit the cool air without admitting draught, and that the roof projected broad and ample from its walls, your consequent good health would then teach you, and teach the coming generations, that a tropic home can be made as healthy and as comfortable as any home in your own dear native land.

Observe the native custom, and let the dark aborigine teach you by his example. Do you, therefore, as one should expect from your education, improve your surroundings after the elementary lesson derived from his example has been well acquired.

In what part of the Congo cañon do we find a native village after passing Mussuko ? Let us cast our eyes on the chart. All the way from Mussuko both banks are abandoned. On the shores of that expansion of the Congo called Stanley Pool, we find Kintāmo, Kinshassa, Kimbangu, Kimpoko, Mfwa, and Malima,

but these are peopled by ivory traders who have business with the Wy-yanzi River men. Near Mswata are the first evidences of population; but as far up as the boundaries of Bolobo district the people are but scanty in number along the river. The highland levels are more or less inhabited according to the advantages offered by the neighbourhood, such as accessibility to water, fertility of soil, presence of shade, and security from violence. Their weak numbers, and their dread of stronger neighbours, have left many things undone that a sanitary inspector would condemn as a neglect cruel to themselves and their families. So long, however, as choice was permitted to them, we observe that they have elected to leave the river and its banks, and build on the high, comparatively open plateau and plain.

At Banza Manteka, for instance, we have an illustration of the manner in which the natives have rejected the unhealthy hollow, and the curious contrast of the white man's choice. All around, and within view from the white man's mission-house, are the groves under which nestle the native villages. There is only one native village within the hollow; but the white man's house is almost at the bottom, as though he might be in possession of a charm to drive away the foul air and gases exhaling from that close inland basin. Experience has proved that his charms, his potion and his drugs will not avail the white man to contend against such deadly influences, any more than the fetish absurdities availed the black man in his efforts to live there.

Climate—
Part I.

Long after I had constructed Léopoldville's block house, the natives of Kintambu district informed me that a village once stood on the same spot. A few oil palms and pieces of crockery had caused me to suspect this. Since I have been enlightened by my sick lists, and followed up this interesting research into the causes of the disastrous sickness experienced there, I have often condemned myself for my remarkable blindness. As an excuse I could only plead that I was searching after a totally different cause in a diametrically opposite direction. I was searching for things and places that bred miasma, such as decaying vegetable bodies, deposits of ooze, stagnant creeks, flat-bottomed gullies, fat with damp alluvium, quick breeding hollows, rank masses of vegetation, that I might avoid them, if possible; for doctors, by their many books, of which I had a store, gave me the benefit of their collective wisdom—and what is wisdom but aggregate experience?—and pointed out to me that such places were productive of malaria. I wished to avoid the sources of malaria, and at Vivi I built, 340 feet above the river, on a solid concrete platform of rock, and dared to defy the tropic heat. I constructed Manyanga on the crown of a hill, and nothing stagnant or malarious could possibly exist within several days' journey of the station. But when my white comrades began to droop and fade away, when their strength, their youth, their morality, and their unimpeachable virtue seemed of no avail, and death claimed its victims one after another, I must admit that utter bewilderment took possession

of me. At length the upper station's extraordinary good sanitary condition awoke my interest, while the station of Kinshassa, only five miles from Léopoldville, seemed also to afford me a clue; and passing rapidly through the entire lines of the stations, obtaining from each officer in charge his reports, and noting clearly as I went the position of each, I saw that our stations were in a strange comminglement of the healthy and unhealthy. By arranging these in tabular order, a clearer idea of the truth flashed upon me. This I have endeavoured in plain simple language to convey to the general understanding of such men as may now reside on the Congo, or may choose in future time to emigrate there, whether as agents of the new State, missionaries, traders, tourists, explorers, agriculturists, or miners.

Climate—
Part I.

Added to the victims of these cold draughts, which greatly outnumber all others, were those whose constitutions failed by living in malarious hollows, followed by those who led impure and intemperate lives, next by those who required more nourishing pabula than our present circumstances would enable us to supply them with, and lastly, those who fell through accidents, caused by carelessness, indolence of mind, unreasoning rashness, natural helplessness, and constitutional physical weakness.

It is satisfactory to know that there has been a remarkable improvement in the health of the Europeans who have during the last six years resided on the Congo. In glancing over the lists of names on the

Climate—
Part I.

muster-roll of those whites who left Europe breathing undying valour, and high courage, I find that up to the present date no less than 263 have arrived on the banks of the great African river as follows:—

Nationalities of the Agents engaged.	Number.	Nationalities of the Agents engaged.	Number.
Americans	6	French	6
Arab	1	German	32
Austrians	5	Italian	3
Belgians	81	Portuguese	2
Danish	6	Swedish	37
Dutch	3	Swiss	1
English	80		263

Year.	No. of Whites engaged.	No. of Deaths from Sickness.	No. of Deaths from Accidents.	Returned from various causes.	Remaining in the Service at the end of the Year.
1879	18	2		4	13
1880	13	2		7	28
1881	13	1		7	32
1882	33	3	2	12	69
1883	93	8	2	25	151
1884	83	7		37	142
1885	10	1	1		
Total.	263	24	5	92	

The deaths were in many cases avoidable. Some have been the result of downright madness. There are few that I know of which might not serve to point a moral and a lesson. Not many of these deaths can be excused on the ground of old age, or

original physical weakness. They were all men in the prime of life. Fatigue, want of proper nourishment, exposure to the sun, inveterate intemperance in a few cases, in conjunction with the ignorance of conduct of life in the tropics, which I strive to combat in this chapter, and which is pardonable, since we have all been guilty, were the causes which led to this mortality. I do not wish to offend the susceptibilities of sorrowing relatives, therefore I will not name the rash unfortunates, but my first duty is to the living, whom I must warn against committing follies leading to self-destruction.

Climate—
Part I.

A European, proficient in his duties, willing and devoted after nearly two years' successful work with the expedition, during which he enjoys unusually good health, returns from a voyage up river, and suddenly falls sick of a mild form of dysentery. In a few days it is cured, when through some strange cause he has a relapse. Two medical men use their utmost endeavours to cure him; the best attention during many weeks is given to him, and he recovers strength enough to be able to be conveyed to the coast. He arrives in a more hopeful condition, and after a few days' stay at the hospital, is declared fit to proceed to Europe. That same evening, in the absence of the nurse, he barter a coat for a bottle of gin, drinks it, and twelve hours afterwards he is buried at Boma.

Another, by being kept up river, serves three years admirably, is sent home with honours, returns after a while for another period of service at higher pay.

Climate—
Part I.

But meantime some unaccountable thirst for ardent spirits has possessed him, and a few days after his arrival he falls overboard into the river while intoxicated, and is drowned.

Another appears on the Congo with a character for proficiency and steadiness, but within two months after commencing work, he is discovered dead, sitting behind a shed with an empty liquor bottle at his feet.

Two friends visit the coast, go on board the mail steamer, hob-nob socially, and depart for the shore. Both are taken seriously ill, but fortunately recover; remaining, however, very emaciated and weak. One departs for Madeira and lives to tell the tale; the other, on the first evening of his convalescence, indulges too much in the potent wine, sits out too late in the night-air, becomes a victim to tetanus, and dies in excruciating agony.

Two friends meet in the interior. One has a bottle of Burgundy, another a bottle of Cognac. They agree to dine together to celebrate the event. Until a late hour they sit and talk, and, I suppose, drink. The coast-bound friend departs, the other resumes work and duty. By-and-by the sun appears powerful, with a merciless burning strength—the young man is suddenly stricken down, conveyed to the nearest station, and twelve hours afterwards is buried.

It is not necessary to recite other illustrations of the incidents which show how men become their own worst enemies. In all lands there are instances of suicidal indifference, and gross recklessness of the consequences

resulting from misconduct. To many preaching avails but little; therefore for ages yet to come people may expect to hear of such lamentable and premature deaths. Were there a moral society formed to critically inquire into the fatal cases along the African coast, a fearful catalogue of human frailties might be published, and it would then be discovered that much that is attributed to the climate ought justly to be ascribed to far different causes.

But if there are any young men now in Europe destined to spend a portion of their lives on the Congo, let them remember—in addition to what is already written about the inconveniences arising from circumstances beyond their control, such as from unhealthy sites which, as in the case of Vivi, were compulsory—that by exposure to any cool temperature after violent exercise and copious perspiration, or by getting chilled by a draught after leaving a warm room—all rooms are comparatively warm in the tropics, however agreeable they may be,—they unnecessarily increase these inconveniences. Few constitutions are able to withstand these violent transitions from open pores to closed pores, or from equable warm temperature to sudden chill.

The philosophy of this is, that the high temperature induced by exercise under a hot sun is soon cooled on resting, and the excessive perspiration has reduced the normal temperature of the body in the same manner as water in a porous vessel is sooner cooled when exposed to the sun's rays by the evaporation which is at once

Climate—
Part I.

started when the humid surface of the cooler feels the effect of the heat. Water thus exposed becomes agreeably cool, but the physical system of a man by the same process becomes deranged; the perspiration is stopped, the pores are closed, and the body feels disagreeably chilly. If the woollen garments have become wetted by perspiration, rain, dew, or some accident in the water, the process of deranging the system is much more rapid. Exposure to the sun causes the moisture on the garments to evaporate, and at the same time conducts the normal heat from the body, leaving it a prey to disease. You may now see the reason why clerks, factory-men, and traders, who rarely take exercise in the hot sunshine, can show a better health list than Vivi officers, who have been exposed during all hours to the sun in a hilly position, the descent and ascent of which provoked unusual perspiration, and subjected them to continual and extraordinary effects of the organic functions.

Now another prime cause, which is also remediable, of fevers all along the Congo cañon, is that 90 per cent. of the winds, as has been discovered by Dr. Danckelman, blow from seaward up river, passing over the miasmatic isles, swamps, and black mud deposits between Boma and Banana, and tainting the air of all the more healthy uplands that lie directly in the track of the pest. Residences placed to leeward of this draught, and openly exposed to it without some barrier or shelter, are liable to be visited by the disease which it engenders. The best protection against it

is the planting of trees a little distance in front to serve as a screen, and to attract the miasma to them by the foliage; even a hedge is supposed by Sir Thomas Watson to be better than nothing. Sir Thomas also advises cultivation of the soil in front, and if possible around, the residence.

Climate—
Part I.

Prevention, it is said, is better than cure; and I profess to be able, not perhaps to teach you how to prevent all, but at least to reduce many, of these tedious illnesses to which the carelessness and ignorance of the white man in Africa makes him so liable. The climate being so new and novel to you, as yours is to the pure African, this ignorance is pardonable; but now that your reasoning powers are properly directed, the longer you live in the tropics the better you will be able to appreciate the grand maxim of Shakespeare, "To a wise man all places on this earth are ports and happy havens."

But those who seek to commit deliberate suicide and wanton self-destruction through the insane practice of hob-nobbing with every vinous friend they meet, I cannot pity. Nay, I solemnly warn them that to drink any wine, liquor, or other intoxicating beverage, in a tropical country during the day, except when administered under the direction of medical authority, is the height of a folly that is dangerous to sound health, and consequently to all bodily enjoyment.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

CLIMATE.—PART II.

Dr. von. Danckelman's observations—Definition of heat—Cold—Exposure—Advantage of awnings—Equable temperature of the body—Temperature in South America—Inequality of the Congo climate—Long marches and gulps of cold water—A cool place—"He is only joking"—"The White Man's Grave"—Advice to doctors—Food and drink—Daily life—Medicine—Diseases—Meteorological Tables.

Climate—
Part II.

AN intending emigrant from Wasco County, in far Oregon, has sent me the following questions, and I am glad to receive them, since they afford me a reason for popularising the information collated with vast industry by Dr. von Danckelman during his stay at one of the stations on the Lower Congo. Those who prefer to study the scientific brochure in the original must be referred to the "*Mémoire sur les Observations Météorologiques, sur la Climatologie de la Côte sud-ouest d'Afrique en général, par A. von Danckelman, Dr. Phil. Berlin : A. Asher et Cie. 1884.*" *

The emigrant says :—

"Will you please give information as to soil, climate, natural productions, general health, and adaptation to the wants of the civilised white people?"

* The full and copious index attached to these volumes will enable any one to discover the amount and variety of information contained within the text.

“Please give us the average rainfall, how many inches, and how distributed; how many months wet, and how many dry; how many inches of rain falls each month, and does rain fall gently or in torrents? Is the country good for stock-raising and farming? Is that African pest the Tsetse fly, that kills stock, found in the Great Interior Basin? What kinds of stock have you? How is agriculture carried on, and what varieties of grain and vegetables are grown? Have you plenty of timber, and what varieties that is and will be valuable? Do you have severe winds and thunderstorms? Is Africa very hot? Please state the greatest heat, and whether great heat continues long, and please give the temperature throughout the year. Are the natives favourable to the whites settling in their country? How can one procure land from them or the International Association to get genuine title, and at what cost per acre, section, or league? What tax is there on the citizen or the settler? Are there many poisonous reptiles or very dangerous wild beasts? Is game, fishes, and wild fowls plenty, and of what kinds? Does the Association wish to encourage immigration?

“Please give names of stations of the International Association, and state whether on a river or lake, in the valley or plains, or in the mountains.”

Another inquisitive person, who probably has an idea that his constitution could stand the Congo climate asks me “What kind of a heat is that of the Congo?” As perhaps the observations of Dr. Danckelman may convey to such an inquirer but an imperfect idea of the subject, I cannot do better than reprint the very popular definitions of heat given by James Bruce, the traveller. He writes:—

“No. 1. It is warm when a man, so clothed, does not sweat when at rest, but, upon moderate motion, perspires and cools again.

“No. 2. It is hot when a man perspires while at rest, and excessively on moderate motion.

“No. 3. It is very hot when a man with thin or little clothing perspires much though at rest.

“No. 4. It is excessively hot when a man in his shirt perspires excessively, when all motion is painful, and the knees feel feeble, as if after a fever.

“No. 5. It is extremely hot, when the strength fails, a disposition to faint comes on, a straitness is found in the temples, as if a small cord was

Climate— drawn tight around the head, the voice impaired, the skin dry, and the
Part II. head seems more than ordinarily large and light. From 70° to 78° Fahrenheit is cool, from 79° to 92° temperate; at 92° begins warm. The degree of the thermometer conveys this very inadequately."

With such very clear definitions it will not be difficult for the rustic reader to understand the quality of the heat of the Congo. The mean of the highest observations of temperature is only 90° Fahrenheit, while the mean of the lowest is only 67° . Clad in clothes suitable for work, an European could perform as much work on the Congo as he could in England, provided a roof or awning was above his head. The heat of the sun on a clear day rises from 100° to 115° , which is naturally dangerous if a person stands still and exposes himself to its influence. On the march it is not to be feared for immediate fatal results. But though not immediate, it excites violent perspiration, consequent prostration and loss of energy little likely to be recuperated rapidly in a new country like the Congo. Hence in all my African records it will be observed that I have confined my marches to the early morning between 6 A.M. and 11 A.M.

For three months of the year it is positively cold, and during the rest of the year there is so much cloud, and the heat is so tempered by the South Atlantic breezes, that we seldom suffer from its intensity. After a rainstorm which has cleared the atmosphere, exposure to the direct force of the sun-heat would soon prove the power of the equatorial sun. The nights are cool, sometimes even cold, and a blanket is, after a short time, felt to be indispensable for comfort.

At the stations, missions, or factories, there is no necessity for exposure; a double thickness to the umbrella affords ample covering, and there are few localities where the shade of a tree is not conveniently near while superintending the out-door work. European artisans would not be compelled to expose themselves except on rare occasions; but no precautions can be too great if they prevent sunstrokes. The carpenter, boat-builder, blacksmith, engineer, stone-mason, bricklayer, and all such craftsmen, would be working under sheds, where there is absolute safety. European labourers or navvies are not and will not be needed. If any skilled workman for road-making, in such labour as blasting, may ever be required, the first duty will be the construction of movable sheds. The sun is the only real enemy to the European. To raise a safe protection against its malign influences is always possible, though seldom practised. The factory clerk's position is the safest, but it is not infrequently dangerous from other than climatic causes. The missionary also ought to be safe; but before he arrives at his destination he has generally strained his strength by insane pedestrian exercise and exploration of the depths of grassy tunnels, to which the heat of a Turkish bath bears no comparison. In one day's march, too, he has several times filled his stomach with cold water, and has undergone numerous transitions and variations of temperature, the mean of which may amount to 40° Fahrenheit.

Bruce's No. 1 definition of warmth describes the

Climatic—
Part II.

Congo climate. When the body is at rest the perspiration is imperceptible. But violent exercise, travelling up and down hill, all powerful exertions under the direct action of the sun, soon force copious perspiration. In itself this might not be dangerous. The danger is incurred when hastening for relief and coolness—the shade of a tree or a verandah is sought, and the heedless exposure to the cold winds chills the clothing and the body suddenly, effectually closing the pores of the skin, to the utter derangement of the system.

Immunity from these derangements can easily be obtained by the resident of a station, mission, factory, plantation, or farm, by remembering to keep the temperature of the body as equable as possible. In hotter portions of the globe, such as at Para, under the South American equator, where the variation is only 9° Fahrenheit, the temperature renders the climate valuable to invalids and conducive to old age.

Observations of the Para temperature, by a Mr. Norris, show during the months of June, July, and August, a mean temperature for June 80°, highest, 86°, lowest, 77°; July, mean, 80°, highest, 86°, lowest, 77°; for August, 81°, highest, 86, lowest, 77°. W. H. Edwards says, “Moreover, we were never incommoded by heat at night, and invariably slept under a blanket. This equality of temperature renders the climate of Para peculiarly favourable to health. The average of life is as high as in the city of New York.”

It is the inequality of the climate of the Congo that must be guarded against. If the resident pays less

attention to malaria and miasma, and devotes himself more to the study of preserving his system against the pernicious influences of these excessive variations of temperature, he need entertain but little fear of the Congo. A book might be written illustrative of this one fact. Who that will visit the scene of Tuckey's travels will wonder now at the fatal results of his expedition? One of his day's marches is over thirty miles in length! He plunges into the grassy ravines when the temperature is about 110° . He breasts the hill slope, and the sun's heat is 115° . He strides across the scorching plateaus into the depths of grassy tunnels; he descends to another ravine, at the bottom of which there is a rivulet of clear cold water which indicates 69° . With his stomach full of this cold water he again climbs a steep slope at an angle of 45° , under a sun-heat approaching to 115° , to arrive at the summit of a hill 600 feet higher, near which there is a shady tree where the temperature is 72° . Here he rests himself under its grateful shelter. The wind forces his chilled flannel against his heated body; but having rested he again starts on his dreadful journey, to expose himself several times during the day to these incredible transitions. Late at night, 9 P.M., he arrives, worn out with the excessive strains to which his system has been subjected, and implores shelter at a native village. Out of our 250 people we know several who have performed the same extraordinary feats; but they, like Tuckey and his companions, have paid the last of all earthly penalties, and it is sad to think that

Climate— they have given away their lives through avoidable
Part II. causes.

On some men destined to perform great deeds in the Congo State, these chapters on the climate will create a desire to protect themselves against the effects of these inequalities, or variations of temperature; on others, destined to be failures, either to return, and rail ignorantly against they know not what, or to enrich the already fertile soil of Congo-land with their bodies, they will have no effect. There are men who can read, but know not how to reflect, who have eyes but see not, and who have ears but hear not. As was said of old, it is no less true to-day, that those whom the Fates destine for early death, they first make mad.

I shall have to say to some one again, most probably, what I said lately to a colonel fresh from England, "That exposed corner is not conducive to good health;" and like the colonel he will reply, "Oh, nonsense, you are chaffing me! This deliciously cool place fatal! Doctor, what do you say?"

And the doctor, who was a traveller himself, a wanderer over many lands, replied, "He is only joking." Yet both colonel and doctor were, for a few days afterwards, but little disposed to appreciate joking, despite copious doses of Hop Bitters.

I shall have to say again, as I did to an engineer fresh from England, "My friend, that little black saucer cap of the British mercantile service, though I dare say very comfortable in a ship's engine room, is but a poor protection against an African sun." And

some engineer will answer as he did, "I don't think so, sir. I feel very comfortable. I have been always used to it." But that engineer never returned to Europe.

Climate—
Part II.

I shall have to say again, I am sure, to some English sailor, or Scotch engineer, "My friend, be warned by me! Cease that tippling which I hear you are accustomed to. Scotch whisky, or Old Tom, however beneficial in your native land against raw mist and icy sleet, do not agree with an African sun;" and the sailor or Scotch engineer will reply, as before, "Oh, I take very little, sir, it will do me no harm." But neither the sailor or Scotch engineer returned to gladden the eyes of the anxious mother at home.

Doctors who have written books of five and ten pounds weight, containing a vast amount of learned matter about the *bacillus malarice* and other matters, will declare me to be an empiric; but I will guarantee that I can cure any one of them from that fanatic faith in the prophylaxis which they support. While I do not deny that there is a certain quantity of miasm in the air, my belief is that it was the least of the evils from which the members of our expedition suffered. At Banana and Boma, in the midst of marshy exhalations, situate almost at the water's edge, the Europeans have enjoyed better health than our people at Vivi, on that singular rock platform 340 feet above the river. At Kinshassa, just ten feet above high-water, better health has been enjoyed—indeed, almost complete immunity from sickness—than at Léopoldville, five miles

Climate—
Part II.

below, situate eighty-three feet above the river. At Equator Station, with a river only five feet below its foundations, creeks sable as ink surrounding it, the ground unctuous with black fat alluvium, Europeans enjoy better health than at Manyanga, 240 feet above river, and 1100 feet above the sea. Fourteen miles away from Manyanga, and eight miles removed from the river, we have a station on the plain of Ngombi, 1500 feet above the sea, where our people have enjoyed better health than at Manyanga Hill, 150 yards in diameter, and ravines 200 feet deep are around it on all sides, except at a narrow neck thirty yards across. Banana Point (six degrees below the Equator) only five feet above the brackish water of its creek, is proved to be much healthier than Sierra Leone, over eight degrees north, which has been called the "white man's grave," despite the number of medical inspectors who have employed their best judgment and experience in endeavouring to modify the fatal influences that seem to surround the latter place. But the residents of that colony may now know by studying the diagrams of the preceding chapter, that the fearful sickness which has frequently decimated the European inhabitants has not been due so much to the malaria as to the fact that their town is surrounded by the Lion Hill and its hilly neighbours, between the gaps of which sweep the sea breezes, suddenly chilling the bodies of people who are enveloped by the close heat engendered within its bowl-like position.

I have been so frequently rebuffed by the callous in-

difference of those I had hoped to save, that my interest in the preservation of life has become briefer, much less acute, and not so universal as it was formerly. For I may well ask, why should I be anxious about the health of a person who is utterly indifferent to it himself? Why should I care whether people prefer to lounge in draughty corners to cool their heated bodies, whether they fire their brains with alcoholic liquors, or wear little saucer-shaped caps, and invite the equatorial sun to scorch their heads? In Congo-land, as elsewhere, a man may do as he pleases with his own person; and if he be disposed to blow his brains right out of his head, Heaven knows I should be tempted to agree with him, that after all it would be the wisest plan. To such, however, as love their duty even better than they love their life, my remarks may tend to preserve that life for the performance of that duty, and possibly may also tend to stimulate an endeavour to discover other causes that are deleterious to health, to be followed by the discovery of methods reforming the medical treatment now pursued with such poor success.

Our doctors would also do well to study what are the best foods required by those who live in the tropics, A fertile physiological field for exploration and discovery lies in this direction. I would gladly essay to attempt something in this line were I not convinced that a medico, blessed with a little common sense, might write with greater authority. Personally, I would wish to impress a few things upon the mind

Climate—
Part II.

of the medical explorer, as they relate to those “other causes deleterious to health.”

We know from bitter experience that alcoholic liquor taken in the daytime invite sunstroke and sun-fevers. To avoid these we have to rely upon tea and coffee. But tea is an astringent, and unless it is pure, has a depressing tendency. Coffee, commonly believed to be stimulating, is more frequently the reverse. The oily skim on the cocoa again, apart from its insipidity, creates a distrust of its bilious properties. Milk as yet is not to be obtained, although perhaps, in the future, it may be more plentiful. Soup presupposes some animal meat from which it could be concocted; and ox-beef or mutton are precisely what the Congo cannot furnish away from the Lower River, while a compound extracted from goat-meat three or four times a day cannot be very satisfying, even if varied with chicken broth. Besides this, their dietary education has predisposed the majority of temperate Europeans to something different, principally tea and coffee. The former, however, as I have said, if taken inordinately, is also a source of trouble. Palm wine exercises a dangerous effect upon the kidneys and stomach unless drunk when perfectly fresh.

Not the least among our failings on the Congo is the decided distaste we all of us soon entertain for the potted “American, Australian, and New Zealand” beef and mutton and fish, despite the loud exaggerative phrases bestowed upon these delicacies by the food preparers. A native goat, however tough and rank

its meat may be, is invariably preferred. The potted sardines, swimming in sweet-oil, or the yellow salmon, in its yellower unctuous matter, do not provoke the appetite, but suggest biliousness. All that is left which may be said to be perfectly safe is limited in the extreme—home-made bread, rice, a few vegetables, fruits, and condensed milk.

Climate—
Part II.

What we need most on the Congo is some harmless, mild liquid, which is agreeable and palatable, uninebriating as tea and as inoffensive to the stomach as milk, which neither affects the nerves nor kidneys, and is a portable food easily assimilated by the digestive organs. Until some earnest physiological student can assist our deficiencies, I propose the following simple rules to be observed by those to whom the preservation of their lives has some interest.

1. In the building of your house, mission, or factory, observe well its position. Never build, if you can avoid it, in a gorge, valley, ravine, or any deep depression of land that may serve as a channel for collected wind currents. A free diffusion of air is required in your surroundings. The nearest points to the sea, plains, extended plateaus, as far removed as possible from any dominating superior heights that would cause irregular air-currents, are the safest localities. The lower story should be clear of the ground, unless you have made the floor imporous by cement or asphalte. In a grassy plain the floor of your living room should be at least twelve feet above the ground.

2. Avoid unnecessary exposure to the sun.

Climate—
Part II.

3. Guard against the fogs, dews, and chills of evening and night.

4. Let your diet be as good as your circumstances will permit, but be prudent in your choice. Butter, cheese, and dishes swimming in oleaginous matter, are unsuitable to the conditions of the climate. Roasted ground-nuts are a mistake.

Always reject the fat of meats on your plate. All fats cause bile, rancidity, and nausea in the tropics.

Never begin the day with an early meal of meats. Bread made at the station is better than biscuits.

The continental *café* or *thé au lait*, is the wisest meal with which to break your fast.

At 11 A.M. cease work, and eat your wise *déjeuner*—lean of meats, fish, vegetables, dry bread, and weak black tea with condensed milk.

At 1.30 P.M. proceed to your work, and at 6.30 P.M. take your prudent dinner—boiled fish, roast fowl, roast mutton, vegetables, dry bread, rice, tapioca, sago, and macaroni pudding, with weak claret, or two ounces of Madeira in water, or so much champagne and water. Amuse yourself with social conversation or reading until 9 P.M., when you may retire to your dreamless couch to rise up next morning with brain clear and muscle primed for toil, and with a love for all the world.

5. Sleep on blankets, and cover up to the waist with a blanket or woollens.

6. If marching, rise up at 5 A.M., take your *café* or *thé au lait*, and be ready for the road at 5.30 A.M. Halt at 11 A.M., in mercy to yourself, your men, and your

animals, and do no more for the day. On halting put on your paletot or wrapper, to allow you to cool gradually. If your camp is on an exposed situation, get under shelter as quickly as though it were raining. You may perform 4000 miles per annum at this rate.

Climate—
Part II.

7. Observe the strictest temperance. Drop all thought of tonics, according to the rules of “west coasters,” “old traders,” “African travellers,” or your own self-deceiving fancies. If you are in absolute need of a tonic apply to the doctor, or to the simple rule of never during daylight taking more than one ounce of any liquor or wine. Your best tonic would be two grains of quinia, as prepared by Burroughs and Welcome,* of Snow Hill Buildings, London. If thirsty at a station or factory, prepare a glass of sherbet. If marching, drop a compressed tablet of acidulous powder, as prepared by these chemists, in your cup of water, or quench your thirst from your sweetened and weak tea in the bottle.

8. If engaged in outdoor work superintending coloured labourers, never for an instant be in the sun without a strong double umbrella—a large one fastened to your piked staff, like a small tent, would be better still. For head-dress you have a choice of cork helmet, topee, or Congo cap,† the latter of which is the best of all.

* These chemists have prepared drugs which I can conscientiously recommend as adapted for tropical regions. They have prepared small doses in tablets of nearly every medicine that may be required, which may be taken without creating nausea, a valuable desideratum, as all will admit who have suffered from the foul nauseating smell of medicines as commonly prepared by druggists.

† Observe cap in photograph of author.

Climate—
Part II.

9. If during the march you have been so imprudent as to be without an ample umbrella, a wetting need not necessarily be dangerous; but it becomes positively so if after excessive perspiration, rain, or an accident at a river crossing, you remain any time quiescent without changing your dress.

10. When on the march the lighter you are clad the better, because at the halt you will be reminded of the necessity of your paletot or overcoat. Very light flannel will be quite sufficient for your dress, owing to the exercise you take. Light russet shoes for the feet, knickerbockers of light flannel, a loose light flannel shirt, a roll of flannel round the waist, and a Congo cap for the head, will enable you to travel twelve miles per day without distress.

11. At the station, factory, or mission, your clothing should also be light, though not in the undress uniform of the road, because you know not what work you may take at any moment causing profuse perspiration, which should be avoided when circumstances do not compel it.

12. It is to be presumed that you will not forget your exercise. Between 6 and 7 A.M. and 5 and 6 P.M. are safe hours if your principal work is indoors.

13. Do not bathe in cold water unless you are but newly arrived from a temperate climate. The temperature of your bath is not safe below 85°. Let your bath be in the morning, or before dinner. The tepid bath is the most suitable.

14. Fruit, if taken at all, should be eaten in the morning—before the *café* or *thé au lait*—such as

oranges, mangoes, ripe bananas, guavas, and papaws ; only the juice of the pine-apple is to be recommended. Never eat any fruit in the tropics at dinner. Climate—
Part II.

Medicine.—Obtain your medicine pure and well prepared. Messrs. Burroughs and Welcome will equip you with tropic medicines in chests or cases, with supplies to last you one month or ten years. They have sought the best medical advice, and really seem disposed to study the special needs of the East, West, Central, Northern, or Southern African traveller, soldier, trader, and missionary. I have informed them of the few diseases such as have fallen under my observation, and they have prepared such medicines as have been tried during the last seventeen years of my African experiences.

The same prudence that is required for protection against draughts, sudden chills, catarrhs, bronchitis, and pulmonary diseases in Europe, should be exercised, with the only difference that in the tropics the clothing necessary to effect due care should not be so heavy.

On proceeding to tropical Africa, most inexperienced people are victims to chaff from the officers of the steamers that leave Europe. Such “guys” in costume and manner ask so many silly questions that they provoke the officers to take advantage of their inexperience, which results in creating vague fears of unknown and fatal diseases, so that by the time they arrive on the coast, their morale is frequently destroyed, and their systems unnerved.

The diseases on the Congo are very simple, consisting

Climate—
Part II.

of fevers and dysentery. The fevers are of three kinds, common ague, remittent, and a pernicious bilious fever.

The common ague is less to be feared than an English cold. I have never known it to end fatally. It lasts generally from one to three days. This may result from a small quantity of miasm in the air; but the remedies are so very simple that the initiated may cure themselves in a short time. In nine cases out of ten the initiated may also ward it off completely, warned in time by certain symptoms which inform them that there is a slight derangement.

The remittent fever is simply an exaggeration of ague, brought on according to the degree of exposure to the sun, perspiration, and chill. This form may last several days.

The pernicious bilious type is an aggravated remittent fever. It is more violent in its symptoms, is attended with serious complications, and consequently more dangerous. Its severity depends upon the habits of the patient, and the amount of exposure, excessive fatigue and prostration incurred. This form may be altogether prevented by living wisely and well, by bearing in mind and implicitly following the above simple rules. Many attempt self-cure by drinking brandy, whisky, or gin, and smoking tobacco to excess. But liquor and tobacco are not prophylactics against any disease.

Some brief extracts from Dr. Martin's book, 'Influences of Tropical Climates,' will corroborate all that I have written here.

1. "Care in diet, clothing, and exercise are more essential for the preservation of health than medical treatment." Climate—
Part II.

2. "The real way to escape disease is by observing strict temperance, and to moderate the heat by all possible means."

3. "After heat has morbidically predisposed the body, the sudden influence of cold has the most baneful influence on the human frame."

4. "The great physiological rule for preserving health in hot climates is to keep the body cool. Common sense points out the propriety of avoiding heating drinks."

5. "The cold bath is death in the collapse which follows any great fatigue of body or mind."

6. "Licentious indulgence is far more dangerous and destructive than in Europe."

7. "A large amount of animal food, instead of giving strength, heats the blood, renders the system feverish, and consequently weakens the whole body."

8. "Bread is one of the best articles of diet. Rice, split vetches, are wholesome and nutritious. Vegetables are essential to good health, such as carrots, turnips, onions, native greens, &c."

9. "Fruit, when sound and ripe, is beneficial instead of hurtful."

10. "The same amount of stimulant undiluted is much more injurious than when mixed with water."

11. "With ordinary precaution and attention to the common laws of hygiene, Europeans may live as long in the tropics as elsewhere."

One more observation will suffice. However well the European may endure the climate by wise self-government, years of constant high temperature assisted by the monotony and poverty of the diet, cannot be otherwise than enervating and depressing, although life may not be endangered. The physical force, vigour, or strength becomes debilitated by the heat, necessitating after a few years recuperation in a temperate climate. To preserve perfect health, I advise the trader, missionary, coffee planter, and agriculturist, who hopes to maintain his full vigour after eighteen months' residence, to seek three months' recreation in Northern Europe; for the same reason that a man devoted to absorbing business in a European city for

Climate—
Part II.

eighteen months would do wisely to take a few months' holiday. Beyond what has been told above, there is nothing in Congo-land to daunt a man; indeed, far less than in many parts of India, South America, or the West Indies.

My object, as will have been seen, is to eradicate this silly fear of the climate. The above rules, if observed, will prevent at least three-fourths of the maladies that have punished our imprudent youths. Possibly the judicious will find reward in following their guidance as nearly as possible, the injudicious and unreflecting will also have their reward.

The following tables contain portions of the valuable meteorological observations of Dr. Danckelman relating to the climatology of the Congo region :—

TEMPERATURE OBSERVED AT VIVI.*

1882.	Fahrenheit. Maximum.	Fahrenheit. Minimum.	Variation.
	°	°	°
January	90	70	20
February	94	68	26
March	92	69	23
April	93	68	25
May	94	67	27
June	86	60	26
July	84	56	28
August	85	56	29
September	89	67	22
October	93	68	25
November	97	69	26
December	91	70	21
Mean highest.	90·7		..
Mean lowest . . . . .	..	67·3	
Mean variation—			25
Highest temperature in 1882, on 5th Nov. 1882 . }	97	..	..
Lowest 29th July, 1882 .	..	54	..
„ 19th July, 1883 .	..	57	..

* By Dr. Danckelman.

ANNUAL VARIATION OF BAROMETER IN MILLIMETRES.

1882.	May	6·5	1882.	November	5·3
	June	5·6		December	5·9
	July	4·9	1883.	January	5·9
	August	6·2		February	6·2
	September	5·8		March	5·7
	October	5·2		April	5·7

Climate—
Part II.

Vivi Station, by boiling point, is . . . 427 feet above sea level.

by Fortin's barometer . 430 „ „

by three large aneroids . 428 „ „

Height of river level at Vivi . . .	84	„	„
-------------------------------------	----	---	---

„	station above river by tri-	} 276½	„	„
	gonometry			

station above river by aneroid 343 " "

INFLUENCE OF THE STATE OF THE SKY ON TEMPERATURE.*

VIVI, 1882-1883.	Number of Clear Days.	Temperature.	Clouded Days.	Temperature. Fahrenheit.
		°		°
January	0	0	4	76
February	8	80	3	77
March	0	79	1	74
April	0	78	0	0
May	8	77	3	76
June	5	73	8	71
July	12	71	7	70
August	7	71	8	70
September	2	76	9	74
October	2	77	4	75
November	1	83	2	75
December	1	81	4	77

1882-1883.				Number of Days.
Sky entirely overcast				44
„ nearly „				115
„ gloomy				135
„ nearly serene				58
„ quite „				10

Of 1093 observations of direction of wind at Vivi, by Dr. Danckelman, he records the following :—

Calm.	N.	N.N.E.	N.E.	E.N.E.	E.	E.S.E.	S.E.	S.S.E.	S.	S.S.W.	S.W.
195	86	1	8	10	3	13	3	3	11	32	422
			W.S.W.	W.	W.N.W.	N.W.	N.N.W.				
			102	106	16	19	8				

* Observations by Dr. Danckelman.

Climate—
Part II.

At noon the direction of wind currents are between west and north, as follows :—

W.	W.N.W.	N.W.	N.N.W.	N.
32 per cent.	11 per cent.	16 per cent.	12 per cent.	13 per cent.

At 3 P.M. :—

W.	W.N.W.	N.W.
74 per cent.	10 per cent.	6 per cent.

At 9 P.M. and with stronger force :—

S.	S.S.W.	S.W.	W.S.W.	W.
10 per cent.	26 per cent.	21 per cent.	14 per cent.	18 per cent.

He also observed how often the wind blew in such force as to make the wooden structures of Vivi tremble.*

May, 1882	. 11 times.	December, 1882	. 2 times.
June „	. 17 „	January, 1883	. 6 „
July „	. 13 „	March „	. 4 „
August „	. 12 „	April „	. 0 „
September „	. 15 „	May „	. 9 „
October „	. 17 „	June „	. 8 „
November „	. 2 „	July „	. 17 „

The velocity of the wind measured by the anemometer as recorded by Dr. Danckelman is as follows :

From 2 June to 12 June	. . .	145·1 miles per day.
„ 12 „ „ 22 „	. . .	146·6 „
„ 22 „ „ 2 July	. . .	109·4 „
„ 2 July „ 12 „	. . .	98·4 „
„ 12 „ „ 22 „	. . .	142·0 „
„ 22 „ „ 1 Aug.	. . .	106·0 „
„ 1 Aug. „ 11 „	. . .	141·1 „
„ 11 „ „ 21 „	. . .	183·5 „
„ 21 „ „ 31 „	. . .	166·4 „
„ 31 „ „ 10 Sept.	. . .	166·1 „

* Such strong blasts would scarcely be noticeable on the sea-coast, which proves how the funnel-shaped gorge or cañon collects the gentle sea-breezes, and draws them up until the wind becomes a strong gale.

From 10 Sept. to 20 Sept.	. . .	152·2 miles per day.	Climate— Part II.
„ 20 „ „ 30 „	. . .	192·7 „	
„ 30 „ „ 10 Oct.	. . .	221·7 „	
„ 10 Oct. „ 20 „	. . .	225·4 „	
„ 20 „ „ 30 „	. . .	159·2 „	
„ 30 „ to 9 Nov.	. . .	136·9 „	
„ 9 Nov. „ 19 „	. . .	114·4 „	
„ 19 „ „ 29 „	. . .	90·1 „	
„ 29 „ „ 9 Dec.	. . .	66·6 „	
„ 9 Dec. „ 19 „	. . .	65·3 „	
„ 19 „ „ 29 „	. . .	76·5 „	
„ 29 „ „ 8 Jan.	. . .	116·1 „	
„ 8 Jan. „ 18 „	. . .	121·6 „	
„ 28 „ „ 7 Feb.	. . .	85·4 „	
„ 7 Feb. „ 17 „	. . .	89·2 „	
„ 17 „ „ 27 „	. . .	74·9 „	
„ 27 „ „ 9 March	. . .	85·3 „	
„ 9 Mar. „ 19 „	. . .	102·4 „	
„ 19 „ „ 29 „	. . .	95·2 „	
„ 29 „ „ 8 April	. . .	75·0 „	

At Vivi the strongest winds blow at night, from south-westerly up the Congo. Between Stanley Pool and the expansion of the Congo above Chumbiri between 9 A.M. and 4 P.M., during which time the winds are strong gales frequently. At night it is calm, and the native canoes resume their journeys.

Above the Equator the strongest winds are between 1 P.M. and 3 P.M.

About rains on the Lower Congo, Dr. Danckelman makes the following observations:—

“At Vivi the most copious rains fall during the months of November and April. In 1882 the rains ceased on the 12th of May, but a small shower was observed on the 18th of May. Then appeared the dry season, which continued till the 10th of October. A month later serious rains began on the 10th of November, lasting till the 27th of November. There was a cessation in the rainfall until the 6th of December.

“Between the 27th of December and the 11th of January there was another dry interval, and between the 29th of January and 16th of

Climate— February no rain fell. In March rainy days were separated by many
Part II. dry days, but in April the rains were nearly continuous. The greatest
rainfall measured on one day 0·433 inch, on the night of the 17th
December, 1882, and lasted 2 hours 50 minutes.”

Dr. Danckelman has tabulated the rainfalls as follows :—

	English Inches.
January	2·888
February	1·404
March	5·616
April	9·009
May	1·989
June	0·000
July	0·039
August	0·000
September	0·000
October	0·507
November	11·232
December	8·853
	<hr/>
Inches	41·537
	<hr/>

While travelling I observed the rainfalls by time, and the result may be seen in the following table :

1880-1881.			1881-1882.		
Months.	H.	M.	Months.	H.	M.
September . . .	5	0	September . . .	27	30
October . . .	11	15	October . . .	27	50
November . . .	40	0	November . . .	56	5
December . . .	42	0	December . . .	15	30
January . . .	28	0	January . . .	25	10
February . . .	73	0	February . . .	49	30
March . . .	30	30	March . . .	15	0
April . . .	28	0	April . . .	25	0
May . . .	24	0	May . . .	9	0
	<hr/>			<hr/>	
	281	45		250	35
	<hr/>			<hr/>	

RAINFALL 1880-1881.

Climate—
Part II.

Date.	Character of Rain.	H. M.	Hours per Month.	
1880.				
Sept. 9 .	Misty rain, lasting . .	0 15	5·00	Between Vivi and Isangila.
" 11 .	" " . .	0 20		
" 12 .	" " . .	0 10		
" 13 .	" " . .	0 5		
" 14 .	" " . .	0 10		
" 15 .	{ Strong shower (thunder and lightning) . . }	2 0		
" 19 .	Slight shower . . .	1 0	11·15	
Oct. 19 .	{ Heavy rain (thunder and lightning) . . }	4 0		
" 24 .	Slight shower . . .	0 15		
" 25 .	Heavy rain . . .	3 0		
" 27 .	Slight rain . . .	2 0		
" 28 .	" . . .	1 0		
" 29 .	" . . .	1 0	40·00	
Nov. 1 .	Much rain . . .	3 0		
" 2 .	Smart shower . . .	1 0		
" 3 .	Heavy rain . . .	6 0		
" 4 .	" . . .	5 0		
" 5 .	Slight shower . . .	1 0		
" 10 .	Heavy rain . . .	5 0		
" 11 .	Smart shower . . .	2 0		
" 12 .	Slight shower . . .	1 0		
" 14 .	Showery . . .	2 0		
" 15 .	Heavy rain . . .	10 0		
" 19 .	Slight rain . . .	0 30		
" 25 .	" . . .	0 20	42·00	
" 28 .	Steady rain . . .	3 0		
Dec. 2 .	Heavy rain . . .	5 0		
" 4 .	" . . .	9 0		
" 5 .	Steady rain . . .	5 0		
" 6 .	" . . .	3 0		
" 9 .	Heavy shower . . .	1 0		
" 11 .	Heavy rain, lasting . .	4 0		
" 12 .	Shower . . .	1 0		
" 15 .	Heavy rain . . .	6 0		
" 18 .	Moderate rain . . .	2 0		
" 20 .	Heavy shower and storm	0 30		
" 21 .	Storm and rain . . .	1 0		
" 23 .	Slight rain . . .	1 0		
" 28 .	Heavy shower . . .	2 0		
" 30 .	Showery . . .	1 30		

Climate—
Part II.

Date.	Character of Rain.	H. M.	Hours per Month.		
1881.					
Jan. 4 .	Rain	2 0	28·00	Between Vivi and Isangila.	
" 8 .	"	6 0			
" 9 .	"	7 0			
" 15 .	"	3 0			
" 28 .	Light rain	10 0			
Feb. 4 .	"	12 0	73·00		Between Isangila and Manyanga.
" 5 .	Heavy rain	4 0			
" 6 .	Light rain	11 0			
" 11 .	Heavy rain	7 0			
" 13 .	"	10 0			
" 14 .	"	16 0			
" 28 .	Slight rain	13 0			
Mar. 4 .	Light rain	6 0	30·50	Between Isangila and Manyanga.	
" 6 .	"	3 0			
" 7 .	"	1 0			
" 9 .	"	1 0			
" 11 .	"	1 0			
" 18 .	"	1 0			
" 19 .	"	3 0			
" 23 .	Heavy rain, lasting	12 0			
" 30 .	Heavy shower	0 30			
" 31 .	Light rain	2 0			
April 2 .	"	0 30	28·00		Between Isangila and Manyanga.
" 4 .	"	1 0			
" 5 .	"	1 0			
" 7 .	"	1 0			
" 8 .	"	3 0			
" 9 .	Heavy rain	0 30			
" 10 .	Light rain	1 0			
" 14 .	"	2 30			
" 18 .	"	10 0			
" 19 .	"	1 0			
" 21 .	"	0 30			
" 22 .	"	3 0			
" 23 .	Heavy rain	2 0			
" 24 .	Light rain	2 0			
May 4 .	Heavy rains, about	24 0	24·00		
" 7 .					
" 11 .					
" 13 .					

RAINFALL 1881-1882.

Climate—
Part II.

Date.	Character of Rain.	h. m.	Hours per Month.	
1881.				
Sept. 19 .	{ Heavy rain (thunder and lightning) . . }	8 0		
„ 20 .	Light rain	2 30		
„ 23 .	„	8 0		
„ 24 .	„	2 0		
„ 30 .	Moderate	7 0		
			27·30	
Oct. 5 .	Heavy shower	3 0		
„ 11 .	Shower	2 0		
„ 13 .	Slight shower	0 10		
„ 17 .	„	0 10		
„ 24 .	„	2 30		
„ 26 .	Heavy shower	2 0		
„ 28 .	„	2 0		
„ 29 .	Light rain	8 0		
„ 31 .	„	8 0		
			27·50	
Nov. 1 .	„	6 0		
„ 4 .	„	4 0		
„ 6 .	„	3 0		
„ 7 .	„	10 0		
„ 10 .	„	5 0		
„ 14 .	„	6 0		
„ 18 .	Heavy shower	3 0		
„ 20 .	„	7 0		
„ 26 .	Slight shower	0 5		
„ 27 .	Light rain	12 0		
			56·5	
Dec. 3 .	„	4 0		
„ 7 .	„	3 0		
„ 14 .	Showery	1 30		
„ 22 .	„	0 30		
„ 25 .	„	3 0		
„ 27 .	Heavy rain	3 30		
			15·30	
1882.				
Jan. 14 .	„	2 0		
„ 17 .	„	3 10		
„ 20 .	Slight showers	5 0		
„ 21 .	Very slight	3 0		
„ 29 .	Light rain	7 0		
„ 31 .	Heavy rain	5 0		
			25·10	
Feb. 1 .	Showery	6 0		
„ 5 .	Violent rainstorm	2 0		
„ 8 .	„	15 0		
„ 10 .	Showery	1 30		
„ 14 .	Steady rain	8 0		
„ 16 .	„	6 0		
„ 17 .	Slight shower	4 0		
„ 24 .	Moderate rain	7 0		
			49·30	

Between
Manyanga and
Stanley Pool.

Léopoldville.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE KERNEL OF THE ARGUMENT.

Extent of the Congo River—Navigable stretches—The maritime region—The mountain region—Elevations, vegetation, and productions—Population—Interior basin of the Upper Congo: its extent and altitudes—Navigability of the tributaries—Tables of mileage of navigable waters—Area drained by the rivers—Tables of population of Upper Congo section—Opinions of Dr. Pogge and Lieut. Weissman, Tippu Tib, and Dr. Schweinfürth—The products of the land—Vegetable and animal richness—Minerals—Extent of the Webb-Lualaba section—Navigability of the Webb-Lualaba—Characteristics of the Lualaba country—Livingstone's descriptions—The Tanganika territory—Ujiji markets—Table of the actual knowledge of the Congo basin: its area and population—Possibilities of trade—Table of the value of African produce in Liverpool—Prospects of factories—Advantages of a railway—Efforts to civilise Equatorial Africa—Comparison with other countries—Its future development and greatness.

THE Congo River is over 3000 statute miles in length, measured as follows: From the Atlantic ocean in a navigable length of 110 miles, as far as the station of Vivi, thence upward to Isangila, the lower series of the Livingstone Falls, 50 miles; from Isangila to Manyanga we have a tolerably navigable stretch of 88 miles; between Manyanga and Léopoldville is the upper series of Livingstone Falls, along a length of 85 miles; from Léopoldville up-

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

The Kernel
of the
Argument. ward to Stanley Falls we have a navigable length of 1068 miles; from the lowest fall of this last series to Nyangwe there is a course of 385 miles; from Nyangwe to Mweru the river course extends 440 miles; the length of Lake Mweru is 67 miles; thence to lake Bangweolo is 220 miles; Lake Bangweolo, or Bemba, is 161 miles long; and thence to its sources in the Chibalé Hills, the Chambezi has a length of 360 miles; the full total of these several courses being 3034 miles.

For convenience of description, as well as in accordance with the physical characteristics of the Congo basin, I am compelled to divide the river's course into five sections, thus: The Lower Congo from the sea to Léopoldville, which includes the maritime and a portion of the mountain region; the Upper Congo, extending from the Livingstone Falls near Léopoldville to the Stanley Falls; the Webb-Lualaba* region, the Chambezi section, and the basin of the Tanganika.

In the Lower Congo section the river is navigable for a distance of 110 miles. First by an estuary-like expansion 70 miles long, varying from two to seven miles and a third in breadth, and then by a deep channel in some places over 300 feet deep, and about 1500 yards wide. The present seaport is on the right bank of Banana Creek, at the mouth of the river.

What might be called a strictly maritime region of the Congo is a very narrow belt lying between

* So called by Dr. Livingstone in honour of W. F. Webb, Esq., of Newstead Abbey, Nottingham.

the sea and the hilly region. In the neighbourhood of Boma the mountainous region commences with numberless lines or groups of inferior hills which are yet attached to one another, and rise gradually after an infinite number of undulations to the height of 2300 feet above the level of the sea.

The Kernel
of the
Argument

In reality the breadth of the mountain region direct east and west is 240 geographical miles; but the course of the Congo is diagonally through it, in a fissure-like trough running from north-east to south-west, into which ships may penetrate a depth of 50 miles from above the estuary of the lower river, while on the eastern side there is a navigable diagonal course of 174 miles leading into the plain-like lands of the Upper Congo.

From the height of Iyumbi ridge, for instance, which is 2276 feet above the sea, by sweeping the horizon round with a theodolite horizontally, the topmost altitude of the boldest hills which appeared in view throughout an area of 2000 square miles did not vary 50 feet in height, although there were a countless number of hilltops and grey swells of upland separated by crevasses, gorges, and long sinuous watercourses, proving that the land we surveyed was a disintegrated plateau, denuded in the course of ages of its rich loam by numberless tropic rain seasons. On the larger levels where the loamy soil was still retained, groves of palms and bits of tropical forest were seen, indicating what the land might have been originally. The hollows, into which some of the soil has been washed

The Kernel of the Argument. or interrupted in its descent are easily traceable by the dark wavy lines, belts and bars of foliage, which appear more and more shadowy as they recede. If we step near the verge of one of these and look down into the depths of the gorges, we view a lengthy sunken bed of evergreen vegetation so dense and dark that one wonders whether they are penetrable. In brief, almost every tabular hill of any dimension is crested with a palm-grove and forest clump; the smaller hills and slopes are mere wastes of sere grass; the hollows, ravines, gorges and valleys teem with a marvellous wealth of vegetable life.

The productions of the mountain region which are suitable for commerce are very simple. The levels in the vicinity of the palm-groves and villages produce the ground-nuts of commerce; from the crimson-yellow nuts of the palms (*Elaeis guineënsis*) is extracted the palm-butter; in the gorge-forests the india-rubber creeper is found; some orchilla-weed and gum-copal are also present.

In the neighbourhood of the sea and the navigable part of the lower river the country has been fairly well exploited. There are certain well developed lines of native travel, such as the trade routes leading from Stanley Pool to Zombo, to San Salvador and the coast, and to Loango; but the larger part of the region is but slightly influenced, except in a very indirect manner, by the establishment of trading depôts at the Lower Congo and the coast.

The superficial area of the maritime and mountain

region of the Congo, which includes all that portion of the basin extending between the sea and the lower end of Stanley Pool, measures 33,000 square miles. The population, from the effects of the slave-trade and internal wars, cannot be estimated at more than nine souls to the square mile—say, 300,000, governed by at least 300 chiefs. We have proved them to be tractable during six years of most peaceful intercourse, during which we have experienced only two interruptions with those immediately under our control. The happy condition of our native transport column is an evidence that the natives of this region are teachable, and amenable to improvement and discipline. The latest reports of 1885 prove that about 1500 porters are employed monthly.

The next section we have to consider is the interior basin of the Upper Congo, beginning from the longitude of Léopoldville at the lower end of Stanley Pool, and ending at the longitude of Stanley Falls.

At Stanley Falls we find the altitude of the river to be 1511 feet above the ocean.* In a curving course of 1068 miles from east to west, and from twenty-eight miles north of the Equator to $2^{\circ} 13'$ N. and down to $4^{\circ} 17'$ south of the Equator, across nine degrees of longitude, the slope of the descent has been four inches to the mile. The concave of this almost perfect bow-like course of the Upper Congo is distant from the sources of the tributaries, flowing into it from the south, 913 geographical miles in

* Later measurements do not vary 30 feet from the above.

The Kernel
of the
Argument. a direct line. The convex of the bow is distant from the water-parting which supplies its tributaries from the north 330 geographical miles in a direct line.

Of the southern tributaries flowing into the great river the largest are the Kwa, Mohindu, Ikelemba, Lulungu, and Lubiranzi.

By ascending the Kwa we obtain a navigable length of 281 miles to the upper extremity of Lake Léopold II. The Mbihé and Ngana branches will add a further course of 220 miles.

Two hundred and fifty miles above the Kwa the Lukanga is discovered, which leads us into Lake Mantumba, whose populous shores must not be neglected by the future trader in the Upper Congo.

From the confluence of the Lukanga with the Congo to the extremity of Lake Mantumba is seventy miles.

Sixty miles above the Lukanga we arrive at the fine river Mohindu. We only explored it for about eighty miles, but, considering its magnitude and the native reports, we may estimate its navigability to be about 650 miles.

About thirty miles higher up the Congo is the Ikelemba, which I estimate will furnish 125 miles of river course accessible to trade. It is the commercial reserve of the Bakuti tribe.

The next river we arrive at is the Lulungu, which will probably be found, with its tributaries, Lulua and Lubi, navigable for over 800 miles. Its banks are

reported to be more populous than those of the Congo. This river is exploited by the Bauranga and Bakumira mostly. The Kernel of the Argument.

The next river is the Lubiranzi, which is navigable only for twenty-five miles, when it becomes interrupted by rapids; and, although they are very slight, they are sufficient to impede the navigation.

Beginning at Stanley Pool to survey the navigability of the northern tributaries, the first river is the Lawson-Lufini, which is navigable for thirty miles.

The next is the Mikené-Alima, which we can ascend for thirty miles. Above this is the Likuba, navigable for perhaps fifty miles. A few miles higher up the mouth of the river, variously called Isanga, or Bunga, which is probably the Likona of Ballay, is reached. From all reports this river may be ascended for 120 miles. Nearly opposite the mouth of the Lukanga is the Balui River, a large water entering by a delta. My friend, Miyongo, of Usindi, has led me to believe by his itinerary that it will be navigable for 350 miles. The next river as yet discovered above the Balui is the large river of Ubangi, and above this is the Ngala, flowing from the east into the Congo, half-way between Upoto and Iboko. Some fifty miles of an ascent leads me to expect that, with its affluents, we shall find navigation for about 450 miles. Numbers of large towns are on its banks.

Above the Ngala is the Itimbiri, explored for thirty miles. So far from its magnitude, and from the native reports, I should estimate that we shall find

The Kernel of the Argument. navigable water of the aggregate length of 250 miles. The Nkuku, its immediate neighbour, probably may be ascended for sixty miles, while the Biyerré has been proved navigable for ninety-six miles, and the Chofu is known to be impassable after an ascent of twenty-five miles.

Thus the navigation uninterruptedly available, after leaving the river baylet of Léopoldville, is as follows:—

		English miles.
Left bank	From Léopoldville to Stanley Falls direct . . .	1068
	Kwa River, Kwango and Lake Léopold II. . .	500
	The Lukanga and Lake Mantumba . . .	70
	Mohindu River . . .	650
	Ikelemba „ . . .	125
	Lulungu and its tributaries . . .	800
	Lubiranzi . . .	25
Right bank	Nseleh, Wampoko and Lagoons, left bank . . .	200
	Lawson-Lufini River . . .	30
	Mikené-Alima „ . . .	30
	Likuba . . .	50
	Isanga-Bunga, or Likona River . . .	120
	Balui . . .	350
	Ubangi River, and its affluents . . .	350
	Ngala and its affluents . . .	450
	Itimbiri and its tributaries . . .	250
	Nkuku River . . .	60
	Biyerré „ . . .	96
	Chofu . . .	25
Total . . .		5249 miles.

From the following table of the length of the rivers, and their principal tributaries, which flow into this section of the Congo basin, may be inferred what additional mileage to navigation will be furnished to commerce after the development of geographical knowledge.

RIGHT BANK.

The Kernel
or the
Argument.

Name of River.	Length of Sub-Tributary.	Length of Principal Tributary.	Total.
Lawson-Lufini . . . . .	..	150	150
Mikené-Alima . . . . .	..	170	170
Isanga-Likona . . . . .	..	260	260
Balui . . . . .	..	510	} 710
West branch	200	..	
Ubangi . . . . .	..	..	500
Ngala . . . . .	..	850	} 1350
West branch	500	..	
Itimbiri . . . . .	..	510	510
Nknku . . . . .	..	340	340
Biyerré . . . . .	..	765	} 1705
Nepoko	520	..	
Bomokandi	250	..	
Nanda	170	..	
Chofu . . . . .	..	350	} 650
Lindi	300	..	
			6345

LEFT BANK.

Kwa and Kwango.	600	} 1200
Mfini and Lake Léopold II. . .	281	..	
Eastern branch	320	..	
Mohindu or Kwilu	850	} 1380
Lulo	530	..	
Ikelemba	280	280
Kassai	1275	} 2535
Luashimo	250	..	
Lufua	585	..	
Luabo	425	..	
Lubiranzi or Lubilash	935	} 2125
Lumani	765	..	
Lubi	425	..	
			7520
		Total .	13,865

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

From the Lubilash and the Lumani alone, which form the Lubir¹anzi, I have a strong conviction that 800 miles more of navigable water will be obtained, since the Arabs of Kiburuga informed me that they had crossed it several times, and navigated many days on the waters. They knew only of the rapids twenty-five miles above its confluence with the Congo.

The superficial area drained by the various rivers above mentioned is 1,090,000 square statute miles, into which we have direct navigable access by steam of 5250 miles. This, by passing one rapid, we may increase to over 6000 miles. The wealth of equatorial Africa lies in this section. It is bisected by the equator, over which the rain-belt discharges its showers during ten months of the year. As we recede from the equatorial line, either north or south, the dry periods are of longer duration. At S. Lat. 4° the long dry season lasts four months, from the middle of May to the middle of September; the shorter season lasts six weeks, from the middle of January to the end of February. At S. Lat. 6° , the dry season is about three weeks longer in the year.

The population of this enormous area of the Upper Congo section may be approximately ascertained by estimating the number of inhabitants at each district according to our observations, on the right bank and on the left of that great curve of the Congo between Stanley Pool and Stanley Falls, and of the Biyerré, the Mohindu, the Kwa, and the Lukanga, dividing the entire area by the belts which were explored.

RIGHT BANK. Ascending the Congo.

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

Name of District or Village.	Estimated Population.	Name of District or Village.	Estimated Population.
Gordon Bennett to Lawson River	13,000		207,500
Lawson River to Mikené River	15,000	Bumba	10,000
Mikené River to opposite Lukolela	10,000	Lower Yambinga	8,000
Thence to Bungata	50,000	Upper	8,000
Bukoko	4,000	Ngingiri	5,000
Ukumira	15,000	Villages	3,000
Ubengo	3,000	Old Yalulima	300
Usimbi	3,000	Bungelé	2,000
Iboko	30,000	Basaka	2,000
Lusengo	3,000	Boruu	6,000
Ubika	10,000	Basoko of Mokulu	15,000
Thence to Iringi	10,000	Upper and Lower Yom- burri	13,000
Umangi	12,000	Intermediate Villages	8,000
Ukelé	5,500	Yangambi	5,000
Upoto and Ngombé	6,000	Yaruche	3,000
Luku	2,000	Yaryembi	2,000
Ndobo	8,000	Yarukombé	2,000
Ibunda	8,000	Yakusu	11,000
		Weuya and Bakumu	3,000
	207,500		313,800

LEFT BANK. Ascending the Congo.

Kintamo	3,000		212,000
Kinshassa	3,000	Bunga	2,000
Lema	3,000	Mutembo	500
Kimbangu	3,000	Imemé	500
Mbama and Mikunga	4,000	Marunja	1,000
Kimpoko and neighbour- hood	1,500	Mpakiwana	2,000
To Wampoko River	2,000	Mpa	1,000
Wampoko River to Mswata	5,000	Old Rubunga	2,000
Mswata and neighbour- hood	3,000	Yakongo	2,000
Kwamouth	500	Ikassa	1,000
Kwa River to Bolobo	60,000	Villages	1,500
Bolobo to Lukolela	50,000	Yalulima	15,000
Lukolela	4,000	Irubu	3,000
Ngombé	4,000	Mbungu and Islands	13,000
Nkuku		Bahamba	10,000
Butunu		Bandu	5,000
Usindi	28,000	Bahunga	20,000
Irebu		Bungungu	3,000
Thence to Mohindu River	22,000	Isangi	8,000
Uranga	8,000	Yaporo	4,000
Bolombo	3,000	Ukanga	3,000
Bukumbi	5,000	Yakondé	3,000
		Yarukombé	2,500
		Wenya	4,000
	212,000		319,000

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

THE BIYERRÉ RIVER. Explored length 96 miles.

Umaneh, right bank	15,000
Village, left bank	1,000
Yakui, left bank	10,000
„ right bank	4,000
Isombo, right bank	4,000
Villages	2,000
Yambi	2,000
Bondeh	10,000
Irungu	5,000
Yambua	5,000
Villages	500
Yambumba	20,000
Villages	1,000
Thence to Yambuya	15,000
	<hr/>
	94,500
	<hr/>
Kwa River and Lake Leopold II.	54,000
To Lake Mantumba	25,000

Arranged in a tabular form, the populations thus estimated would present the following numbers :—

Along 1068 miles both banks of the Congo . .	632,800
„ 96 „ „ „ Biyerré . .	94,500
„ 281 „ „ „ Kwa River and	54,000
„ „ „ „ Lake Leopold II.	
„ 70 „ „ „ Lukanga River	25,000
„ „ „ „ and Lake Matumba	
<hr/> 1515	
2	
<hr/>	
2030 miles. Total population of both banks =	806,300
<hr/>	<hr/>

If we estimate these 806,300 people as being settled along a belt 2030 miles long with a breadth of ten miles, and suppose the same density to exist throughout the area of the Upper Congo section, our quotient in population will amount to 43,294,000. Of the southern portion of this section, Dr. Pogge and

Lieutenant Weissman, who crossed the upper Lubilash, write :—

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

“The country is densely peopled, and some of the villages are miles in length. They are clean, with commodious houses shaded by oil-palms and bananas, and surrounded by carefully divided fields, in which, quite contrary to the usual African practice, man is seen to till the soil whilst woman attends to household offices.

“From the Lubilash to the Lumani there stretches almost uninterruptedly a prairie region of great fertility, the future pasture-grounds of the world. The reddish loam overlying the granite bears luxuriant grass and clumps of trees, and only the banks are densely wooded.

“The rains fall during eight months of the year, from September to April, but they are not excessive. The temperature varies from 63° Fah. to 81° Fah., but in the dry season it occasionally falls as low as 45° Fahrenheit.”

Tippu Tib, the great Arab trader in the interior, who has traversed the south-east portion of this section, described to me personally his astonishment at the density of the population. He told me how he had passed through several towns which took a couple of hours to traverse, of the beauty of savannah, park, and prairie country he saw, and how the site of the camp left in the morning might be seen from the evening camp after a six hours' march.

From the north-east of this section we have the testimony of Dr. Schweinfürth in the following words: “From the Wellé to the residence of the Monbuttu king, Munza, the way leads through a country of marvellous beauty, an almost unbroken line of the primitively simple dwellings extending on either side of the caravan route.

He estimates the Nyam-Nyam country to be about 5400 square miles in extent, populated by 2,000,000.

The Kernel of the Argument. which would be equal to the extraordinary number of 370 per square mile!

The Mohindu and Itimbiri rivers, a certain portion of which we explored, confirm what Miyongo of Usindi related respecting the Lulungu, viz., that the further we travelled from the immediate banks of the great river the more numerous became the people.

The vegetable productions of this section are rich and varied, but until intercourse is facilitated little use will be made of them. This might be readily surmised from the country's bisection by the equatorial line, the ten months' rains and the humid warmth which nourishes vegetation with extraordinary prolific power.

The most remarkable among the vegetable growths are the palms, of which there are an immense variety, but the most useful to commerce is the oil-palm (*Elais guineënsis*). Its nut supplies the dark red palm-oil so well known on the west coast, while its kernel is valuable for oil-cake for cattle. Not a grove, nor an island scarcely, can be found without this beautiful and most useful palm; in some places, such as the district between the Lower Lumani and Congo, there are entire forests of it. On the Biyerré the *Raphia vinifera* usurps its place. The larger number of its islands are wholly forests of this palm. As the oil-palm yields annually from 500 to 1000 nuts, the quantity that might be collected from this section is enormous, and would well repay transportation by rail to the coast.

The next most valuable product of the forest, as yet untouched in this region, is the gum of the *Laudolphia* The Kernel of the Argument. *florida*, or india-rubber plant. There are three kinds of plants producing this article, but that which exudes from *Euphorbia* is not so elastic in quality, although it may have its uses. On the islands of the Congo, which in the aggregate cover an area of 3000 square miles with 8000 square miles of the banks of the main river, I estimate that enough rubber could be collected in one year to pay for a Congo railway.

Other gums, such as those of the *Trachylobum* and *Guibourtia* species, are useful for varnishes. The fossil transparent white and red gum copal are too well known for their value to need remark. There are large deposits of these known to the natives. Among the Wenya I discovered large cakes over 18 inches in diameter of pure white gum copal. At some fishing villages they contrive to make torches of it, but of its other uses they know nothing.

Vegetable oils are extracted from the *Arachis hypogea*, or ground-nut, the oil-berry, castor oil. The first is used for lights, the second for cooking and gravies, the third is medicinal, as with us.

Vast extents of forest are veiled with the orchilla moss. Between Iboko and Langa-Langa I saw a strip of forest about 60 miles in length draped with orchilla lying on the woods like a green veil. Every village contains its manufactured rolls of redwood powder, and few settlements between the equator and the Kwa could not furnish a few hundredweights at

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

the first order. Every trading canoe floating on the Upper Congo possesses among its saleable wares a certain store of this universally-demanded article.

The vegetation of the Upper Congo is also remarkable for the quantities of fibres it produces for the manufacture of paper, rope, basket-work, fine and coarse matting, and grass-cloths; these are furnished by the *Papyrus antiquorum*, aloes, *Stipa tenacissima*, *Calamus indicus*, *Phoenix spinosa*, *Raphia vinifera*, and *Adansonia*.

Just as Lake Mantumba furnishes the largest quantity of redwood powder; Iboko palm-fibre matting; Irebu, *Calamus* fibred sunshades and floor mats; Yalulima, double bells; Ubangi, swords; so Lukolela is famous for its tobacco coils, with which product they conduct an extensive river trade. Lukolela is also remarkable for its fine timber and its wild coffee.

In this region, among the many minor items available which commercial intercourse would teach the natives to employ profitably, are monkey, goat, antelope, buffalo, lion, and leopard skins; the gorgeous feathers of the tropic birds, hippopotamus teeth, beeswax, frankincense, myrrh, tortoise-shell, *Cannabis sativa*, and lastly ivory, which to-day is considered the most valuable product. It may be presumed that there are about 200,000 elephants in about 15,000 herds in the Congo basin, each carrying, let us say, on an average 50 lbs. weight of ivory in his head, which would represent, when collected and sold in Europe, £5,000,000. To some, perhaps, this would

appear a large estimate, but it is much more moderate The Kerne
of the
Argument. than a statement made the other day to me by a gentleman, who solemnly declared he had met a herd of at least 300 elephants in a small river, and that he and his servant had slaughtered so many that the river had overflowed its banks, and, like another angry Scamander, threatened to engulf him and his confederate.

Mr. Ingham, a missionary, lately shot twenty-five elephants, and obtained money for the ivory; and Major Vetch, at another locality not far off, shot twenty. As the Congo basin is a large area, and considering the tons upon tons drawn for the last eighty years from the eastern half of Africa, it may be that I have under-estimated the number of elephants still living in the unexploited and virgin western half of the continent.

In my opinion the ivory, however, stands but fifth in rank among the natural products of the basin. The total value of the ivory supposed to be in existence in this region to-day would but represent 107,500 tons of palm-oil, or 30,000 tons of india-rubber. If every warrior living on the immediate banks of the Congo and its navigable affluents—which are of the aggregate length of 10,800 miles, within easy reach of the trader above Léopoldville—were to pick about a third of a pound in rubber each day throughout the year, or to melt two-thirds of a pound weight of palm-oil, and convey it to the trader for sale, £5,000,000 worth of vegetable produce could be obtained without exhaustion of the wild forest productions. Or if, in the same

The Kernel
of the
Argument. manner, each native warrior picked half a pound of gum-copal per day, or collected half a pound per day of orchilla-weed, or made his wife grind out half a pound of camwood or redwood powder, ample proof would be given that any one of the productions of the forests alone as articles of commerce have a value greatly superior to ivory. Although ivory is such a precious article, it is by no means inexhaustible, and therefore it cannot be rated very high. By the most trifling labour of the able-bodied warriors living on the edge of the bank of the navigable river more of either palm-oil, rubber, gum, orchilla-weed, or camwood, could be produced in one year than all the ivory in the Congo basin is worth.

At the same time, although limited, it is a valuable product, and as such will be an object to commerce. If 200 tusks arrived per week at Stanley Pool, or say £260,000 per annum, it would still require twenty-five years to destroy the elephant in the Congo basin.

In minerals this section is by no means poor. Iron is abundant. Yalulima, Iboko, Irebu, and Ubangi are famous for their swordsmiths. The Yakusu and Basoko are pre-eminent for their spears. In the museum of the Association at Brussels are spear-blades six feet long and four inches broad, which I collected among those tribes.

The copper mines near Phillippéville supply a very large portion of Western Africa with their ingots. At the market of Manyanga several hundredweights of these change hands. The south-eastern portion of

the section of the Upper Congo supplies numerous caravans with their stores of smelted copper. Plumbago is also abundant. Gold has been found by the roving Arabs in the beds of streams, and some of those met by me returning from their slave raids possessed small glass bottles which contained the treasures of small gold nuggets they had found.

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

Every native village on the Upper Congo has its sugar-cane plats and maize. Bananas and plaintains naturally thrive marvellously. In the Kwa valley the natives eat bread of millet flour; but the cassava or manioc, sweet and bitter kinds, furnishes the staple farinaceous food of the people along the main river. The leguminous plant most in favour is the black field bean, which is very like the grain of India; it is most prolific and hardy, needing but little cultivation.

Among the vegetables are yams, sweet potatoes, brinjalls, cucumbers, melons, pumpkins, tomatoes, &c. Lately the cabbage, the European potato and onion, have been introduced, and thrive most promisingly at Léopoldville and Kinshassa.

On the eastern edge of this section the Arabs are fast introducing the large-grained upland rice with extraordinary success. At Wané Kirungu they harvested in 1882, 30,000 bushels of rice, and about 500 bushels of wheat. While the Association has advanced from the west with mangoes, papaws, limes, oranges, pine-apples and guava, the Arabs have made remarkable progress from the east with the same fruits.

There is a countless number of valuable plants use-

The Kernel
of the
Argument. ful for their oils, like the “candle-berry” tree, &c.; and for medicinal uses, like the Cashew, the *Jatropha purgans*, the *Strychnas*, the *Amomum*, &c. There are also to be found the wild ginger, and nutmeg, the *Semicarbus anacardium*, or marking-ink plant; but these have no value to commerce, and more properly belong to the botanist. Cotton, however, is discovered wild and indigenous everywhere, especially on the sites of deserted settlements, and may in the future be considered something more than a curiosity in a broad and spacious region so well adapted for its growth.

The next region to be considered is the Webb-Lualaba section, which embraces the greater part of 54 square degrees, included between 28° N. lat. and S. lat. 12° 30', and between E. long. 25° 20' and E. long 30°. The superficial measurement of the area amounts to 246,000 square statute miles. The course of the great river from the *débouchure* of the Chambezi into Lake Bangweolo down to the last Cataract of Stanley Falls is from S.W. to N.W. a distance of 1260 English miles. Within this section I include—until further light is thrown upon the subject—Lake Muta-Nzigé, not the Lake Albert discovered by Sir Samuel Baker. We have voluminous affluents flowing into the Webb-Lualaba, directly west of the lake discovered by me in 1876. They require drainage area, which, if we exclude Lake Muta-Nzigé, we have not sufficient space to supply such large rivers as the Low-wa, the Ulindi, and Lira. From native accounts, which, though extremely unreliable, must, in the absence of definite information, be accepted,

this lake may be estimated to cover an area of 5400 square miles. Lake Bangeolo, according to Livingstone's rough survey, is of the superficial extent of 10,200 square miles. Lake Mweru, according to the same authority, covers an area of 2700 square miles. Lake Kassali and its chain of lakelets cover altogether an area of 2200 square miles.

Beyond the Stanley Falls the Webb-Lualaba is navigable to within six miles from Nyangwé, a length of 327 miles. On the right as we ascend, the first affluent met is the Léopold River, which may be ascended thirty miles; the next is the Low-wa River, an affluent of the first class, which is formed a few miles up by the junction of two streams. South of the Low-wa about fifteen miles we meet the Ulindi—which we ascended in 1877 a few miles—a river with a breadth of 400 yards at the mouth. About ninety miles further south we see the Lira emptying into the Webb-Lualaba, 300 yards wide, a deep and clear stream. A little north of S. latitude 5° we come to the Luama, a stream which has a known course of 250 miles. Forty miles further south is the Luigi, of half that length, and thirty miles beyond the Luigi is the Luindi, or Lukuga, which is the outlet of Lake Tanganika.

Commencing again from the Baswa cataract, the uppermost of the Stanley Falls series, the first on the left bank we meet is the small Black River, and the next from the bend, which I supposed was the Lumami, but which, the Arabs inform me, is the Lufû, a stream similar to the Kasuku, emptying at S. lat. 4° into the

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

The Kernel of the Argument. Webb-Lualaba. The next great river flowing into this section of the river is the Lacustrine Kamolondo.

The Webb-Lualaba section, out of its aggregate length of main river and larger tributaries, which amount to 5000 miles, may be divided into two navigable sections of 550 miles each; the first included between the Baswa Falls and Nyangwé Falls, and the second between the Kasongo Falls and the rapids below Mweru Lake.

This region, mainly along the river banks and in a vast part of its interior, has been subjected to the deteriorative influence of slave-raiding for the last twenty years. Whatever its population may have been before the desolating system of capturing communities of people by the slaughter of the males, it would not be safe to estimate more than twenty souls to the square mile, by which we have a population of nearly 6,000,000.

The principal tribes in that region are the Bakumu, Balegga, Banyema, Bakondé, Bagenya, Barua, Bakuss, Bamarungu, and Balunda.

On the lower navigable section of the Webb-Lualaba there are four trading communities of Arabs and their slaves established at Kasongo, Nyangwé, Vibondo, and Wané Kirundu. To the commercial trader from the west coast these communities are easily accessible, and would be valuable auxiliaries to the extension of trade over the region; inasmuch as they have hosts of disciplined slaves, hundreds of whom have been educated during the last twenty years in the art and practice of trading. The tastes of these people would be superior,

naturally, to that of the aborigines. Through their assistance, the cattle of Usigé, Ruanda, Urundi, and Ujiji might be brought, in a few weeks' march, to the Lualaba; also the cattle of Nyangwé, which have increased at last accounts to respectable herds, proving that there is nothing fatal to their growth and successful propagation in the valley of the Congo.

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

The natural productions of the land are similar to those enumerated as belonging to the Upper Congo section.

The next section for consideration is that of the Chambezi, having a superficial area of 46,000 square miles. It is drained entirely by the Chambezi and its tributaries, which are the headquarters of the Congo. It lies in a basin elevated about 3800 feet above the sea, walled around by the Losanswé range of mountains on the north, and to the south and east by the Lokinga mountains, or plateau wall of Bisa, and the Chibalé range.

The river is described by Livingstone to be 400 yards wide at the place of his crossing, with a clear current of two knots and a depth of three fathoms. One of its affluents, the Lubansenzi, is described as being 300 yards wide, and three fathoms deep. The Lokulu is described as being a still larger affluent.

A few quotations from Livingstone's own words will give a better idea of the country than can be gathered in any other manner.

"Immense swampy plains all around except at Kabendé."

"The water in the country is exceedingly large; plains extending

The Kernel farther than the eye can reach have 4 or 5 feet of clear water, and the
of the adjacent lands for 20 or 30 miles are level.”

Argument.

“We went through papyrus, tall rushes, arums, and grass till tired out. We were lost in stiff grassy prairies from 3 to 4 feet in water for five hours.”

“The country is all so very flat that the rivers down here are of necessity tortuous. Fish and other food abundant, and the people civil and reasonable.”

“One sees interminable grassy prairies with lines of trees occupying quarters of miles in breadth, and these give way to plain again. The plain is flooded annually; but its vegetation consists of grasses.”

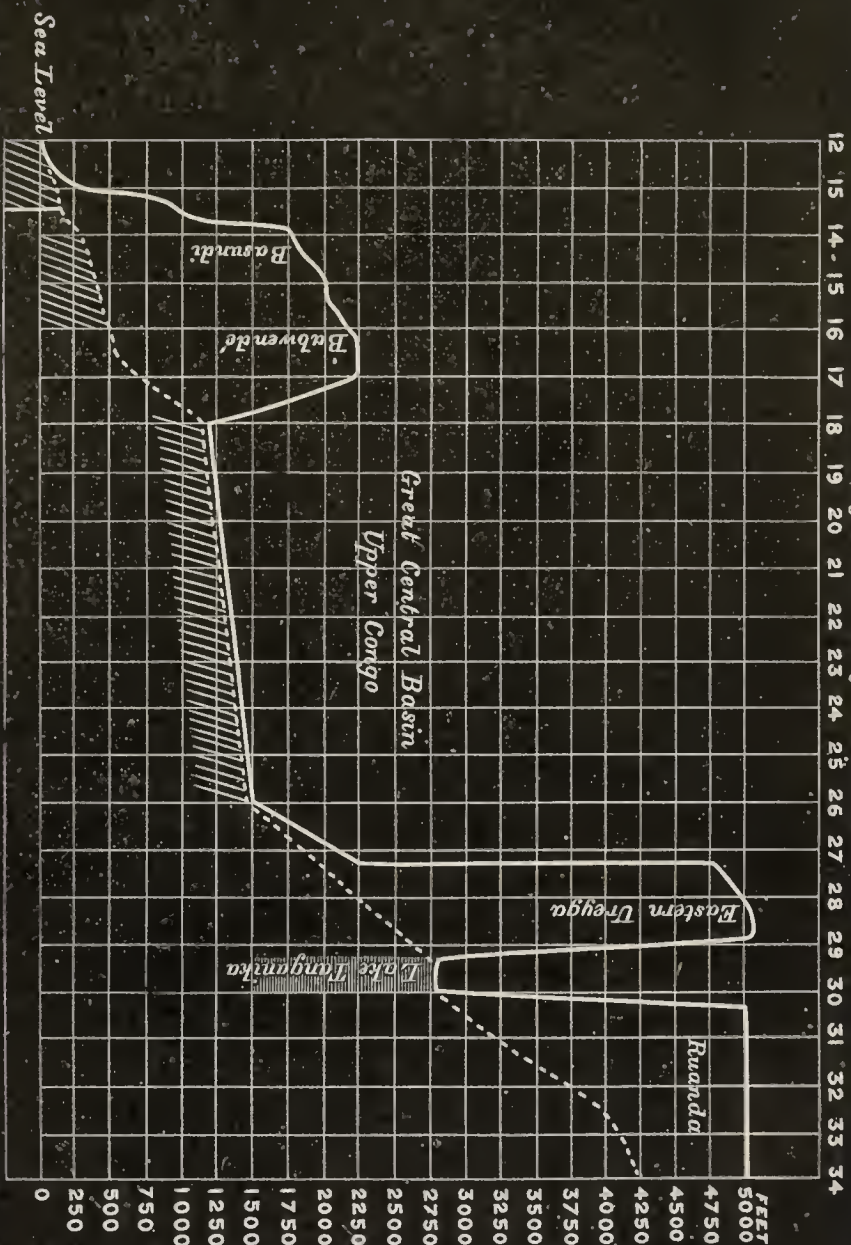
From the above it will be perceived that the basin of the Chambezi is principally a level country like prairie land sloping very gradually on all sides to the Bangweolo Lake, and during the rainy season inundated in its lower depressions, especially in the vicinity of the lake. Midway of its course, however, the country rises in beautiful gradations of undulating pasture land, on which browse the cattle herds of the Babisa, as far as the foot of the Mambwé plateau, on the north-east, and the Chibalé mountain chain east, the latter being 7,000 feet high.

The population of this region cannot be estimated at more than ten to the square mile, which would give 460,000 souls to the territory.

The remaining section of the Congo basin to be described is the Tanganika territory, which covers a superficial area of 93,000 square miles, of which the lake itself being 391 English miles in length, with an average breadth of twenty-four miles, absorbs 9400 square miles.

In some portions of this section the population is dense; as for instance, in Usigè, Urundi, Uhha, Eastern

Degrees East of Greenwich



PLAN OF PROFILE OF THE COUNTRY BETWEEN THE SEA AND RUANDA ACROSS THE CONGO BASIN.

Itawa, Ujiji, and some portions of Umyamwezi; in others, again, as in Kawendi, Marungu, Ufipa, it is but thinly populated. By a moderate estimate, it would be twenty-five to the square mile, making a population for the entire basin of 2,325,000. The Kernel
of the
Argument.

The surface of the lake is at an altitude of 2750 feet above the sea. On the north-west it is bounded by mountains rising 2500 feet higher, to the south-west by heights ranging from 1500 to 2000 feet. Along the east the average height of the table land is 1500 feet above the lake; on the north is a broad, funnel-shaped valley leading to the lofty uplands of Ruanda.

On one half of this territory cattle are bred in numerous herds. The Warundi, Wahha, Wazigé, and Wanya-Ruanda, a very superior race of people, could not exist without their cattle. The Wajiji and Wanyamwezi, who are allied to them, also affect a pastoral life, while they do not neglect the production of cereals, sorghum, millet, maize. At Ujiji, Uvira, and Uzigè, are trading communities of Arabs; on the west side of Tanganika is a London Missionary station. About midway on the east is a station of the African International Association.

At Ujiji ends the oil-palm, the other productions of the land being similar to the Upper Congo section. On the eastern portion of the basin cereals form the staple food of the inhabitants, while on its western portion the principal food consists of bananas and cassava.

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

At the markets of Ujiji may be seen a number of the principal products for sale—ivory, maize, sesame, millet, beans, ground nuts, sugar-cane, chilies, wild fruit, palm-oil, bananas, plaintains, honey, goats, sheep, cattle, fowls, fish, tobacco, fish-nets, copper wristlets, iron wire, bark cloth, bows and arrows, hoes, spears, slaves, &c.

At Uvira, on the north-west side, are great smelting works, and manufactures of iron wire and ware. At Usanzi, a little south, the best tobacco is raised; in Ukawendi the largest store of honey and wax is to be found; from Urungu to Mambwe the finest ivory arrives; from Marungu the largest number of slaves are brought; Urundi and Uhha supply the largest number of cattle; while Ujiji supplies goats and sheep.

The following table will present in a compact form the state of our actual knowledge of the Congo basin :—

Sections.	Area in Square miles.	Population per Square mile.	Number of Population.	Length of Navigation.	Name of Lake.	Area of Lake. Square miles.
Lower Congo .	33,000	About 9	297,000	110	Leopold II.	950
					Mautumba.	400
Upper Congo	1,090,000	40	43,884,000	5,250	Bangweolo.	10,200
					Mweru . .	2,700
Lualaba . .	246,000	20	4,920,000	1,100	Kassala and chain of Lakelets .	2,200
Chambezi, with Bangweolo . }	46,000	10	460,000	400	Tanganika.	9,400
					Mutu Nzigè	5,400
Tanganika . .	93,000	25	2,325,000	391	Kuta Kebir	444
	1,508,000	Average 34	51,886,000	7,251		31,694

The subjoined form will illustrate how the Congo

basin is at present divided, according to the Berlin Conference :—

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

—	Divisional Areas.	Population.
Total area of Congo basin—		
French territory	62,400	2,121,600
Portuguese territory . . .	30,700	276,300
Unclaimed	349,700	6,910,000
Free State of the Congo . .	1,065,200	42,608,000
	1,508,000	51,886,000



POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF THE CONGO BASIN.

The above is a concise description of the basin, about the resources of which I lectured about fifty times in the larger cities of France and England in 1878. More minute exploration, and more intimate

The Kernel
of the
Argument. knowledge of the peoples during my six years later
intercourse with them have but intensified my convictions.

The clever practical people of Manchester ask me, "And what can the natives give us in exchange for our cloth?"

I answer, that the trade of West Africa amounted to £32,000,000 last year, out of which there were probably about £17,000,000 exports, which sailing ships and steamers were able to carry away to Europe from a line of sea coast only 2900 miles long. I have shown, after due care for exactitude obtained after some four hundred astronomical observations, patient exploration, personal investigation, bold essays into as yet wild regions with our small steamers, assiduous questioning of native navigators, that there are 5250 statute miles of uninterrupted navigable water, which may by overcoming a little trouble at one rapid be increased to 6000 miles in the Upper Congo section of the Congo basin.

The area through which these navigable channels flow is over 1,000,000 square miles superficial extent, and is throughout a fertile region unsurpassed for the variety of its natural productions. It is peopled by about 43,000,000 of native Africans, whom, from our experience among 1,000,000 of them, lead us to believe will prove as amenable to reason and prudent treatment as any natives we have encountered. As we have ascertained that along 2030 miles of river banks there dwell 806,300, we may estimate then that

4,483,000 souls inhabit the two banks of the navigable mileage of 6000 miles, or 12,000 miles of river shore.

These 12,000 miles of Congo banks excel in quality the sea shore. In this book, I speak of having found oil-palms and rubber creepers, the dyeing powder of the red-wood and of the orchilla-weed, of copal deposits, and forests of gum-producing trees at every place I visited; I speak of eager native traders following us for miles for the smallest piece of cloth. I mention that after travelling many miles to obtain cloth for ivory and red-wood powder, the despairing natives asked, "Well, what is it you do want? Tell us, and we will get it for you."

On venturing before that body of practical, sober, intelligent men incorporated into a Manchester Chamber of Commerce, I am confronted with the singular question, "What can the natives give us in exchange for our cloth?" For a first answer I append the following list of produce from the Congo.

If sailing ships and steamers can be sent to the Upper Congo basin by the Manchester people, they will obtain three times at least more of West African produce than they obtain from the whole of the West African coast, extending from the Gambia to St. Paul de Loanda, or £50,000,000 worth of produce. Since they cannot send either sailing or steam vessels, they must build two sections of narrow-gauge railway respectively fifty-two and ninety-five miles in length, connected by steamboat navigation, or a connected railway 235 miles long, and they will

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

obtain as much produce as such a railway can convey, from their trading agents on the Upper Congo, who will collect it from over a million native Africans, who are waiting to be told what further produce is needed beyond ivory, palm-oil, palm kernels, ground-nuts, gum-copal, orchilla-weed, camwood, cola-nuts, gum tragacanth, myrrh, frankincense, furs, skins, hides, feathers, copper, india-rubber, fibre of grasses, beeswax, bark-cloth, nutmeg, ginger, castor-oil nuts, &c.

*Memorandum from Hutton & Co., The Temple, Dale Street,
Liverpool, 12th March, 1885.*

VALUE OF AFRICAN PRODUCE IN LIVERPOOL.

	£	s.	d.	
Palm oil (Congo).	23	5	0	per ton.
„ kernels „	12	5	0	„
Ground-nuts, shelled	14	10	0	„
„ in the shell	12	0	0	„
Copra	16	0	0	„
India rubber	1s. 4d.	to	2	1 per lb.
Ivory teeth	£45	to	60	0 0 per cwt.
„ serivelloes	£25	„	45	0 0 „
Barwood	3	10	0	per ton.
Camwood	£21	to	23	0 0 „
Ebony	£6	„	14	10 0 „
Coffee, small berry	1	10	0	per cwt.
„ largo „	1	12	0	„
Cotton	0	0	5½	per lb.
„ seed	4	10	0	per ton.
Bermiseed	2	5	0	per 384 lbs.
Gum copal, red Angola	5	15	0	per cwt.
„ white Loanda	1	15	0	„
„ Sierra Leone	0	0	6½	per lb.
Guinea grains	0	19	0	per cwt.
Chillies	£1 5s.	to	2	10 0 „
Ginger	1	16	0	„
Castor seed	0	9	0	„
Croton „	0	5	0	„
Beeswax	£5	to	6	10 0 „
Orchilla weed, Angola	£1 17s. 6d.	„	2	10 0 „

	£.	s.	d.	
Kola nuts (fresh)	1	0	0	per ewt.
Rattan canes	8	0	0	per ton.
Porcupine quills	0	14	0	per 1000.
Monkey skins	0	1	0	apiece.
Calabar beans	0	0	4	per lb.
Morse teeth	0	2	0	„
Adansonia, or Baobab bark or fibre	11	0	0	per ton.
Oil nuts (Candle-berry)	0	7	0	per ewt.
Egusi seed	0	10	0	„

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

Ground Nuts, deoortiated or shelled, come from the Congo; unshelled from Gambia, Senegal, and the rivers north of Sierra Leone.

Coprah, or *Copra*, comes from different parts of the coast; it is the sun-dried flesh of the cocoanut.

India-Rubber.—The best and cleanest, worth 210s. per ewt., comes from the Congo, and is called “thimble.”

Ivory.—The dearest is the greenish Gaboon; large teeth fetch £60 per cwt. and upwards; Angola large teeth fetch £55 to £60.

Bermiseed is a seed like the Gingelly seed.

Guinea Grains are used for adulterating beer.

Kola Nuts.—Only saleable when fresh; our sample is dried up; they come red and white.

Calabar Beans were worth 2s. 6d. per lb. a few years ago; they only fetch 3d. to 4d. per lb. now, having been imported too plentifully; they are used for pharmaceutical purposes.

Baobab, or *Adansonia Fibre*, used for paper-making, is imported principally from the Congo and south-west coast.

Oil Nuts are little imported; they are of the size of pigeons' eggs, and contain some oil.

Egusi Seed, little known, contains oil; is imported now and then; resembles melon seed.

Ebony.—Imported from Old Calabar, worth £6 to £6 17s. 6d. per ton; imported from Gaboon, it is worth £7 to £14 10s., according to size of pieces.

By the very simplicity of the question of the Manchester merchants, it is evident they require very simple answers. For the benefit of these, as well as for others, I submit the following exceedingly simple method of replying.

Supposing a few factories were established on the Upper Congo, a few at Isangila, and a few at Man-

The Kernel of the Argument. Manyanga, and judging from what is being done on the Lower Congo, the following produce was shipped :—

Factories where Stationed.	Produce.	Gross Value.	Weight.
		£	Tons.
Isangila	Ground nuts	370,000	25,000
Manyanga	„	370,000	25,000
Isangila and Manyanga	Palm-oil	310,000	10,000
Stanley Pool, &c.	Orchilla-weed	450,000	10,000
„	Ivory	260,000	232
„	Hippo teeth	11,200	20
Upper Congo	Rubber	1,530,000	10,000
„	Skins	20,000	1,800
„	Palm-oil	1,240,000	40,000
„	Beeswax	5,000	50
„	Copal-gum	600,000	10,000
Lake Leopold II. and } Mantumba }	Camwood	480,000	20,000
Kwa Mouth	Sesanum seed	20,800	4,000
		5,667,000	156,102

The tonnage thus adduced by the above estimate would be equal to $427\frac{1}{2}$ tons per day, which would task the resources of such a railway. At one penny per ton per mile freight, the gross revenue of the railway would be equal to £152,000, and if we estimate the revenue derived from the freight of goods going into the interior for commerce, State, and missions, we may well conceive that the aggregate for up and down freight would amount to £300,000 per annum, exclusive of passengers.

From Vivi to Isangila is a distance of fifty-two miles, and such a railway as would be required for this section at the cost of £4000 per mile, would require a capital of £210,000. Four steamers at £5000 each would connect Isangila with Manyanga, which secures 60,000 tons of ground-nuts and palm-

oil, the gross value of which is £1,050,000. Of ivory and rubber, £300,000 might easily be bought, because the great depôt of trade would then be at the terminus—Manyanga—and the service of the 800 carriers now conveying goods between Vivi and Stanley Pool (235 miles), would be utilised in carrying produce between the Pool and Manyanga, ninety-five miles.

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

The aggregate revenue of the up and down traffic from commerce, State, and missions, exclusive of passengers, would be about £120,000, for an outlay of £230,000.

The fuel would be obtained at the Bundi, and Ngoma forests, through which the line of railway would run. It would of course be a surface railway, the extraordinary outlay being only for a few bridges.

Were the railway to be direct from Vivi to Stanley Pool, the distance being only 235 miles, the expense of construction at £4000 per mile would only amount to £940,000. The gross revenue of £300,000 per annum for such an outlay is surely large! Once such a railway is constructed a million square miles must contribute to its support. The trade by 5200 miles of uninterrupted river navigation flowing through it would chiefly consist of heavy produce in exchange for as bulky goods, cotton goods, beads, muskets, gunpowder, cutlery, china, and iron ware, inasmuch as bullion, cheques, bank-notes are useless in the Congo basin.

As a mere speculation there is nothing in the whole wide world offering so remunerative an in-

The Kernel
of the
Argument. vestment of capital as this small railway. Animals of all kinds, and human carriers have been tested, and have proved to be failures; the cataracts are impassable; aerial navigation, unfortunately, cannot compete with the railway as yet, and until that time arrives every article that a mortal man needs must pay toll of freight to this iron road.

To-day £52,000 are paid per annum for portorage between Stanley Pool and the coast, by native traders, the International Association, and three Missions, which is equal to $5\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. on the £940,000 said to be needed to construct the railway to the Pool. But let the Vivi and Stanley Pool railroad be constructed, and it would require an army of Grenadiers to prevent the traders from moving on to secure the favourite places in the commercial El Dorado of Africa.

The equatorial regions of Africa have for ages defied Islamism, Christianity, science, and trade. Like the waves beating on a rocky shore, so Islamism has dashed itself repeatedly from the north in its frantic effort to reach the line of the Equator. Christianity has also made ineffectual attempts for the last three centuries to obtain a footing in the same region, but ignorance of the climate caused its retirement. Science has directed strategic assaults upon the closely-besieged area, and has succeeded in retiring with brilliant results; its success, however, has been only temporary, as Trade which ought to have followed stood dazed with the difficulties which the pioneers encountered.

Thus the equatorial region, which offers such large

prospects to the enterprising, has been left to stew in its own juice of fatness. Civilisation, so often baffled, stands railing at the barbarism and savagery that presents such an impenetrable front to its efforts. It feigns to forget by what process England, Gaul, and Belgæ were redeemed from barbarism; and because at this late hour there still emerges into light the great heart of Africa with its countless millions without the slightest veneer of artificialism over man's natural state, it thoughtlessly exclaims that the African savages are irreclaimable. How is it possible that these natives of Africa, whose bonds have been fixed in such an inaccessible area, could have been otherwise? No people that we have any record of have ever risen out of the slough of barbarism without external help. Europe has been compounded out of the relics of many nations and tribes—Celts, Huns, Goths, Vandals, Greeks, Romans, Franks, Saxons, Normans, Saracens, Turks, who have become involved with one another a thousand times in commotions and contentions during many centuries. It is out of the fragments of warring myriads that the present polished nations of Europe have sprung. Had a few of those waves of races flowing and eddying over Northern Africa succeeded in leaping the barrier of the Equator, we should have found the black aboriginal races of Southern Africa very different from the savages we meet to-day.

But until the latter half of the nineteenth century the world was ignorant of what lay beyond the rapids of Isangila, or how slight was the obstacle which lay

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

The Kernel
of the
Argument.

between civilisation and the broad natural highway which cleaved the dark virgin regions of Africa into two equal halves, and how Nature had formed a hundred other navigable channels by which access could be gained to this her latest gift to mankind. As a unit of that mankind for which nature reserved it, I rejoice that so large an area of the earth still lies to be developed by the coming races; I rejoice to find that it is not only high in value, but that it excels all other known lands for the number and rare variety of precious gifts with which nature has endowed it.

Let us take North America for instance, and the richest portion of it, viz., the Mississippi basin, to compare with the Congo basin, previous to its development by that mixture of races called modern Americans. When De Soto navigated the Father of waters, and the Indians were undisputed masters of the ample river-basin, the spirit of enterprise would have found in the natural productions some furs and timber.

The Congo basin is, however, much more promising at the same stage of undevelopment. The forests on the banks of the Congo are filled with precious redwood, *lignum vitæ*, mahogany, and fragrant gum-trees. At their base may be found inexhaustible quantities of fossil gum, with which the carriages and furnitures of civilised countries are varnished; their boles exude myrrh and frankincense; their foliage is draped with orchilla-weed, useful for dye. The redwood when cut down, chipped and rasped, produces a deep crimson

powder, giving a valuable colouring; the creepers The Kernel of the Argument. which hang in festoons from tree to tree are generally those from which india-rubber is produced (the best of which is worth 2s. per lb.); the nuts of the oil palm give forth a butter, a staple article of commerce; while the fibres of others will make the best cordage. Among the wild shrubs are frequently found the coffee-plant. In its plains, jungle, and swamp, luxuriate the elephants, whose teeth furnish ivory worth from 8s. to 11s. per lb.; its waters teem with numberless herds of hippopotamus, whose tusks are also valuable; furs of the lion, leopard, monkey, otter; hides of antelope, buffalo, goat, cattle, &c., may also be obtained. But what is of far more value, it possesses over 40,000,000 of moderately-industrious and workable people, which the Red Indians never were. And if we speak of prospective advantages and benefits to be derived from this late gift of Nature, they are not much inferior in number or value to those of the well-developed Mississippi Valley. The copper of Lake Superior is rivalled by that of the Kwilu-Niadi Valley, and of Bembé. Rice, cotton, tobacco, maize, coffee, sugar, and wheat, would thrive equally well on the broad plains of the Congo. This is only known after the least superficial examination of a limited line which is not much over 50 miles wide. I have heard of gold and silver, but this statement requires further corroboration, and I am not disposed to touch upon what I do not personally know.

For climate, the Mississippi valley is superior, but a large portion of the Congo basin at present inaccessible

The Kernel
of the
Argument. to the immigrant is blessed with a temperature under which Europeans may thrive and multiply. There is no portion of it where the European trader may not fix his residence for years, and develop commerce to his own profit with as little risk as is incurred in India.

It is specially with a view to rouse the spirit of trade that I dilate upon the advantages possessed by the Congo basin, and not as a field for the pauper immigrant. There are over 40,000,000 native paupers within the area described, who are poor and degraded already, merely because they are encompassed round about by hostile forces of nature and man, denying them contact and intercourse with the elements which might have ameliorated the unhappiness of their condition. European pauperism planted amongst them would soon degenerate to the low level of aboriginal degradation. It is the cautious trader who advances, not without the means of retreat; the enterprising mercantile factor who with one hand receives the raw produce from the native, in exchange for the finished product of the manufacturer's loom—the European middleman who has his home in Europe but has his heart in Africa is the man who is wanted. These are they who can direct and teach the black pauper what to gather of the multitude of things around him and in his neighbourhood. They are the missionaries of commerce, adapted for nowhere so well as for the Congo basin, where are so many idle hands, and such abundant opportunities all within a natural "ring fence."

Those entirely weak-minded, irresolute, and senile people who profess scepticism, and project it before them always as a shield to hide their own cowardice from general observation, it is not my purpose to attempt to interest in Africa. Of the 325,000,000 of people in civilised Europe there must be some surely to whom the gospel of enterprise preached in this book through the medium of eight languages will present a few items of fact worthy of retention in the memory, and capable of inspiring a certain amount of action. I am encouraged in this belief by the rapid absorption of several ideas which I have industriously promulgated during the last few years respecting the Dark Continent. Pious missionaries have set forth devotedly to instil into the dull mindless tribes the sacred germs of religion; but their material difficulties are so great that the progress they have made bears no proportion to the courage and zeal they have exhibited. I now turn to the worldly wise traders, for whose benefit and convenience a railway must be constructed.

The Kerne
of the
Argument.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE BERLIN CONFERENCE.

Strengthening the fabric — Precedents — Treaties with chiefs: their validity—The Anglo-Portuguese Treaty—United States action—Prince Bismarck's views—Position of Great Britain—German and French interests—Freedom of commerce—Berlin Conference—List of Plenipotentiaries—Deliberations and decisions at the Conference—Acquisitions of France and Portugal—Free Trade—A safe jurisdiction—The Royal Founder.

The Berlin
Conference.

THE building of the Congo State may be likened to the construction of an edifice. We of the expedition may be compared to the labourers clearing the ground, levelling the site, reducing the approaches into order, digging the trenches, laying the foundations, and finally building up the walls to the designed height, while Colonel Strauch and Captain Thys, of the Bureau of the Association, supplied us with tools and mortar. But the edifice in such a condition if long exposed to the elements cannot stand. The labourers, bricklayers, and stone-masons must retire, and the owner must apply to the carpenters and slaters to put on the roof, and place the doors and windows in their places. When these have finished their parts, the cabinet-makers and upholsterers must be called in

to render the house habitable. The Expedition of the Upper Congo and the Bureau had now performed their duties, but the Royal Founder of the State was compelled, in order to insure its prosperity and continuity, as the work advanced, to apply to the various Governments of Europe and America for recognition, and for security and peaceful safeguard of its frontiers, to make treaties with France and Portugal, which would delimit the boundaries, and arrange with all of them for the preservation of neutrality.

The Berlin Conference.

The precedents of the English Puritans of the *Mayflower* in 1620, of the New Hampshire colonists in 1639, of the East India Company, Sarawak, Liberia, and Borneo favoured the right of individuals to found and establish states upon the cession of territory with its sovereignty to them by the independent sovereigns, chiefs, rulers, or assemblies, who were the original owners or holders of it.

The Association were in possession of treaties made with over 450 independent African chiefs, whose rights would be conceded by all to have been indisputable, since they held their lands by undisturbed occupation, by long ages of succession, by real divine right. Of their own free will, without coercion, but for substantial considerations, reserving only a few easy conditions, they had transferred their rights of sovereignty and of ownership to the Association. The time had then arrived when a sufficient number of these had been made to connect the several miniature sovereignties into one concrete whole, to present itself before the

The Berlin
Conference.

world for general recognition of its right to govern, and hold these in the name of an independent state, lawfully constituted according to the spirit and tenor of international law.

The Committee on Foreign Relations with the United States, in their Report to the forty-eighth Congress, say: "It can scarcely be denied that the native chiefs have the right to make these treaties. The able and exhaustive statements of Sir Travers Twiss, the eminent English jurist, and of Professor Arntz, the no less distinguished Belgian publicist, leave no doubt upon the question of the legal capacity of the African International Association in view of the law of nations to accept any powers belonging to these native chiefs and governments which they may choose to delegate or cede to them."

"The practical question to which they give an affirmative answer, for reasons which appear to be indisputable, is this, 'Can independent chiefs of savage tribes cede to private citizens (persons) the whole or part of their States, with the sovereign rights which pertain to them, conformably to the traditional customs of the country?'"

"The doctrine advanced in this proposition, and so well sustained by these writers, accords with that held by the Government of the United States, that the occupants of a country, at the time of its discovery by other and more powerful nations, have the right to make the treaties for its disposal, and that private persons when associated in such country for self-pro-

tection, or self-government, may treat with the inhabitants for any purpose that does not violate the laws of nations.” The Berlin Conference.

In consequence of negotiations entered into between the British and Portuguese Governments, beginning November, 1882, and ending February 25, 1884, a treaty was finally concluded, by which the whole of the south-west African coast, between S. latitude $5^{\circ} 12'$, and S. latitude $5^{\circ} 18'$, was recognised by the British Government as Portuguese territory. This included the Lower Congo, of course, by which the territory of the Association became excluded from the sea. The treaty was signed on the 26th of February, 1884, by Earl Granville on the part of Great Britain, and by Senhor Miguel Martins d'Antas, on behalf of the Government of Portugal.

Earl Granville, however, declared, previous to the signature of the treaty, that the acceptance by other Powers of the Anglo-Portuguese Treaty was indispensable before it could come into operation, and that there was reason to believe that this acceptance would be refused, which would necessarily delay the ratification.

Hitherto this territory proposed to be given up to Portugal, so far as Great Britain was concerned, had been regarded as neutral, and the treaty, thus concluded, marked a radical change in British policy; for a long series of British ministers had, during over half a century, peremptorily declined to recognise the Portuguese claims.

On the publication of the Anglo-Portuguese Treaty,

The Berlin
Conference.

the European powers, especially France and Germany, emphatically protested against it, and in England men of all shades of politics combined to denounce it, principally through a fear that the restrictions imposed upon trade in other colonies belonging to Portugal would be so severe as to render commerce impossible in the Congo region.

The most signal protest to the Anglo-Portuguese Treaty was, however, from the United States of America. One of the faithful coadjutors of the Committee of the International Association, General H. S. Sanford, of Florida, formerly United States Minister to Belgium, in the latter part of 1883, had, by means of the press and his intimate acquaintance with the authorities, succeeded in rousing a genuine public interest in the Congo question. The American people had evidently forgotten that it was through the philanthropy of their fellow citizens that the Free States of Liberia had been founded to the establishment of which they had contributed \$2,558,987 of their money to create homes and comforts for the 18,000 free Africans they had despatched to settle there. This state, which they might regard with honest pride, had now an area of 14,300 square miles, and a revenue of \$100,000. They had seemingly forgotten also that it was to the munificence of one of their fellow citizens, and that it was to the discovery and rescue of Dr. Livingstone by another of their fellow-citizens, that popular attention was drawn to Africa, and that they had a half share in the honour of the exploration of the Congo basin which had now

culminated in attracting the attention of the world. ^{The Berlin Conference.} When General Sanford reminded his countrymen of these facts, and held out to them a prospect in rebuilding their once important trade in West Africa, it was not difficult then to induce Congress to examine the question soberly, and after a patient investigation of every fact bearing upon it, the United States Senate, on the 10th of April, 1884, passed a resolution authorising the President to recognise the International African Association as a governing power on the Congo River.

The recognition of the United States was the birth unto new life of the Association, seriously menaced as its existence was by opposing interests and ambitions; and the following of this example by the European Powers has affirmed and secured its place among Sovereign States. This act, the result of the well-considered judgment of the American statesmen, was greatly criticised abroad, as was the participation of the United States in the Berlin Conference, to which it directly led up, by the press of America. It was an act well worthy of the Great Republic, not only as taking the lead in publicly recognising and supporting the great work of African civilisation in history, and in promoting the extension of commerce, but of significant import, in view of its interest for the future weal of the 7,000,000 people of African descent within its borders.

The British Chambers of Commerce, notably those of Manchester, Liverpool, and Glasgow, resolutely opposed the treaty concluded with Portugal, but

The Berlin
Conference.

withal the strenuous opposition maintained to it in commercial circles and in the House of Commons, had not the Royal Founder of the Association obtained the assistance of the German Chancellor and the sympathies of the French Government, it is doubtful whether anything done in England would have succeeded in averting the effectual seal being put upon enterprise in the Congo basin by this treaty. Much more liberal terms would be needed to tempt commerce within its borders than any provisions that the treaty contained. Some such arrangement as that made by the Congress of Vienna in 1815, whereby liberty of navigation was proclaimed to the great rivers of Europe, such as the Rhine and the Danube, would be necessary ; and now that an Association had absorbed unto itself hundreds of petty sovereignties along a large portion of it, and France had proceeded in the same manner to absorb other portions of the Congo banks, while Portugal pressed her claims to territories washed by the great African river, it was absolutely and imperatively incumbent on the Powers to step forward and impose such obligations on the riverain Powers as would not imperil or strangle the commerce already thriving on the banks of the Lower Congo.

On the 7th of June, 1884, Prince Bismarck set forth his objections to the Anglo-Portuguese Treaty to Count Munster as follows :—

“ I do not think the Treaty has any chance of being universally recognised, even with the modifications which are therein proposed by Her Majesty's Government.

“ We are not prepared to admit the previous rights of any of the

Powers who are interested in the Congo trade as a basis for the negotiations. Trade and commerce have hitherto been free to all alike, without restriction. We cannot take part in any scheme for handing over the administration, or even the direction of their arrangement, to Portuguese officials. The Berlin Conference.

“In the interests of German commerce, therefore, I cannot consent that a coast of such importance, which has hitherto been free land, should be subjected to the Portuguese colonial system.”

Hitherto Britain had been the most enterprising nation in African fields of exploration and commerce. In the annals of exploration of the Dark Continent, we look in vain among other nationalities for a name such as Livingstone's. He stands pre-eminent above all; he unites in himself all the best qualities of other explorers, the methodical perseverance of Barth, Moffat's philo-Africanism, Rohlf's enterprising spirit, Duveyrier's fondness for geographical minutiae, Burton's literal accuracy, Speke's charming simplicity and seductive *bonhomie* with the aborigines; he is a rare piece of human mosaic, a real glory to England. But to English Burton, Germany can show Barth, and France Duveyrier; and to Speke the first can show Rohlf, and the latter Rene Caillie; to Cameron Germany can oppose Nachtigal; and to Baker, Schweinfurth, though two greater opposites can scarcely be imagined; and France can also boast of De Compeigne and De Brazza. But Britain, after producing Bruce, Park, Clapperton, Denham, the Landers, excelled herself even when she produced the strong and perseverant Scotchman, Livingstone.

In West African trade also Great Britain stood almost alone at one time. Macgregor Laird exploited

The Berlin
Conference.

the Niger in 1841; her traders were busy on the Gambia, on the Roquette, on the Gold Coast, at Lagos in the oil rivers, at Gaboon and Kabinda, and the Glasgow and Liverpool and Bristol merchants were represented by a host of agents, who had planted themselves at various points along 2,900 miles of coast, but of late years, through the apathy of English merchants, Germany by her enterprise had also established herself at various places, and great houses like that of Woerman's were looming upward, overtopping all individual English firms, which could number their factories by dozens and their agents by scores. Hamburg and Bremen were outrivalling Liverpool and Glasgow. Thus Germany had solid and substantial reasons for watching and jealously guarding her mercantile interests; and France, aided by the energy and talents of Monsieur de Brazza, in territories beyond and contiguous to the Gaboon colony, naturally wished to establish herself, beyond dispute, in the districts acquired by the devotion and intelligence of her agents.

The political talents of the German Chancellor, Prince Bismarck, are not of the ordinary standard. Those who profess to follow the beaten paths and prescribed rules of diplomatic art, mere obsolete principles of Machiavelli, are confused by the consistent, direct, coherent sincerity which dictates his policy, and lose themselves in profound speculations as to what his drift is, when in plain literal characters his purpose lies written in legible letters and in-

telligible language. German *savants* had explored territories unclaimed by any Power; German merchants were honestly established at certain places on the West African coast; out of the most intelligent and enterprising of the sons of Germany twenty-four Geographical Societies had been formed, and a dozen Colonial Associations, besides African societies, were being constituted in Germany. Already Bastian, Gussfeldt, Peschuel Loesche, Buchner, Von Mechow, Pogge, Weissman, had been equipped by a German African Society, and it was preparing to despatch more. These facts were published in their reviews and magazines. There was no secrecy in the movement; all was honest and above-board, and all the world was told of the modest effort Germany was making to expand its colonial strength.

Like the great statesman he is, Prince Bismarck felt this strong throb of modern German life. He applied his stethoscope to listen to the murmuring and latent passion of his era, and having discovered it, he bent his genius to create a sound system of colonial policy, not rashly, though to those without the orbit of his genius it might be supposed to be eccentric. He is zealous in all he undertakes, he seeks advice from those competent to give it. This is his eccentricity; it is unusual for statesmen to convene a number of experts to consider the best course to pursue. The Woermans and the Meyers of Hamburg and Bremen were summoned to Varsin to see the Prince. During the visit they paid him, Prince Bismarck, through his receptive

The Berlin
Conference.

The Berlin Conference. gifts, imbibed such a vast amount of local knowledge respecting the little known territories of West Africa, that I venture to say few Foreign Ministers ever possessed.

On September 13th Prince Bismarck writes to Baron de Courcel, French Ambassador at Berlin—

“Like France, the German Government will observe a friendly attitude towards the Belgian enterprises on the banks of the Congo, owing to the desire entertained by the two Governments to secure to their countrymen freedom of trade throughout the whole of the future Congo States, and in the districts which France holds on this river, and which she proposes to assimilate to the liberal system which that State is expected to establish. These advantages will continue to be enjoyed by German subjects, and will be guaranteed to them in the event of France being called upon to exercise the right of preference accorded by the King of the Belgians in the contingency of the acquisitions made by the Congo Company being alienated.”

It should be observed here that the International Association, after the publication of the Anglo-Portuguese Treaty, and perceiving no other way to escape the consequences of it, had signed an agreement, to which was attached a map, with France, fifty-seven days later, or on April 23rd, the text of which is as follows :—

“The International Association of the Congo, in the name of the Free Stations and territories which it has established on the Congo and in the valley of the Niadi-Kwilu, formally declares that it will not cede them to any Power under reserve of the special Conventions which might be concluded between France and the Association with a view to settling the limits and conditions of their respective action. But the Association, wishing to afford a new proof of its friendly feeling towards France, pledges itself to give her the right of preference, if through any unforeseen circumstances the Association were one day led to realise its possessions.

(Signed) “STRAUCH.”

Mons. Jules Ferry, President of the Council, replied in terms which formally pledged France to respect the territories of the Association.

Prince Bismarck continues—

The Berlin
Conference.

“The exchange of views which I have had the honour of holding with your Excellency proves that the two Governments are equally desirous of applying to the navigation of the Congo and the Niger the principles adopted by the Congress of Vienna, with a view to assuring the freedom of navigation of several international rivers, and subsequently applied to the Danube. In order to secure at the same time the regular development of European trade in Africa, it would be useful to arrive at an agreement as to the formalities to be observed with a view to new occupations on the coasts of Africa being regarded as effective. I beg that your Excellency will have the goodness to propose to the Government of the Republic that it should recognise the identity of our views on these points by means of an exchange of notes, and should invite the other Cabinets interested in African commerce to pronounce themselves in a Conference to be convoked to this intent upon the stipulations agreed upon between the two Powers.

(Signed) “VON BISMARCK.”

The French Ambassador, Baron de Courcel, in replying to this communication, states that he has not failed to convey to his Government Prince Bismarck's note, which in substance was similar to the views exchanged between them at Varzin. Also that the French Republic is completely in accord with the Imperial Government of Germany about the desirability of arriving at a mutual understanding respecting the delimitation of territory over the West Coast of Africa, especially where the German possessions border on those of the French. He likewise acknowledges that the friendly accord between the two Governments is connected with principles of the highest importance to trade in Africa, of which the chief are those which must govern the freedom of trade in the basin of the Congo. He also assents to the idea that whereas the African International Association, which has established a number of stations on the

The Berlin
Conference.

Congo, declares itself ready to admit that principle over all the territory under its control, France should grant freedom of trade over that which she now owns, or may hereafter own on the Congo, and that France declares her willingness to permit this freedom to continue in the event of her reaping the benefit of the arrangements touched upon by the Prince, which assures to France the right of preference in case of the alienation of the territories acquired by the Association. He defines freedom of commerce to mean free access to all flags, and the interdiction of all monopoly or differential duties ; but not excluding the establishment of taxes to compensate for useful expenditure incurred in the interests of commerce. While freely extending these beneficial concessions to commercial enterprise in the Congo basin, Baron de Courcel states that France is not willing that Gaboon, Guinea, or Senegal should share them ; but solely the Congo and the Niger. With other views expressed by Prince Bismarck, the French Government we are told, holds identical ideas, and Mons. Jules Ferry acquiesces with the Prince in sending an invitation to the other Cabinets interested in African trade, for the purpose of convening a Conference which shall pronounce upon the respective stipulations mutually agreed upon by France and Germany.

On the 2nd of October Baron de Courcel replies to a letter addressed to him by Prince Bismarck :—

“ My Prince,—I have lost no time in informing my Government of the views expressed in the communication of your Serene Highness, dated

September 30th, respecting the meeting at Berlin of a Conference of the representatives of the different nations interested in the trade of West Africa. The Government of the Republic instructs me to inform you of its acquiescence in your suggestions regarding the date of the opening of the Conference, and the procedure to be followed for the invitation. M. Jules Ferry thinks, like your most Serene Highness, that besides France and Germany, the Powers which ought first of all to take part in this Conference are Great Britain, the Netherlands, Spain, Portugal, Belgium, and the United States of North America. He also concurs in your opinion, that in order to assure the general assent to the resolutions of the Conference, it would be advisable to invite later on all the great Powers and the Scandinavian States to associate themselves with the deliberations.

(Signed) "ALPHONSE DE COURCEL."

Accordingly, invitations were issued to the under-mentioned Governments, and on the 15th of November there were gathered at Berlin the following plenipotentiaries, who were empowered to take part in the Conferences.

For the German Empire and the Kingdom of Prussia .	Otho, Prince de Bismarck, President of the Council of Ministers, and Chancellor of the German Empire. Paul, Count Hatzfeldt, Minister of State and Secretary for Foreign Affairs. Dr. Auguste Buseh, Under Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs. Herr Henri de Kusserow, Counsellor in the Department of Foreign Affairs.
For the Austrian Empire, Kingdom of Bohemia, and of Hungary	Emerie, Count Széchenyi de Sárvári Felső- Videk, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary.
For the Kingdom of Belgium	Gabriel, Count von der Straten Ponthos, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary. August, Baron Lambermont, Minister of State, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.
For the Kingdom of Denmark	Enile de Vind, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.
For the Kingdom of Spain .	Don Francisco Merry y Colom, Count de Benomar, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.

The Berlin Conference.	For the Republic of the United States of North America .	John A. Kasson, Esq., Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary. Henry S. Sanford, Esq., formerly American Minister to Belgium.
	For the Republic of France .	Alphonse Baron de Courcel, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary
	For the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and the Empire of India.	Sir Edward Baldwin Malet, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary.
	For the Kingdom of Italy .	Edward, Count de Launay, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary.
	For the Kingdom of the Netherlands and the Duchy of Luxembourg. . . .	Phillippe Frederic, Jonkheer Van der Hoeven, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.
	For the Kingdom of Portugal and the Algarves. . . .	Senhõr da Serra Gomes, Marquis de Penafiel, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary. Senhõr Antoine Serpa de Pimentel, Counsellor of State.
	For the Empire of all the Russias.	Pierre, Count Kapnist, Privy Counsellor, Envoy Extraordinary, and Minister Plenipotentiary to the King of the Netherlands.
	For the Kingdom of Sweden and Norway.	Gillis, Baron Bildt, Lieut.-General, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.
	For the Empire of the Ottomans.	Méhemed Saïd Pacha, Vizier and High Dignitary, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary.

In the suite and attached to these high and puissant functionaries were the various delegates and experts who were either appointed by their respective Governments or by the Plenipotentiaries themselves.

With the German Representatives .	Herr Adolphe Woerman.
„ French Ambassador . . .	Mons. Dubuisson. Mons. Engelhardt. Dr. Ballay.
„ British Ambassador . . .	Hon. Robert H. Meade. Henry Percy Anderson, Esq. Mr. Hemming. Mr. W. E. Crowe.
„ Italian Ambassador . . .	Count Christoforo Negri. Senator Montegazza.

With the Spanish Ambassador . .	Col. Coello y Dusada, President of the Spanish African Society.	The Berlin Conference.
„ Dutch Ambassador . .	A. D. Bloeme, Esq., of Banana Point, Congo River.	
„ Portuguese Representatives	Senhôr Luciano Cordeiro. Capt. Carlos du Bocagé.	
„ Belgian Ambassador . .	Col. Strauch. Mons. Emile Banning.	
„ American Plenipotentiaries	The Author, as Technical Adviser.	

The secretaries of the Conference were Mons. Raindre, of the French Embassy, Count Wm. Bismarck, and Vice-Consul Dr. Schmidt.

The sittings were held in the German Chancellor's palace on Wilhelmstrasse, in the same room where the Berlin Congress sat in 1878.

When the members of the Conference had assembled, the afternoon of the 15th of November, Prince Bismarck rose to formally open it, and in his short address he declared that the Conference had met for the solution of three main objects, namely :—

1. The free navigation, with freedom of trade, on the River Congo.

2. The free navigation of the River Niger.

3. The formalities to be observed for valid annexation of territory in future on the African continent.

Sir Edward Malet replied, that while he echoed the philanthropic sentiments of the Prince, and accepted the above three points for discussion, his Government was willing to see the principles of Free Trade applied to the Niger, but stipulated that the surveillance over the execution of those principles should not be conceded to any international body, as that was the duty and privilege of Great Britain, being the chief

The Berlin
Conference.

if not the sole proprietary Power on the Lower Niger.

In order to make a consecutive narrative of the principal events connected with the sittings, I append a brief diary of the events which led to the final act.*

November 19th.—Portugal declares its acceptance of the principle of freedom of commerce.

Count de Launay declared his adhesion to the principles of Free Trade and navigation.

The American Minister makes a speech in harmony with the principles for which the Conference has been invoked; is complimentary to the author, and informs his colleagues that the author has been appointed technical delegate for the United States.

A Commission is to be appointed to consider the boundaries and the extent of the territories in Western Africa in which Free Trade is to be established.

The plenipotentiaries are entertained at dinner by Count Hatzfeldt, Secretary of Foreign Affairs.

November 20th.—A Commission composed of the plenipotentiaries and delegates considered the definition of the Congo basin. There was a curious reluctance to speak, as though there was some grand scheme of State policy involved. Finally Mons. Banning briefly stated that the Congo basin signified the area of land drained by the river. Colonel Strauch acquiesced in Mons. Banning's remarks. I being next on the roll of delegates was asked, and replied at length (see

* See Appendix.

Appendix), arguing for a broad commercial delta The Berlin Conference. 380 miles wide to a free commercial basin, that is, from the mouth of the Loge river to $2^{\circ} 30'$ S. Lat., and also suggested, quite unexpectedly to the members, that it would be wise to extend the same liberty for trade across Africa to within one degree from the sea-coast from N. Lat. 5° to and inclusive of the lower Zambezi. Mr. Anderson, of the English Foreign Office, endorsed my remarks about the breadth of the free outlet to the commercial basin of the Congo. Mons. de Bloeme, on the part of Holland, also warmly supported the proposition. The Portuguese delegates proposed to narrow the outlet solely to the river-mouth. Dr. Ballay argued that the outlet to the commercial basin should be restricted to the affluents flowing to the Congo below Stanley Pool, which near the mouth would be only twenty miles wide.

November 24th.—The Commission finally accepts the definition of the free littoral or *débouchure* of the commercial basin as proposed by Mr. Anderson, M. de Bloeme and myself, and agreed that the same freedom of commerce should be extended east as far as the Indian Ocean, with due reserve to the rights of suzerainty now existing along the Oriental coast.

Mons. de Bloeme delivered an interesting speech respecting the Dutch commerce on the Congo, and Herr Woerman gave evidence as to the character and extent of the trade on the West Coast.

This evening I dined with Prince Bismarck. I am

The Berlin
Conference.

glad to have seen the grand man, but I am still more rejoiced to discover that the grandeur to which he has attained is due solely to his honesty, resolution, and clear-eyed common-sense, unalloyed by any one grain of cant or false sentiment.

November 30th.—An unanimous decision was arrived at in favour of freedom of trade throughout the newly-defined Congo basin (see Appendix for the Declaration).

I made a speech about the religious and missionary enterprise in the Congo basin.

December 3rd.—The special sub-committee continued its deliberations for the *Actes de Navigation*. The day before Sir E. Malet, on the part of England, declared that “Great Britain engages herself to protect merchants and foreigners of all nations engaging in commerce in those portions of the course of the Niger which are or will be under its sovereignty or its protectorate equally as if they were its own subjects, provided always that these merchants conform to the regulations which are or will be established in terms of that which precedes.”

Mr. Wm. H. Tisdell, appointed by the United States Government, has just set out for the Congo to report upon the advantages to American trade.

December 13th.—The Grand Committee of the Conference approved the Congo and Niger Acts of Navigation.

December 17th.—On the 8th of November Germany recognised the International Association, and to-day Sir Edward Malet, on behalf of Great Britain, followed

her example on conditions nearly similar to those of Germany. The question of delimitation of course is not touched upon until some agreement has been arrived at with France and Portugal. The Berlin Conference.

December 18th.—There was a full meeting of the plenipotentiaries to-day, at which the *Actes de Navigation* for both Niger and Congo were approved.

December 19th.—Italy signed the Convention with Colonel Strauch to-day, recognising the International Association.

A scheme was brought out at the Conference for the enforcement of temperance on the Congo by Italy, but it was strenuously opposed by Germany and Holland. Baron de Courcel produced a counter-motion, which is more likely to be accepted.

December 22nd.—The Commission discussed and approved the "motion" on liquor traffic.

December 23rd.—The Conference accepted the approval of the Commission regarding the liquor traffic, but added that measures taken to prevent its abuse shall not be taken as a breach of the Free Trade principles already accepted; after which an adjournment until the 5th of January was agreed to.

December 24th.—Austria recognised the flag of the International Association as that of a friendly State in terms similar to those of Germany, with reserving clauses respecting Consular jurisdiction like those of England and Italy.

The diplomatic agents of the Association are at work in Paris about a treaty with France.

The Berlin
Conference.

January 5th, 1885.—The Conference resumed its labours to-day, and discussed the propositions relating to the slave trade tendered by Sir E. B. Malet and Mr. John A. Kasson. As recast, these embody both proposals, and will form a separate declaration.

January 6th.—The plenipotentiaries received at a Conference held this day the draft Declaration relating to the formalities to be observed when taking possession of new territory on the coasts of Africa. It enjoins the necessity of a simultaneous notification to all the other signatory Powers to obtain recognition, and to make possession valid, and recognises the obligations of such annexing powers to establish and maintain a jurisdiction sufficient to ensure the observance of peace as well as respect for acquired rights, and as the case may be for the conditions under which freedom of trade and of transit shall have been guaranteed.

January 7th.—The Declaration prohibiting slave trade in the Congo basin was adopted by the Conference. It says: "Each of the Powers exercising sovereign rights or influence in the regions forming the conventionally established Congo basin declare that these regions shall not be used as markets or routes of transit for the trade in slaves, no matter of what race. Each of these Powers binds itself to use all the means at its disposal to put an end to this trade, and to punish those engaged in it."

A large assemblage from the Rhine Province and Westphalia honoured me with a banquet to-day, and

listened to my remarks about the advantages offered to commerce in the basin of the Congo. The Berlin Conference.

January 8th.—I lectured to a remarkably enthusiastic audience at Frankfort this evening, on Central Africa, and the benefits likely to accrue to Europe, from the labours of the Conference. A diploma from the oldest established Geographical Society in Germany, and another from Prince Hohenlohe Langenburg, on behalf of the German Colonial Association, were bestowed on me.

January 9th.—I lectured at Wiesbaden to-day, and was honoured with a banquet.

The plenipotentiaries discuss the Declaration respecting formalities, and several days' delay are caused principally through Sir E. Malet not having received definite instructions from the British Foreign Office upon the points mentioned.

January 19th.—Prince Bismarck entertained the plenipotentiaries and delegates at a banquet given at his palace. An interesting feature at these banquets are the elaborate *menus* in fashion illustrating the Congo and African scenery.

January 28th.—After a long delay the third point, which referred to the foundation required on taking possession of a portion of the African coast, in the programme of the West African Conference, was disposed of to-day.

January 31st.—The official report on the regulations to be observed in regard to future annexations was approved at a plenary sitting of the Conference.

The Berlin
Conference.

February 5th.—France concluded a treaty with the International Association to-day at Paris, by which the frontiers between their respective territories are recognised to be as follows: On the north the course of the Chiloango river, thence from its source to near Manyanga, thence the River Congo, upward through the centre of Stanley Pool, and along the Upper Congo as far as and inclusive of the basin of the Likona. The flag of the Association is to be regarded by France as that of a friendly State, and the Government of the Republic is to use its good offices in the effecting an amicable understanding between Portugal and the Association.

February 6th.—Russia formally recognised the Association Internationale du Congo to-day, and signed a Convention with its President.

February 10th.—Sweden recognised the Association to-day, and signed a Convention with it.

February 13th.—The *Acte Generale* was discussed at a meeting of this day's Conference. Mr. Kasson, on behalf of the United States, opposed the proposal to give it the form of a Treaty.

February 14th.—The Commission sat this afternoon to deliberate upon the neutrality question.

February 15th. — A Delimitation Convention has been at last signed between Portugal and the Association, by which the former obtains all the south or left bank of the Congo from the sea as far as the rivulet at Uango-Ango. The line between these territories runs south through the mouth of this rivulet, to the latitude

of Nokki, thence east to the Kwa or Kwango. On the littoral north of the Congo, Portuguese territory begins at the little stream near Cabo Lombo, or Red Point, and thence extends along the sea-coast to Massabé. In depth this territory extends inland about 35 miles, forming an enclavé into that ceded to the Association. The Berlin Conference.

The International Association has obtained through these late Conventions with France and Portugal a strip of sea-coast extending from Banana Point to Cabo Lombo, twenty-two miles in length. All of the north, or right bank, as far as the Cataract of Ntombo Mataka, three miles above Manyanga Station, with back country inland, as far as the Chiloango River. On the south, or left bank, the territory of the Association begins at Uango-Ango rivulet, and ends at Lake Bangweolo. Inland it runs south from the mouth of the Uango-Ango rivulet to the latitude of Nokki, thence east along that parallel to the Kwa or Kwango, thence the line ascends the Kwa to S. lat. 6° , which it follows to the River Lubilash. Ascending the Lubilash, it runs south to the water-parting between the Zambezi and the Congo, which it follows to Lake Bangweolo. From the eastern side of the lake the line runs to Lake Tanganika, and follows its western shore to the Rusizi influent, and up along its course until it touches east long. 30° , as far as the water-parting between the Congo and Nile waters, whence it strikes westward to East long. 17° , and thence along that meridian southward to the Likona Basin.

The Berlin
Conference.

February 19th.—The Commission was engaged this afternoon in deliberating upon the French neutrality proposal.

February 21st.—The neutrality question has been adopted. Baron Lambermont's report on the final Acte was read.

February 23rd.—Belgium has formally recognised the International Association, the Treaty being signed to-day. Denmark has also declared by treaty its recognition of the new State of the Congo.

Dr. Busch, the acting President, communicated to the Conference the fact that nearly all the Powers assembled had concluded Conventions for the recognition of the International Association, and declared not only his personal gratification at the news, but also that the German Government entertained the warmest sympathy with the magnanimous efforts of King Léopold II., which had been so signally crowned with success. The assembled delegates expressed their cordial assent, and on their part recorded in the protocol a similar testimony of their appreciation of the great work of the King of the Belgians. (See Appendix.)

February 26th.—The final plenary sitting of the Conference took place to-day. Prince Bismarck occupied the chair to formally close the meeting of representatives of the Powers whom he had convoked to deliberate upon the important questions now settled.

The final Act, which is engrossed on vellum, was signed by the nineteen plenipotentiaries representing

fourteen European Powers. Prince Bismarck then rose and introduced Colonel Strauch, the President of the International Association, to the members, and announced that he, on behalf of that Association in its recognised quality as the Congo State, had expressed and signed its adhesion to the General Act of the West African Conference. After reviewing the labours of that high diplomatic body, the Prince concluded by thanking the plenipotentiaries in the name of the Emperor.

The Berlin
Conference.

Count de Launay, as *doyen* of the plenipotentiaries, returned the thanks of his illustrious associates, saying that the success of the Conference was in a large measure due to the efforts of the German Chancellor.

My own remarks upon the labours of the Conference must be brief. Two European Powers emerge out of the elaborate discussions protracted for such a long period, principally through the adroitness and skill of Baron de Courcel, and the concurrence of Prince Bismarck, with enormously increased colonial possessions.

France is now mistress of a West African territory, noble in its dimensions, equal to the best tropic lands for its vegetable productions, rich in mineral resources, most promising for its future commercial importance.

In area it covers a superficies of 257,000 square miles, equal to that of France and England combined, with access on the eastern side to 5200 miles of river-navigation; on the West is a coast-line nearly 800 miles

The Berlin
Conference

long, washed by the Atlantic ocean. It contains within its borders eight spacious river basins, and throughout all its broad surface of 90,000,000 square hectares, not one utterly destitute of worth can be found.

Portugal issues out of the Conference with a coast-line 995 English miles in length, 351,500 square statute miles in extent, a territory larger than the combined areas of France, Belgium, Holland, and Great Britain. On the Lower Congo, its river bank is 103 miles in length. It can now boast of healthy pastoral lands to the south, oil and rubber producing forests northward, mineral fields in the north-eastern portion of its territory, and valuable agricultural regions in its eastern borders. If her own population were added to the aboriginal population of this African colonial territory, and distributed over its area, there would still be sufficient to give $32\frac{3}{4}$ acres to each Portuguese white and black subject. Her home and colonial populations of all colours number now 8,300,000. The area of her territories in Africa, Asia, and the oceans, measure 741,343 square miles, or 474,500,000 acres, sufficient to give each subject 57 acres. Great Britain, on the other hand, with all her vast acreage of 5,056 millions of acres, can only give to each of her 249,000,000 of people the small portion of $20\frac{1}{4}$ acres.

The International Association surrendered its claims to 60,366 square miles of territory to France, and to Portugal 45,400 square miles, for which consideration 600 square miles of the north bank between Boma

and the sea were conceded to it, besides cordial recognition of its remaining territorial rights from two powerful neighbours. The Berlin Conference.

To the world at large, the two powers above mentioned have been also duly considerate, for the territories surrendered to them by the Association have been consecrated to free trade, which, along with those recognised as belonging to the Association and which were pre-ordained for such uses, and those as yet unclaimed by any Power, but still reserved for the same privileges, form a domain equal to 1,600,000 square miles in extent, throughout which most exceptional privileges have been secured by the cordial unanimity of the riveraine of the United States and European Powers for commerce. With due reserve for the sovereign rights of Portugal and Zanzibar, this Free Trade area extends across Africa to within one degree of the East Coast, thus enlarging the privileged commercial zone to 2,400,000 square miles.

Cynics may declare, on glancing over the large mileage proudly claimed to have been reserved for free development and trade, that the advantages are only prospective; that there are no traders within the boundaries to be benefited by these liberal endowments. That is true enough; but the absorption of Africa by European Powers was rapidly advancing, and considering that of the coasts there remained but little unoccupied, it is something surely to have rescued such a large portion of Africa from final closure to possible commercial enterprise.

The Berlin
Conference.

Philanthropists argued very rationally in this wise: "Africa is already popularly supposed to be the most unhealthy continent in the world. A general dread of its climate prevails in the minds of men. It has been but lately explored in its interior, and to all except a few geographers it is comparatively unknown. If European Powers are permitted to seize the coasts round about the Continent, and levy the usual differential customs and high tariffs, they will for ever prevent commercial enterprise from essaying the exploitation of any part of it. If, however, we can guarantee these fertile and naturally productive territories larger privileges and absolute immunity from oppression, a few bold enterprising spirits may be tempted to venture inland, and their success will induce others to follow, until the continent is fairly won from barbarism and unproductiveness."

These philanthropic views have been realised. The merchant adventurer is fenced all around with guarantees against spoliation, oppression, vexation, and worry, and his Consul, the representative of his Government, is charged with the jurisdiction over his person and property. At the gateway to the free commercial realm the Commissioner, with his colleagues, will take position, and will remain there close at hand to protect his interests. These officials will constitute a Court of Law called the International Commission, to whom he can always appeal for redress and protection. Only on the exportation of the produce he has collected can a moderate sum be charged, sufficient to remune-

rate the riveraine Government for its expenditure. The liquor traffic may not be abused; slave-trading is prohibited; the missionary is entitled to special protection; and scientific expeditions to special privileges. To all these numerous privileges in behalf of commerce and humanity, the European Powers, and the United States, as well as the International Association, otherwise the Congo State, unanimously gave their approval, and every political Power left the Conference with unqualified satisfaction. The Berlin Conference.

The author of this record likewise feels called upon to express his unbounded satisfaction with all that has been irrevocably fixed by the decrees of the assembled representatives of Europe. He expresses also his personal thanks to His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck, and to the German representatives, Dr. Busch and Herr von Kusserow, for the remarkable patience they manifested during the protracted sitting, which gave time for the most advanced ideas to mature and bear fruit, which the least impatience would have endangered; to Baron de Courcel, for the exquisite tact he displayed throughout his Presidency of the Commission, which charmed all who came within his circle; to each and all of the assembled plenipotentiaries for their many kindnesses and their enlightened co-operation. All men who sympathise with good and noble works—and this has been one of unparalleled munificence and grandeur of ideas—will unite with the author in hoping that King Léopold II., the Royal Founder of this unique humanitarian and political enterprise, whose wisdom

The Berlin
Conference.

rightly guided it, and whose moral courage bravely sustained it amid varying vicissitudes to a happy and a successful issue, will long live to behold his Free State expand and flourish to be a fruitful blessing to a region that was until lately as dark as its own deep sunless forest shades.

FINIS CORONAT OPUS.

APPENDIX.

THE COMMERCIAL BASIN OF THE CONGO, AS DESCRIBED BY THE AUTHOR BEFORE THE BERLIN CONFERENCE.

To define the geographical basin of the Congo, whether explored or unexplored, is a very easy matter, since every schoolboy knows that a river basin—geographically speaking—includes all that territory drained by the river and its affluents, large and small. The Congo, unlike many other large rivers, has no fluvial delta; it issues into the Atlantic Ocean in one united stream between Shark's Point on the south and Banana Point on the north, with a breadth of seven miles and an unknown depth; soundings having been obtained over 1300 feet deep. The Niger has a fluvial delta extending over 180 miles of coast-line; the Nile and the Mississippi have deltas extending over a considerable breadth of coast-line. But when you ask me as to what I should consider as the commercial basin of the Congo, I am bound to answer you that the main river and its most important affluents running into it from the north and south and from the north-east and north-west, east and west, south-east and south-west, constitute means by which trade ascending the river and its affluents can influence a much larger amount of territory than is comprised within the geographical basin. The Berlin Conference.

For all practical purposes the geographical basin of the Congo might be permitted to stand for the commercial basin of the Congo as well. When, however, we begin to consider the commercial outlets from this basin of the Congo, we must bear in mind that they extend, as a commercial delta to a commercial basin, from St. Paul de Loanda to the south of the mouth of the Congo, as far north and including the Ogowai River. Whereas

The Berlin
Conference.

much of the littoral through which the commercial delta debouches is already occupied, we find that the breadth of what may be considered as the free commercial delta of the commercial basin of the Congo extends along the coast-line from $1^{\circ} 25'$ S. lat. to near $7^{\circ} 50'$ S. lat., 385 geographical miles. For the following reason: at Stanley Pool, 325 miles up the Congo from the sea, we encounter fleets of trading canoes which have descended the main river from as far up as the Equator from the affluents Mohindu or Black River, and the Kwango or Kwa, who wait patiently months at a time for the caravans from Loango, the Kwilu, Landana, Kabinda, Zombo, Funta, Kinzao, Kinsembo, Ambrizette, and other places on the coast, which bring European goods from the coast to Stanley Pool to exchange for the produce of the Upper Congo, notably ivory, rubber, and camwood powder; and after a time, having exchanged their goods, march back with such produce of the Upper Congo as will repay transport, to the European traders settled along the free coast-line of 385 geographical miles just mentioned. These various channels of trade, formed by uninstructed barbarism, may then well be compared to a commercial delta. To define the commercial basin of the Congo by boundaries is very simple after the above remarks, and I will describe them as follows: Commencing from the Atlantic Ocean, I should follow the line of $1^{\circ} 25'$ S. lat. east as far as $13^{\circ} 13'$ lon. east of Greenwich, and along that meridian north until the watershed of the Niger-Binué is reached, thence easterly along the watershed separating the waters flowing into the Congo from those flowing into the Shari, and continuing east along the water-parting between the waters of the Congo and those of the Nile, and southerly and easterly along the watershed between the waters flowing into the Tanganika and those flowing into the affluents of Lake Victoria, and still clinging to the watershed to the east of the Tanganika southerly until the water-parting between the waters flowing into the Zambesi and those flowing into the Congo is reached; thence along that watershed westerly until the head waters of the main tributary of the Kwango, or Kwa, is reached, whence the line shown runs along the left bank of the river Kwango, or Kwa, to $7^{\circ} 50'$ S. lat.; thence straight to the Loge River, and thence along the left bank of that river westerly to the Atlantic Ocean. By this delimitation you will have comprised the geographical or commercial basin and its present commercial delta.

Baron de Courcel asked what might the value of the trade in

the Congo basin be estimated at, to which Mr. Stanley replied : The Berlin Conference.
 “The Lower Congo and the immediate free littoral make a shore-line 388 English miles in length. This mileage produces a present trade of £2,800,000 annually. The Upper Congo is much more fertile, and, as it has a river shore of 10,000 miles, it ought to produce, if equally developed, a trade worth £70,000,000 annually. Or, if we reckon it in this manner, from the river Gambia to Loanda, along a coast-line of 2,900 miles in length, there are employed forty-five steamers and eighty sailing vessels every year. The Congo basin, with river banks over three times longer, ought to employ, if equally developed and equally exploited, three times that number, or say 135 steamers, and 240 sailing vessels.”

The Hon. Mr. Kasson, Minister for the United States, asked Mr. Stanley if he would be good enough to explain to their Excellencies if a further extension of the free commercial territory to the eastward would not be advantageous to commerce, to which Mr. Stanley replied: I journeyed in the year, 1874, 1875, 1876, and 1877 across Africa from east to west—that is to say from Bagamoyo, opposite Zanzibar, to Lake Victoria. I circumnavigated that lake, and thence proceeded west and discovered Muta-Nzige. Retracing my steps to Lake Victoria, I journeyed to Lake Tanganika, which lake I also circumnavigated, and then proceeded to Nyangwé and down the Congo River to the Atlantic Ocean. This journey was made across 25° of longitude and up and down 11° of latitude; and I declare solemnly to you that, from a distance of ten miles from Bagamoyo, my starting-place on the east coast of Africa, until I sighted an English flag at the mast-head of a merchant river-steamer on the Congo, along a journey of 7600 miles, I never saw a flag, or an emblem, or symbol, flag-staff, erection of wood, stone, or iron, to indicate that I had come across civilised, or semi-civilised, power or authority; the authority I encountered everywhere being the authority of independent native chiefs, exacting tribute on the eastern half, and opposing violence on the western half. At Ujiji and Nyangwé I did meet a trading community of Arabs settled at each place. But they were isolated and cut off by want of connection from their parent state at Zanzibar, and all comers hither had been compelled to submit to pay tribute to the Wagogo, the Wahha, the Wavinza, and the Wakaranga, independent native tribes who demanded the tribute in recognition of their rights to the soil over which the caravans passed. Therefore, this being the case, I would propose

The Berlin
Conference.

that the free commercial territory across central Africa should be comprised within the following limits: Beginning at the Atlantic Ocean at S. latitude $1^{\circ} 25'$, this line should run along that parallel east to longitude $13^{\circ} 30'$ from the Greenwich meridian, thence north along the meridian of $13^{\circ} 30'$ to N. latitude 5° ; thence along that parallel of latitude continuously east to within one geographical degree from the Indian Ocean. From this point the line should continue parallel with the east African coast at the distance of one geographical degree down to the right bank of the Zambesi, and the following rivers piercing this eastern line and having their exit into the Indian Ocean: The Jub, the Tana, the Pangani, the Wami, the Rufiji, or Lufiji, the Rovuma, and the Zambesi—the latter as far up as five miles above the confluence of the Shiré and the Zambesi should be declared free to navigation; thence from that point on the right bank of the Zambesi, across that river and along the water passing between waters flowing to Lake Nyassa, and those flowing direct to other affluents of the Zambesi, northerly as far as the Congo and Zambesi watershed; thence westerly along that watershed until the head waters of the Kwango or Kwa shall have been reached, whence the line shall follow the left bank of the principal tributary to S. latitude $7^{\circ} 50'$, and from that point the line to extend westward of the Loge river, and following the left bank of that river westerly to the Atlantic Ocean. Within the above described limits, the Congo basin, in addition to the lacustrine basins of the Lakes Victoria, Albert, and Nyassa, and the river basins of the lower Jub, the Tana, the Pangani, the Wami, the Lufi, the Rufiji, and the Rovuma, are comprised; and I respectfully submit that the more unrestricted this spacious commercial domain shall be the sooner it will be subjected to the influences of Christianity, civilisation, and commerce. It bears within itself nearly all the products required by the necessities of Europe, and all the elements that might be needed for its conversion from being an unproductive waste to be a material and moral profit to humanity. Within its bosom it contains nearly 80,000 square miles of lake water, the second largest river and river-basin in the world, fertility that no equatorial or tropical regions elsewhere can match, a population I should estimate at ninety millions of people, great independent native empires, kingdoms, and republics, like Uganda, Ruanda, Unyoro, and the pastoral plain country like the Masai Land; gold and silver deposits, abundant copper and iron mines, valuable forests producing priceless timber,

inexhaustible quantities of rubber, precious gums and spices, pepper and coffee, cattle in countless herds, and people who are amenable to the courtesies of life provided they are protected from the attacks of the lawless freebooter and the murderous wiles of the slave-traders. These facts, I respectfully submit, are sufficient to justify me in suggesting that the more comprehensible yet simple limits just described should form the boundaries of the free commercial territory of Equatorial Africa, and that free, unrestricted means of access should be secured to it, both from the east as well as from the west. The Berlin Conference.

Baron de Courcel questioned Mr. Stanley as to the actual trade at present in the Upper Congo by which it might be known what existing inducements there were for the construction of a railway. Mr. Stanley replied that at present on the Upper Congo, according to his calculations, the goods and articles required by the French settlements, the two English Mission Societies, the International Association, and native caravans would, if constrained to pay the railway the same prices as now paid for human transport, be sufficient to pay 5 per cent. on a capital of £860,000, which was ample for the construction of a light railway from Vivi to Isangila, four steamers at £10,000 each, between Isangila and Manyanga, and a railway section 95 miles long between Manyanga and Léopoldville. If, however, it was necessary to construct a direct line to Léopoldville from Vivi, the cost would be £1,500,000, inclusive of all expenses, and a flotilla to ply between the sea and Vivi.

Sir Edward Malet asked Mr. Stanley if, in his opinion, the line of railway from Vivi to Stanley Pool would be sufficient as a commercial outlet for the commerce of the Congo basin? Mr. Stanley replied: Certainly not. It might be a sufficient outlet for the main channel of the river and the lower portions of the affluents flowing into that channel, but it would not be a sufficient outlet for the upper portions of the southern affluents, inasmuch as those find an outlet by the caravan route, *viâ* Bihé to Benguela and Angola, and Cassangé to Angola, and the northern portions of the north-western streams flowing into the Congo would naturally seek the caravan routes to the Gaboon, the Ogowai, and the Kwilu-Niadi. I therefore strictly adhere to my delimitation of the commercial basin which I have already had the honour of describing to your Excellency.

His Excellency the Plenipotentiary for the Government of the Netherlands remarked that Mr. Cameron had written a book wherein it was stated that canals might be constructed with advantage.

The Berlin
Conference.

He would be obliged if Mr. Stanley would inform him whether he had seen any localities where canals might be advantageously constructed. Mr. Stanley replied that he knew only of one place, and that was between Lake Mantumba and Lake Léopold II., by which a canal might easily be constructed, of a length of 25 miles, to connect the two places along a depression which showed that at high water it was possible the two lakes might even be now connected.

Baron de Courcel inquired whether there were any tunnels to be made along the proposed railway between Vivi and Stanley Pool? Mr. Stanley replied in the negative.

After some remarks from Dr. Ballay depreciatory of the value of the produce of the Congo basin, and of the Ogowai river as a channel for transporting produce from the upper Congo to the sea, Mr. Stanley replied as follows: Whereas Dr. Ballay ascended the Ogowai river, crossed the watershed, and descended the Alima river to the Upper Congo with a steamer and large quantities of goods, and whereas M. de Brazza likewise ascended the Ogowai river and descended the Alima river, and on a former occasion struck across to Stanley Pool, it is evident that the Ogowai river must also be considered as a stream belonging to the commercial delta of the commercial basin of the Congo. And whereas in 1881 I received from M. de Brazza a letter wherein he stated that he strongly recommended my sending by the Ogowai route my letters, and officers incapacitated by sickness from further work, as from experience he judged that route to be shorter and superior to the route by the Congo to the sea, I am bound to take M. de Brazza's own written statements, and Messrs. de Brazza and Ballay's successes by the Ogowai-Alima route and Ogowai-Stanley Pool route as indisputable proofs of the correctness of my assertions that if the commercial basin of the Congo, with its various outlets to the sea, shall be declared free for commerce to come and go untaxed, the free littoral should have its northern limit at S. lat. $1^{\circ} 25'$ to long. $13^{\circ} 30'$ east of Greenwich, and thence north along that meridian to the water-parting between the waters flowing to the Niger-Binué and those flowing to the Congo, and that the southern limit of the littoral will be just if fixed at the mouth of the Loge river, thence east along that river easterly to the left bank of the Kwango or Kwa river at S. lat. $7^{\circ} 50'$.

PROTOCOL, No. 9.

February 23rd, 1885.

THE sitting opened at half-past Three o'clock, under the Presidency of M. BUSCH. The Berlin Conference.

The President, before proceeding to the order of the day, communicated to the High Assembly a letter which had been addressed to His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck by the President of the International Association of the Congo, and which was in these terms:—

“PRINCE.—The International Association of the Congo has concluded treaties in succession with all the Powers represented at the Berlin Conference (except one) which among their clauses contain a provision recognising its flag as that of a friendly State or Government. The negotiations in progress with the remaining Power will, there is every reason to hope, have an early and favourable termination. I bring this fact to the knowledge of your Serene Highness in accordance with the wishes of His Majesty the King of the Belgians in his capacity as Founder of the Association.

“The meeting and the deliberations of the eminent Assembly now in session at Berlin under your High Presidency have materially contributed to hasten this felicitous result. The Conference, to which I beg to offer due homage, will, I venture to hope, be disposed to consider the accession of a Power whose exclusive mission is to introduce civilisation and commerce into the interior of Africa as an additional token of the results due to its important labours.

“I am, with the profoundest respect,

“Your Serene Highness's most humble and
most obedient servant,

“STRAUCH.

“BERLIN, 23rd February, 1885.

“To His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck,

“President of the Berlin Conference.”

The Berlin
Conference.

M. BUSCH having read this communication spoke as follows:—

“Gentlemen,—I believe I am expressing the unanimous feeling of the Conference in welcoming as a happy event the communication which has been made to us and which informs us of the almost unanimous recognition of the International Association of the Congo. We all of us do justice to the elevated purpose of the work to which His Majesty the King of the Belgians has lent his name; we all of us recognise the efforts and sacrifices by means of which he has guided it to the point it has reached to-day; we are all desirous that the most complete success may crown an enterprise which can support so usefully the objects the Conference has had in view.”

Baron de COURCEL then spoke as follows:—

“As representing a Power whose possessions border on those of the International Association of the Congo, I note with satisfaction the step taken by that Association in informing us of its entrance into international life. In the name of my Government I beg to express the wish that the State of the Congo as now territorially constituted within definite boundaries will soon provide regular governmental organization for the vast domain whose prosperity has been entrusted to it. Its neighbours will be the first to rejoice at its progress, for they will be the first to profit by the development of its prosperity and by all those guarantees of order, safety, and good administration with which it has undertaken to endow the interior of Africa.

“The new State owes its birth to the generous aspirations and enlightened initiative of a Prince respected throughout Europe. It has been devoted from its cradle to the practice of every liberty. Assured of the unanimous goodwill of the Powers here represented, let us join in the hope that it will fulfil the destiny promised for it under the wise direction of its august founder, whose controlling influence is the best assurance for its future.”

Count KAPNIST desired to join, in accordance with his instructions, in the homage rendered by his colleagues to the enlightened and fertile initiative of His Majesty the King of the Belgians.

Sir EDWARD MALET then spoke as follows:—

“The part taken by Her Majesty’s Government in recognising the flag of the Association as that of a friendly Government enables me to express the satisfaction with which we view the constitution of this new State due to the initiative of His Majesty the King of the Belgians. For many years the King, for purely philanthropic motives, has spared nothing, neither personal effort

1885.
Feb. 23.
Berlin.

nor pecuniary sacrifice, that could contribute to the realisation of his object. The world in general regarded his efforts with indifference. Here and there His Majesty received a little sympathy, but it was rather the sympathy of condolence than that of encouragement. It was thought that the undertaking was beyond his strength, that it was too great to succeed. It is now seen that the King was right, and that his idea was not Utopian. He has brought it to a successful ending, not without difficulties, but these very difficulties have made the success more striking. In acknowledging the obstacles which His Majesty has had to contend with, we most cordially greet the new-born State, and give expression to our sincere desire that it may flourish and increase under his protection.

“I may also be permitted on this occasion to express our acknowledgments to the Government of Portugal and to the Minister of Portugal at Berlin for the friendly reception which they accorded to the suggestions we had the honour to address to them on the subject of an arrangement between Portugal and the Association, and for the spirit of conciliation with which they have brought those negotiations to a successful close.”

The Marquis of PENAFIEL, as representing a Power bordering on the Congo State, declared his participation in the sentiments expressed by Baron Courcel in his address of welcome to the new State.

Count de LAUNAY joined most cordially in what had been said by the President, by Baron Courcel, and by Sir Edward Malet. The Powers here represented had already almost unanimously recognised the new State which had just been founded under the august patronage of a sovereign who during eight years, with a constancy rare and worthy of great praise, had spared neither trouble nor personal sacrifice for the success of a noble and philanthropic enterprise. The whole world bore witness by its sympathy and encouragement to this work of civilisation and humanity, which was an honour to the nineteenth century, and of which mankind in general would for ever reap the benefit.

The ITALIAN AMBASSADOR also joined with pleasure in the sentiments expressed by the British Ambassador, with regard to the Portuguese Government and its Plenipotentiaries at the Conference.

Count SZÉCHÉNYI spoke to the same effect as his colleagues, in whose sentiments he shared in every respect.

Count BENOMAR said that Spain was the possessor of territories

1885.
Feb. 23.
Berlin.

in the neighbourhood of those under the control of the International Association of the Congo. As representing a neighbouring state, he, in the name of his Government, fully supported all that the President had said in favour of the work of humanity and civilisation originated by His Majesty the King of the Belgians.

M. de VIND was happy to join in the good wishes which had already been expressed for the happiness and prosperity of the new Congo state. The humanitarian and civilizing object of its founders was highly appreciated by the Danish Government.

The PLENIPOTENTIARY of SWEDEN AND NORWAY also joined in the good wishes at the birth of the new State, and in favour of its development.

Mr. SANFORD said that the Government of the United States of America had been the first to publicly acknowledge the great civilizing work of King Leopold II. by recognising the flag of the International Association of the Congo as that of a friendly government. He was happy to find that this example had been followed by the Powers of the Old World, and it only remained for him to express his hope that he would see the crowning of the work in the participation of the Association in the Acts of the Conference.

SAID PASHA regretted that he was not yet able to join officially in the sympathetic declarations of his colleagues. Only a few days had elapsed since this question of recognising the flag of the International Association had arisen. There had not been sufficient time for him to receive his instructions on the subject, but while awaiting those instructions, he could say that personally he had no objection to the constitution of the new State.

Count VAN DER STRATEN PONTHOZ thanked the President for the terms in which he had spoken of His Majesty the King of the Belgians. The sentiments thus expressed would be gratefully received by the King and the Belgian nation; and Count Van der Straten Ponthoz would convey those sentiments to them without delay. He was also bound to tell the Members of the High Assembly how deeply he was sensible of the sympathetic and unanimous approbation they had given to what had fallen from M. Busch. The praise bestowed on the initiative pursued by the King of the Belgians despite so many obstacles, was praise well merited. The Acts of the Conference gave practical expression to His Majesty's bold and generous ideas. The Government and the Belgian nation would adhere with gratitude to the work elaborated by the High Assembly, and thanks to which there was henceforth

assured the existence of the new State at the same time as regulations were laid down in the general interest of mankind.

Baron LAMBERMONT spoke as follows :—

“ If the President of the International Association of the Congo had the honour to sit amongst you, it would fall to him to reply to the words we have heard to-day, and which are so appreciative of the King of the Belgians and of his work. In his absence, and although representing His Majesty under another title, my colleague and I thought we might be allowed to testify how fully we are sensible of the compliment you have paid to the Founder of the Association.

“ Count Van der Straten has expressed his sentiments, and in them I cordially join. We are well aware that we cannot go too far in expressing in advance our gratitude, for we do so in His Majesty's name, in recognition of the support that his enterprise has received amongst you, and which support is not the least important guarantee of its success.”

The President announces that the letter of the President of the International Association of the Congo, and the various declarations it had given rise to would become the Protocol of the sitting. It is considered convenient by many of the Plenipotentiaries that in order to complete Colonel Strauch's communication, copies of the different treaties by which the International Association had obtained the recognition of the several Governments should be bound together and annexed to the Protocol.

DECLARATIONS

EXCHANGED BETWEEN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA AND THE
INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF THE CONGO.

The International Association of the Congo declares by these presents, that in virtue of the treaties concluded with the legitimate sovereigns, in the basins of the Congo and Niadi-Kwilu and in the territories bordering on the Atlantic, there has been ceded to it a territory for the use and profit of the Free States, already established, or in course of establishment, under the protection and surveillance of the said Association in the said basins and adjacent territories, and that the said Free States succeed to the full rights of this session.

That the said International Association has adopted as its flag as

1885.
Feb. 23.
Berlin.

1884.
April 22.
Washing-
ton.

well for itself as for the said Free States the flag of the International African Association, that is to say, a blue flag with a golden star in the centre.

That the said Association and the said States have resolved to levy no customs dues on goods or products imported into their territories, or carried on the roads that have been constructed round the cataracts of the Congo; this resolution has been taken so as to encourage trade in making its way into Equatorial Africa.

That they assure to strangers who settle in their territories the right to buy, sell, or lease the lands and buildings therein situated, to establish houses of business, and to trade on the sole condition of obeying the laws. They undertake in addition never to accord an advantage to the citizens of one nation without immediately extending the same to all other nations, and to do all in their power to stop the slave-trade.

In witness whereof, Henry S. Sanford, duly authorised to that effect by the said Association, acting for it, and in the name of the said estates has hereto affixed his signature and his seal the 22nd of April, 1884, at the city of Washington,

(Signed) H. S. SANFORD.

L.S.

FREDERIC T. FRELINGHUYSEN, Secretary of State, duly authorized to that effect by the President of the United States of America, and in conformity with the advice and consent given to that effect by the Senate, acknowledges to have received from the Association of the Congo the above declaration, and declares that in accordance with the traditional policy of the United States, which enjoins their careful attention to the commercial interests of American citizens, avoiding at the same time all interference in the controversies engaged in between other powers, or the conclusion of alliances with foreign nations, the Government of the United States declares its sympathy with and approbation of the humane and noble object of the International Association of the Congo, acting in the interest of the Free States established in that region, and commands all officers of the United States, either on land or sea, to recognize the flag of the International Association as that of a friendly Government.

In witness whereof, he has hereunder affixed his signature and his seal this 22nd of April, 1884, in the city of Washington.

(Signed) FRED. T. FRELINGHUYSEN.

L.S.

1884.
Nov. 8.
Brussels.

CONVENTION

BETWEEN THE EMPIRE OF GERMANY AND THE INTERNATIONAL
ASSOCIATION OF THE CONGO.

ARTICLE I.

The International Association of the Congo undertakes to levy no duties on articles or goods imported direct or in transit in their possessions, present and future, in the basins of the Congo and the Niadi-Kwilu, or in its possessions situated on the coast of the Atlantic Ocean. This freedom from duties shall especially extend to goods and articles of commerce which are transported on the roads established round the cataracts of the Congo.

ARTICLE II.

The subjects of the German Empire shall have the right of residing or settling in the territories of the Association. They shall be treated on the same footing as the subjects of the most favoured nation therein, including the inhabitants of the country, in all that concerns the protection of their persons or their goods, the free exercise of their religion, the claiming and defence of their rights, in matters of the navigation as well as in those of commerce and industry.

Especially they shall have the right to buy and sell, and lease lands and buildings situated on the territories of the Association, to found houses of business, and to engage therein in commerce and coasting trade under the German flag.

ARTICLE III.

The Association undertakes never to accord the least advantage to the subjects of another nation, unless such advantage is immediately extended to German subjects.

ARTICLE IV.

In case of the present or future cession of the territory of the Association or of a part of that territory, the obligations contracted by the Association towards the Empire of Germany shall be trans-

1884.
Nov. 8.
Bruesels: ferred to the acquirer. These obligations and rights granted by the Association to the Empire of Germany and to its subjects shall remain in force after every cession to each new acquirer.

ARTICLE V.

The Empire of Germany recognises the flag of the Association—a blue flag with a golden star in the centre—as that of a friendly state.

ARTICLE VI.

The Empire of Germany is ready on its part to recognise the frontiers of the territory of the Association, and of the new state about to be founded, as indicated on the map annexed hereto.

ARTICLE VII.

This Convention shall be ratified, and the ratifications shall be exchanged with the least possible delay. This Convention shall come into force immediately after the exchange of the ratifications. Done at Brussels, the 8th of November, 1884.

(Signed) COUNT DE BRANDENBOURG.
STRAUCH.

DECLARATIONS

EXCHANGED BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT OF HER BRITANNIC MAJESTY
AND THE INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF THE CONGO.

DECLARATION OF THE ASSOCIATION.

The International Association of the Congo, founded by His Majesty the King of the Belgians with the object of encouraging the civilization and commerce of Africa and also with humanitarian and philanthropic intentions, declares by these presents as follows:—

1. That by treaties concluded with the legitimate sovereigns whose States are situated in the basins of the Congo and the Niadi-Kwilu, and in the territories bordering on the Atlantic, there has been ceded to it certain territories for the use and profit of Free States established or to be established in the said basins and adjacent territories.

2. That in virtue of these treaties, the Association is invested with the administration of the interests of the said Free States.

1884
Nov. 8.
Brussels.

3. That the Association has adopted as its flag and that of the Free States a blue flag with a golden star in the centre.

4. That with the object of allowing commerce to make its way into Equatorial Africa, the Association and the said Free States have resolved to levy no duty on articles of commerce or merchandize imported direct into their territories, or introduced by the roads which have been constructed round the cataracts of the Congo.

5. That the Association and the said Free States guarantee to foreigners settled in their territories the free exercise of their religion, the rights of navigation, trade, and industry, as well as the right to buy, sell, and lease land, buildings, mines and forests on condition of obedience to the laws.

6. That the Association and the said Free States shall do all in their power to put an end to the slave trade and suppress slavery. Done at Berlin, the 16th of December, 1884.

(Signed) STRAUCH.

In the name of the Association.

DECLARATION OF THE GOVERNMENT OF HER BRITANNIC MAJESTY.

The Government of Her Britannic Majesty declares that it accords its sympathy and approbation to the humanitarian and philanthropic objects of the Association and, by these presents, recognises the flag of the Association and the Free States under its administration as the flag of a friendly Government.

(Signed) EDWARD MAIET.

In the name of Her Majesty's Government.

CONVENTION

BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT OF HER BRITANNIC MAJESTY AND THE
INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF THE CONGO.

Seeing that the Government of Her Britannic Majesty has recognised the flag of the International Association of the Congo and the Free States under its administration as the flag of a friendly Government ;

1884.
Dec. 16.
Berlin.

Being of opinion that it is advisable to regulate and define the rights of British subjects in the territories of the said Free States, and to provide for such matters concerning the exercise of civil and criminal jurisdiction as shall be indicated hereunder until the Association shall have provided in a sufficient manner for the administration of justice with regard to foreigners,

It has been agreed :

ARTICLE I.

The International Association of the Congo undertakes to levy no duties of importation or transit on articles of commerce or merchandise imported by British subjects into the said territories, or into the territories which hereafter may be placed under its Government. This freedom from duty shall extend to merchandise and articles of commerce which shall be transported by the roads and canals established or to be established round the cataracts of the Congo.

ARTICLE II.

British subjects shall at all times have the right to reside and settle in the territories which are or shall be under the government of the Association. They shall enjoy the same protection as subjects or citizens of the most favoured nation in all matters which affect their persons and their goods, the free exercise of their religion, and the rights of navigation, commerce, and industry. Especially they shall have the right to buy, sell, lease, and let lands, buildings, mines, and forests within the said territories; to found houses of business, and to engage in commerce and coasting trade therein under the British flag.

ARTICLE III.

The Association undertakes to accord no advantage, however trifling, to the subjects of another nation, unless such advantage is immediately extended to British subjects.

ARTICLE IV.

Her Majesty the Queen of Great Britain and Ireland may nominate consuls or other consular agents in the ports or stations on the said territories, and the Association undertakes to protect *them* therein.

ARTICLE V.

1884.
Dec. 16.
Berlin.

Every British consul or consular agent who shall have been duly authorised by the Government of Her Britannic Majesty, shall have power to establish a consular tribunal for the district assigned to him, and shall exercise sole and exclusive jurisdiction, civil as well as criminal, with regard to the persons and property of British subjects within the said district, in accordance with the British laws.

ARTICLE VI.

Nothing contained in the preceding article shall absolve any British subject from the obligation of observing the laws of the said Free States applicable to foreigners, but all infraction of those laws on the part of a British subject shall be referred to the British consular tribunal.

ARTICLE VII.

If the inhabitants of the said territories which are subject to the Government of the Association do any injury to the person or property of a British subject, they shall be arrested and punished by the authorities of the Association conformably to the laws of the said Free States. Justice shall be administered equitably and impartially on both sides.

ARTICLE VIII.

A British subject having grounds of complaint against an inhabitant of the said territories, subject to the government of the Association, shall apply to the British Consulate and there detail his grievances.

The Consul shall make an inquiry to ascertain that the complaint is well founded, and will do his utmost to arrange it amicably. In the same way, if any inhabitant of the same territories shall have cause of complaint against a British subject, the British counsel shall hear his complaint and do his utmost to arrange the matter amicably. If differences arise of such nature that the British Consul cannot arrange them amicably, he shall have recourse to the authorities of the Association to examine into the matter and end it equitably.

1884.
Dec. 16.
Berlin.

ARTICLE IX.

If an inhabitant of the said territories subject to the government of the Association should fail to pay any debt contracted with a British subject, the authorities of the Association shall do all in their power to bring him to justice and procure the recovery of the said debt; and if a British subject should fail in the payment of any debt contracted with one of the inhabitants, the British authorities shall in the same way do their utmost to bring him to justice and procure the recovery of the debt. No British Consul and no authority of the Association shall be held responsible for a debt contracted by a British subject, nor by any inhabitant of the said territories who is subject to the government of the Association.

ARTICLE X.

In case of the cession of any territory which now or in the future shall be under the government of the Association, the obligations contracted by the Association in the present Convention shall apply to the grantee. The engagements and rights accorded to British subjects shall remain in force after every cession with regard to every new occupant of every part of the said territory.

This Convention shall be ratified, and the ratifications shall be exchanged with as little delay as possible. This Convention shall come into force immediately after the exchange of the ratifications.

Done at Berlin, the 16th of December, eighteen hundred and eighty-four.

(Signed)

EDWARD MALET.
STRAUCH.

CONVENTION

BETWEEN THE NETHERLANDS AND THE INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION
OF THE CONGO.

ARTICLE I.

The International Association of the Congo undertakes to levy no duties of importation, or transit on merchandise, or articles of commerce, imported by Dutch subjects within the present or future possessions of the Association. The freedom from duties shall ex-

tend to merchandise and articles of commerce transported on the roads or canals which are or shall be established round the cataracts of the Congo.

1884.
Dec. 27.
Brussels.

ARTICLE II.

Dutch subjects shall at all times have the right to reside or settle in the territories which are or shall be subject to the Association. They shall enjoy the protection accorded to subjects or citizens of the most favoured nation in all matters concerning their persons, their property, the free exercise of their religion, and the rights of navigation, commerce and industry ; they shall especially have the right to buy and sell, let and lease land, mines, forests, and buildings in the said territories ; to found therein houses of business, and carry on commerce and coasting trade under the Dutch flag.

ARTICLE III.

The Association undertakes to grant no advantage whatsoever to the subjects of another nation, unless such advantages are immediately extended to Dutch subjects.

ARTICLE IV.

His Majesty the King of the Netherlands has the right to nominate Consuls or Consular Agents in the ports or stations of the said territories, and the Association undertakes to protect them.

ARTICLE V

Until the administration of justice shall have been organized in the Free States of the Congo, and until that organization shall have been notified by the Association, every Dutch Consul or Consular Agent, who has been duly authorized by the Government of His Majesty the King of the Netherlands, may establish a Consular tribunal for the extent of the district assigned to him, and in that case will exercise sole and exclusive jurisdiction, civil as well as criminal, with regard to the persons and property of Dutch subjects within the said district, conformably to the laws of the Netherlands.

ARTICLE VI.

Nothing contained in the foregoing article shall absolve any Dutch subject from the obligation of observing the laws of the

1884.
Dec. 27.
Brussels. Free States applicable to foreigners, but all infractions thereof on the part of a Dutch subject shall be referred to a Dutch Consular tribunal.

ARTICLE VII.

If the inhabitants of the said countries, who are subjects of the government of the Association, do any injury to the person or property of a Dutch subject, they shall be arrested and punished by the authorities of the Association, conformably to the laws of the said Free States. Justice shall be administered equitably and impartially on both sides.

ARTICLE VIII.

A Dutch subject having grounds of complaint against an inhabitant of the said territories subject to the government of the Association shall apply to the Dutch Consulate, and there detail his grievance. The Consul shall proceed to enquire if the same be well-founded, and do all in his power to arrange the matter amicably. In the same way, if any inhabitant of the said territories has any complaint concerning a Dutch subject, the Dutch Consul shall hear the complaint, and do his utmost to arrange the difficulty amicably. If differences arise of such a nature that the Consul cannot arrange them amicably, he shall then have recourse to the authorities of the Association, for them to examine into the matter and end it equitably.

ARTICLE IX.

If an inhabitant of the said territories subject to the government of the Association shall fail in the payment of a debt contracted with a Dutch subject, the authorities of the Association shall do all in their power to bring him to justice, and procure the recovery of the debt, and if a Dutch subject shall fail in the payment of a debt contracted with one of the inhabitants, the Dutch authorities shall do all in their power to bring him to justice, and procure the recovery of the debt.

No Dutch Consul nor any authority of the Association shall be held responsible for the payment of a debt contracted by an inhabitant of any of the territories subject to the government of the Association or by any Dutch subject.

ARTICLE X.

In the event of the cession of the territory now under the government of the Association, or which shall be so at any future

time, or of any part of the said territory, all the obligations contracted by the Association in the present Convention shall be binding on the grantee. These arrangements and rights accorded to Dutch subjects shall remain in force after the cession with regard to any new occupant of no matter what part of the said territory.

1884.
Dec. 27.
Brussels.

ARTICLE XI.

The Association and the Free States engage to do all in their power to put an end to the slave-trade and suppress slavery.

ARTICLE XII.

The Kingdom of the Netherlands, according its sympathy to the humanitarian and civilising object of the Association, recognizes the flag of the Association and the Free States placed under its administration—a blue flag with a golden star in the centre—as the flag of a friendly Government.

ARTICLE XIII.

This Convention shall be ratified, and the ratifications shall be exchanged with as little delay as possible. It shall come into force immediately after the exchange of the ratifications.

In witness whereof the respective Plenipotentiaries have signed it, and to it have affixed the seal of their coat of arms.

Done at Brussels, the twenty-seventh day of the month of December, of the year one thousand eight hundred and eighty-four.

(Signed) L. GERICKE.
STRAUCH.

CONVENTION

BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT OF THE FRENCH REPUBLIC AND THE
INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF THE CONGO.

ARTICLE I.

The International Association of the Congo declares that it extends to France the advantages it has conceded to the United States of America, to the Empire of Germany, to England, to Italy, to Austro-Hungary, to the Netherlands, and to Spain, in

1885.
Feb. 5.
Paris.

virtue of the Convention it has concluded with the several Powers of the respective dates of the 22nd of April, the 8th of November, the 16th, 19th, 24th, and 29th of December, 1884, and the 7th of January, 1885, and of which the texts are annexed to the present Convention.

ARTICLE II.

The Association undertakes, in addition, to accord no advantages of any nature whatsoever to the subjects of another nation without immediately extending those advantages to French citizens.

ARTICLE III.

The Government of the French Republic and the Association adopt for the frontiers between their possessions:

The River Chiloango from the ocean to its most northerly source;

The crest of the water-parting of the Niadi-Kwilu and the Congo as far as the meridian of Manyanga;

A line to be determined, and which, following as much as possible, a natural division of the ground terminates between the station of Manyanga and the cataract of Ntombo Mataka in a point situated on the navigable portion of the river;

The Congo to Stanley Pool;

The centre line of Stanley Pool;

The Congo to a point to be determined up the stream of the River Licóna-Nkundja;

A line to be determined from that point to the 17th degree of longitude east from Greenwich, following as much as possible the line of the water-parting of the basin of the Licóna-Nkundja, which forms part of the French possessions;

The 17th degree of longitude east from Greenwich.

ARTICLE IV.

A Commission composed of representatives of the contracting parties, equal in number on both sides, shall be entrusted with executing on the spot the laying out of the frontier conformably to the preceding stipulations. In case of dispute the matter shall be referred to delegates nominated by the International Commission of the Congo.

ARTICLE V.

1884.
Feb. 5.
Paris.

Under the reservation of the arrangements about to take place between the International Association of the Congo and Portugal for the territories situated to the south of the Chiloango, the Government of the French Republic is disposed to recognise the neutrality of the possessions of the International Association within the frontiers shown on the annexed map, subject to the discussion and regulation of the conditions of that neutrality in accord with the other Powers represented at the Berlin Conference.

ARTICLE VI.

The Government of the French Republic recognises the flag of the International Association of the Congo—a blue flag with a golden star in the centre—as the flag of a friendly Government.

In witness whereof the respective Plenipotentiaries have signed the present Convention, and to it affixed their seals.

Done at Paris, the 5th of February, 1885.

(Signed) JULES FERRY. (L.S.)

COMTE PAUL DE BORCHGRAVE D'ALTENA (L.S.)

CONVENTION

BETWEEN PORTUGAL AND THE INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF THE
CONGO.

ARTICLE I.

The International Association of the Congo declares that it extends to Portugal the advantages it has conceded to the United States of America, to the Empire of Germany, to England, to Italy, to Austro-Hungary, to the Netherlands, to Spain, to Franco and to the United Kingdoms of Sweden and Norway, in virtue of the Conventions it has concluded with these several Powers of the respective dates of the 22nd of April, the 8th of November, the 16th, 19th, 24th, and 29th of December, 1884, the 7th of January, the 5th and 10th of February, 1885, and of which the Association undertakes to remit authentic copies to the Government of His Most Faithful Majesty.

1885.
Feb. 14
Berlin.

ARTICLE II.

The International Association of the Congo undertakes in addition to accord no advantages of any kind whatsoever to the subjects of another nation without immediately extending those advantages to the subjects of His Most Faithful Majesty

ARTICLE III.

The International Association of the Congo and His Most Faithful Majesty the King of Portugal and the Algarves adopt for frontiers between their possessions in Western Africa the following:—

To the north of the River Congo (Zaire) the right bank of the mouth of the river which enters the Atlantic Ocean to the south of the Bay of Cabinda, close to Ponta Vermelha, at Cabo-Lombo;

The parallel of this last point prolonged up to its intersection with the meridian of the junction of the Culacalla with the Luculla;

The meridian thus determined to its meeting with the River Luculla;

The course of the Luculla to its junction with the Chiloango (Luango Luce);

The course of the Congo (Zaire) from its mouth to its junction with the small river of Uango-Uango;

The meridian which passes through the mouth of the small River Uango-Uango between the Dutch factory and the Portuguese factory, so as to leave the latter in Portuguese territory up to the meeting of the meridian with the parallel of Nokk;

The parallel of Nokk to its intersection with the River Kuango (Cuango);

From this point southwards the course of the Kuango (Cuango).

ARTICLE IV.

A Commission composed of representatives of the contracting parties equal in number on both sides shall be intrusted with the execution on the spot of the laying out of the frontier conformably to the foregoing stipulations. In case of dispute the matter shall be referred to delegates nominated by the International Commission of the Congo.

ARTICLE V.

1885.
Feb. 14.
Berlin.

His Most Faithful Majesty the King of Portugal and the Algarves is disposed to recognise the neutrality of the possessions of the International Association of the Congo, subject to the discussion and regulation of that neutrality in accordance with the other powers represented at the Berlin Conference.

ARTICLE VI.

His Most Faithful Majesty the King of Portugal and the Algarves recognises the flag of the International Association of the Congo—a blue flag with a golden star in the centre—as the flag of a friendly Government.

ARTICLE VII.

The present Convention shall be ratified, and the ratifications shall be exchanged at Paris within three months, or sooner if possible.

In witness whereof the Plenipotentiaries of the two contracting parties, and His Excellency the Baron de Courcel, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary of France at Berlin, as representing the mediating Power, have signed the present Convention, and thereto affixed their seals.

Done in triplicate at Berlin, the fourteenth day of the month of February, eighteen hundred and eighty-five.

(Signed) MARQUIS DE PENAFIEL.
STRAUCH.
ALPH DE COURCEL.

 DECLARATIONS

EXCHANGED BETWEEN THE BELGIAN GOVERNMENT AND THE
INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF THE CONGO.

The International Association of the Congo declares by these presents that in virtue of treaties concluded with the legitimate sovereigns in the basin of the Congo and its tributaries, it has been ceded the sovereignty of vast territories with the object of founding a free and independent State; that Conventions define the frontiers of the territories of the Association as regards those of

1885.
Feb. 23.
Berlin.

France and Portugal, and that the frontiers of the Association are shown on the annexed map.

That the said Association has adopted as the flag of the State administered by it a blue flag with a star of gold in its centre.

That the said Association has resolved to levy no customs duties on merchandise or products imported into its territories or transported on the roads which have been constructed round the cataracts of the Congo; this resolution has been taken so as to encourage trade to make its way into Equatorial Africa.

That it assures to foreigners who settle in its territories the right to buy, sell, and lease ground and buildings situated thereon, to establish houses of business, and trade under the sole condition of obeying the laws. It undertakes, in addition, to accord no advantage to the citizens of one nation without immediately extending it to the citizens of all other nations, and to do all in its power to put down the slave trade.

In witness whereof the President of the Association acting for it has hereunder affixed his signature and his seal.

Berlin, the twenty-third day of the month of February, one thousand eight hundred and eighty-five.

(Signed) STRAUCH.

The Belgian Government takes note of the declaration of the International Association of the Congo, and by these presents recognises the Association within the boundaries stated, and recognises its flag as that of a friendly State.

In witness whereof the undersigned, duly authorized, have affixed their signature and seal.

Berlin, the twenty-third day of the month of February, one thousand eight hundred and eighty-five.

(Signed) CTE. AUG. VAN DER STRATEN PONTHOZ,
BARON LAMBERMONT.

PROTOCOL, No. 10.

Sitting of the 26th of February, 1885.

Present:

For Germany: Prince BISMARCK; M. BUSCH; M. DE KUSSEROW.

For Austro-Hungary: Count SZÉCHÉNYI.

For Belgium: Count VAN DER STRATEN PONTHOZ; Baron LAMBERMONT.

For Denmark : M. de VIND.

For Spain : Count de BENOMAR.

For the United States of America : Mr. JOHN A. KASSON ; Mr. HENRY S. SANFORD.

For France : Baron de COURCEL.

For Great Britain : Sir EDWARD MALET.

For Italy : Count de LAUNAY.

For the Netherlands : The JOHKHEER VAN DER HOEVEN.

For Portugal : Marquis de PENAFIEL ; M. de SERPA PIMENTEL.

For Russia : Count KAPNIST.

For Sweden and Norway : General Baron BILDT.

For Turkey : SAID Pasha.

The sitting opened at half-past two o'clock, under the Presidency of His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck.

The President expressed his regret at having been prevented by the state of his health and the pressure of business from sharing in the whole of the labours of the High Assembly which he, however, had followed with much interest.

His Serene Highness then delivered the following address :—

“Gentlemen,—Our Conference after long and laborious deliberations, has reached the end of its work, and I am glad to say that thanks to your efforts and to that spirit of conciliation which has presided over our proceedings, a complete accord has been come to on every point of the programme submitted to us.

“The resolutions which we are about to sanction formally secure to the trade of all nations free access to the interior of the African Continent. The guarantees by which the freedom of trade will be assured in the Congo basin, and the whole of the arrangements embodied in the rules for the navigation of the Congo and the Niger, are of such a nature as to afford the commerce and industry of all nations the most favourable conditions for their development and security.

“In another series of regulations you have shown your solicitude for the moral and material welfare of the native population, and we may hope that those principles adopted in a spirit of wise moderation will bear fruit, and help to familiarise those populations with the benefits of civilisation.

“The particular conditions under which are placed the vast regions you have just opened up to commercial enterprise have seemed to require special guarantees for the preservation of peace and public order. In fact, the scourge of war would become particularly disastrous if the natives were led to take sides in the

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

disputes between the civilised Powers. Justly apprehensive of the dangers that such an event might have for the interests of commerce and civilisation, you have sought for the means of withdrawing a great part of the African Continent from the vicissitudes of general politics, in confining therein the rivalry of nations to peaceful emulation in trade and industry.

“In the same manner you have endeavoured to avoid all misunderstanding and dispute to which fresh annexations on the African coast might give rise. The declaration of the formalities required before such annexations can be considered effective introduces a new rule into public law, which in its turn will remove many a cause of dissent and conflict from our international relations.

“The spirit of mutual good understanding which has distinguished your deliberations has also presided over the negotiations that have been carried on outside the Conference, with a view to arrange the difficult question of delimitation between the parties exercising sovereign rights in the Congo basin, and which by their position are destined to be the chief guardians of the work we are about to sanction.

“I cannot touch on this subject without bearing testimony to the noble efforts of His Majesty the King of the Belgians, the founder of a work which now has gained the recognition of almost all the Powers, and which as it grows will render valuable service to the cause of humanity.

“Gentlemen, I am requested by His Majesty the Emperor and King, my august Master, to convey to you his warmest thanks for the part each of you has taken in the felicitous accomplishment of the work of the Conference.

“I fulfil a final duty in gratefully acknowledging what the Conference owes to those of its members who undertook the hard work of the Commission, notably to the Baron de Courcel and to Baron Lambertmont. I have also to thank the delegates for the valuable assistance they have rendered us, and I include in this expression of thanks the secretaries of the Conference, who have facilitated our deliberations by the accuracy of their work.

“Like the other labours of man, the work of this Conference may be improved upon and perfected, but it will, I hope, mark an advance in the development of international relations, and form a new bond of union between the nations of the civilised world.”

COUNT DE LAUNAY then spoke as follows :—

“Gentlemen, we are all of us very pleased to see His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck once more amongst us.

“We have the honour to thank him for his speech, which bore the mark of such perfect courtesy, and for his flattering opinion of the efforts which have resulted in our general agreement.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

“As you have just heard, he has been prevented, much against his inclination, from presiding in person at all our sittings, but his mighty mind has hovered over this assembly. If he has been obliged to delegate his functions, he knew beforehand that he was putting them in good hands. In fact, Count Hatzfeldt and Under Secretary of State, M. Busch, have successively carried out their instructions with an intelligence, a tact, and a spirit of conciliation that we are all of us pleased to acknowledge. We owe them a debt of gratitude. Both of them have thoroughly entered into the principles that have been brought before us with equal precision and elevation of view ever since the beginning of the Conference.

“Whatever may be reserved for our work in the future—it remains subject to the vicissitudes of all things human—we can at present at least bear witness that we have neglected nothing that was at all possible to open up into the interior of the African Continent a broad road for the moral and material progress of its native races and for the development of the general welfare of commerce and navigation.

“We have, simultaneously, served the cause of religion, of peace, of humanity, and enlarged the domain of public international law.

“Such was the object we had in view. If we have succeeded in attaining it, a large part of the merit is due to our illustrious President, the promoter of the meeting of this Conference, the author of the programme which formed the basis of our deliberations.

“I am thus secure of the unanimous assent of the members of this High Assembly in expressing to His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck our cordial acknowledgment for his having, whether present or absent, given our labours their best direction.

“As we are about to part, I think, gentlemen, that I am your faithful interpreter in offering the homage of our respectful gratitude for the kindly welcome we have received from His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia, and also from his august family.”

At COUNT DE LAUNAY's suggestion, the members of the High Assembly rise from their seats to mark their hearty assent to what

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

has been said by the Italian representative with regard to His Majesty the Emperor.

PRINCE BISMARCK thanks Count de Launay for his appreciative remarks. He expresses a wish that the Plenipotentiaries and himself will in the course of their political life have frequent opportunities of meeting in that unanimously friendly spirit which has distinguished the Berlin Conference. His Serene Highness bears witness to the satisfaction he has experienced at the excellent relations to which the Conference has given rise.

The president consults the high assembly as to whether it will be convenient before proceeding to the signature of the general act to have the document read. The general act already adopted in its entirety by the Conference has been printed and distributed to the Plenipotentiaries for their mature consideration. The high assembly may perhaps under the circumstances think it well to omit the formality of the customary reading. Should that be the general feeling, it will be in accord with the opinion of the president.

SAID PASHA considers the reading superfluous.

The high assembly unanimously agrees to the suggestion offered by Prince Bismarck.

The president formally announces that the high assembly having given the general act its definitive sanction, without wishing to hear it read over for the last time, it will perhaps immediately pass to the signature of the documents.

However, before inviting the Plenipotentiaries to proceed to this formality, Prince Bismarck, in order to simplify the order of business, desires to bring before the Conference a communication which ought strictly to follow the signing of the treaty, and which is to this effect:—

“Referring to Article XXXVII. of the Act just accepted by you I have the honour to make a communication to you which has just reached me. This is the adoption by the International Association of the Congo of the resolutions of the Conference. I will take the liberty of reading this document, as well as a letter from Colonel Strauch, the President of the Association.”

The President reads these documents, which are as follows:—

1. Act of Adhesion of the International Association of the Congo to the General Act of the Berlin Conference, of date the 26th of February, 1885.

“The International Association of the Congo, in virtue of Article

XXXVII. of the General Act of the Berlin Conference declares by these presents that it adheres to the provisions of the said General Act.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

“In witness whereof the President of the International Association of the Congo has signed the present declaration and thereto affixed his seal.

“Done at Berlin the twenty-sixth day of the month of February, one thousand eight hundred and eighty-five.

“COLONEL STRAUCH.” (L. S.)

2. Letter from Colonel Strauch to his Serene Highness Prince Bismarek :—

“Prince,—In virtue of the powers given to me by His Majesty the King of the Belgians, acting as founder of the International Association of the Congo, powers sent herewith, and in conformity with Article XXXVII. of the General Act of the Berlin Conference, I have the honour to forward to the Government of the German Empire the Act by which the International Association of the Congo adheres to the said General Act.

“I trust that your Serene Highness will in accordance with the stipulation which forms paragraph two of the same Article notify this adhesion to the States that have signed the General Act or who will adhere to it.

The International Association of the Congo will regard the favourable consideration given to its request as another proof of the friendliness of the Powers towards a work destined by its origin, its conditions of existence, and its object to aid in the accomplishment of the generous ideas of the Conference.

“I am, with profound respect,

“Your Serene Highness’s most humble and
most obedient servant,

COLONEL STRAUCH.

“The President of the International Association of the Congo.”

“BERLIN, 26th February, 1885.”

3. Powers conferred on Colonel Strauch.

“We, Léopold II., King of the Belgians, acting as Founder of the International Association of the Congo, give by these presents full powers to M. Strauch, President of that Association, to sign the Act of accession to the general treaty adopted by the Berlin Conference.

“LÉOPOLD. (L. S.)

“BRUSSELS, 15th February, 1885.”

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

His Serene Highness Prince Bismarck then speaks as follows:—

“Gentlemen,—I believe I express the feeling of the Assembly in greeting with satisfaction the step taken by the International Association of the Congo, and in acknowledging its adhesion to our resolutions. The new Congo State is destined to be one of the chief protectors of the work we have in view, and I hope it will have a prosperous development, and that the noble aspirations of its illustrious founder may be fulfilled.”

At the President's invitation, the Plenipotentiaries then proceed to the signature of the final Act.

The President announces that the sitting is at an end, and the High Assembly separates at half-past Four o'clock.

(Signed)

SZÉCHÉNYI.

Cte. AUGTE. VAN DER
STRATEN PONTHOZ.

Bn. LAMBERMONT.

E. VIND.

COMTE DE BENOMAR.

JOHN A. KASSON.

ALPH. DE COURCEL.

EDWARD B. MALET.

LAUNAY.

F. P. VAN DER HOEVEN.

MARQUIS DE PENAFIEL.

A. DE SERPA PIMENTEL.

Cte. P. KAPNIST.

GILLIS BILDT.

SAID.

V. BISMARCK.

BUSCH.

V. KUSSEROW.

Certified as agreeing with original,

RAINDRE.

COMTE W. BISMARCK.

SCHMIDT.

THE GENERAL ACT OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE.

In the Name of Almighty God.

His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia, His Majesty the Emperor of Austria, King of Bohemia, &c., and King Apostolic of Hungary, His Majesty the King of the Belgians, His Majesty the King of Denmark, His Majesty the King of Spain, the President of the United States of America, the President of the French Republic, Her Majesty the Queen of the United Kingdom

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

of Great Britain and Ireland, Empress of India, His Majesty the King of Italy, His Majesty the King of the Netherlands, Grand Duke of Luxemburg, His Majesty the King of Portugal and the Algarves, &c., &c., &c., His Majesty the Czar of all the Russias, His Majesty the King of Sweden and Norway, &c., &c., and His Majesty the Sultan of the Turks.

Desirous of settling in a spirit of mutual goodwill the most favourable conditions for the development of commerce and civilisation in certain districts in Africa, and ensuring to the natives the advantages of the free navigation of the two chief African rivers that flow into the Atlantic Ocean; desirous, moreover, of preventing misunderstandings and disputes which may in the future arise as new territories are annexed on the African coast, and at the same time anxious to promote the moral and material welfare of the native races, have resolved at the invitation addressed to them by the Imperial Government of Germany, in accord with the Government of the French Republic to meet for these purposes in a Conference at Berlin, and have nominated as Their Plenipotentiaries the following:—

- HIS MAJESTY the EMPEROR OF GERMANY, King of Prussia;
 Le Sieur OTHO, Prince BISMARCK, His President of the Council of Ministers of Prussia, Chancellor of the Empire;
 PAUL, Count HATZFELDT, His Minister of State and Secretary of State for the Department of Foreign Affairs;
 Le Sieur AUGUSTE BUSCH, His Privy Councillor of Legation, and Under-Secretary of State for the department of Foreign Affairs; and
 Le Sieur HENRI DE KUSSEROW, His Privy Councillor of Legation of the Department of Foreign Affairs.
 HIS MAJESTY THE EMPEROR OF AUSTRIA, King of Bohemia, &c., and King Apostolic of Hungary;
 Le Sieur EMERIC, Count SZÉCHÉNYI DE SÁRVÁRI FELSO-VIDEK, Chamberlain and Privy Councillor, His Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.
 HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF THE BELGIANS;
 Le Sieur GABRIEL AUGUSTE, Count VAN DER STRATEN PONTHOZ, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia; and
 Le Sieur AUGUSTE, Baron LAMBERMONT, Minister of State, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF DENMARK ;

Le Sieur EMIL DE VIND, Chamberlain, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF SPAIN ;

DON FRANCISCO MERRY Y COLOM, Count de BENOMAR. His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA ;

Le Sieur JOHN A. KASSON, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary of the United States of North America, to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia ; and

Le Sieur HENRY S. SANFORD, Ex-Minister.

THE PRESIDENT OF THE FRENCH REPUBLIC ;

Le Sieur ALPHONSE, Baron de COURCEL, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary of France, to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN OF THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND, EMPRESS OF INDIA ;

SIR EDWARD BALDWIN MALET, Her Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF ITALY ;

Le Sieur EDOUARD, Count de LAUNAY, His Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF THE NETHERLANDS, GRAND DUKE OF LUXEMBURG, &c. ;

Le Sieur FREDERIC PHILIPPE, Jonkheer VAN DER HOEVEN, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF PORTUGAL AND THE ALGARVES, &c. ;

Le Sieur DU SERRA GOMES, Marquis de PENAFIEL, Peer of the Realm, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia ; and

Le Sieur ANTOINE DE SERPA PIMENTEL, Councillor of State and Peer of the Realm.

HIS MAJESTY THE CZAR OF ALL THE RUSSIAS ;

Le Sieur PIERRE, Count KAPNIST, Privy Councillor, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the King of the Netherlands.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF SWEDEN AND NORWAY, &c. ;

Le Sieur GILLIS, Baron BILDT, Lieutenant General, His Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

HIS MAJESTY THE SULTAN OF THE TURKS;

MEHEMED SAID, Pasha, Vizier and High Dignitary, His Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary to His Majesty the Emperor of Germany, King of Prussia.

Who, furnished with full powers, which have been found to be in good and proper form, have successively discussed and adopted.

1. A declaration relative to the freedom of trade in the basin of the Congo, its mouths, and circumjacent districts, with certain arrangements connected therewith.

2. A declaration concerning the slave-trade, and the operations on land or sea, which supply the slaves for the trade.

3. A declaration relative to the neutrality of the territories comprised in the said basin of the Congo.

4. An act as to the navigation of the Congo, which takes into consideration the local circumstances affecting the river; its affluents, and the waters that are similar to them, the general principles set forth in Articles 103 to 116 of the final Act of the Congress of Vienna, and intended to regulate between the signatory powers to that act, the free navigation of navigable watercourses that separate or traverse several States; principles that have once been generally applied to the rivers of Europe and America, and notably to the Danube with the modifications foreseen by the Treaties of Paris of 1856, of Berlin of 1878, of London of 1871 and 1883.

5. An act for the navigation of the Niger, which also takes into consideration the local circumstances affecting this river and its affluents, on the same principles set forth in Articles 108 to 116 of the final Act of the Congress of Vienna.

6. A declaration introducing into international relations uniform rules with regard to annexations which may take place in the future on the African continent;

And having decided that these various documents could be usefully combined in a single deed, have collected them in a general act composed of the following articles.

CHAPTER I.

Declaration relative to the freedom of commerce in the basin of the Congo, its mouths, and circumjacent districts, with certain arrangements connected therewith.

ARTICLE I.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

The trade of all nations shall be entirely free :

1. In all the territories constituting the basin of the Congo and its affluents. The basin is bounded by the crests of the adjoining basins, that is to say, the basins of the Niari, of the Ogowé, of the Shari, and of the Nile towards the north ; by the line of the eastern ridge of the affluents of Lake Tanganyika towards the east ; by the crests of the basins of the Zambesi and the Logé towards the south. It consequently embraces all the territories drained by the Congo and its affluent-, comprising therein Lake Tanganyika and its eastern tributaries.

2. In the maritime zone extending along the Atlantic Ocean from the parallel of $2^{\circ} 30'$ south latitude to the mouth of the Logé.

The northern limit will follow the parallel of $2^{\circ} 30'$ from the coast until it reaches the geographical basin of the Congo, avoiding the basin of the Ogowe, to which the stipulations of the present Act do not apply.

The southern limit will follow the course of the Logé up to the source of that river, and thence strike eastwards to its junction with the geographical basin of the Congo.

3. In the zone extending eastwards from the basin of the Congo as limited above herein, to the Indian Ocean, from the fifth degree of north Latitude to the mouth of the Zambesi on the south ; from this point the line of demarcation will follow the Zambesi for five miles up stream to the junction with the Shiré, and continue by the line of the ridge dividing the waters which flow towards lake Nyassa from the tributary waters of the Zambesi, until it rejoins the line of the water-parting between the Zambesi and the Congo. It is expressly understood that in extending to this eastern zone the principle of commercial freedom, the Powers represented at the Conference bind only themselves, and that the principle will apply to territories actually belonging to some independent and sovereign state only so far as that state consents to it. The Powers agree to employ their good offices among the established Governments on the African coast of the Indian Ocean, to obtain such consent and in any case to ensure the most favourable conditions to all nations.

ARTICLE II.

All flags, without distinction of nationality, shall have free access to all the coast of the territories above enumerated, to the

rivers which therein flow to the sea to all the waters of the Congo and its affluents, including the lakes, to all the canals that in the future may be cut with the object of uniting the watercourses or the lakes comprised in the whole extent of the territories described in Article I. They can undertake all kinds of transport, and engage in maritime and fluvial coasting, as well as river navigation, on the same footing as the natives.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

ARTICLE III.

Goods from every source imported into these territories under any flag whatsoever, either by way of the sea, the rivers, or the land, shall pay no taxes except such as are an equitable compensation for the necessary expenses of the trade, and which can meet with equal support from the natives and from foreigners of every nationality.

All differential treatment is forbidden both with regard to ships and goods.

ARTICLE IV.

Goods imported into these territories will remain free of all charges for entry and transit.

The powers reserve to themselves, until the end of a period of twenty years, the right of deciding if freedom of entry shall be maintained or not.

ARTICLE V.

Every Power which exercises or will exercise sovereign rights in the territories above-mentioned, cannot therein concede any monopoly or privilege of any sort in commercial matters.

Foreigners shall therein indiscriminately enjoy the same treatment and rights as the natives in the protection of their persons and goods, in the acquisition and transmission of their property, moveable and immovable, and in the exercise of their professions.

ARTICLE VI.

Provisions Relative to the Protection of the Natives, to Missionaries and Travellers, and to Religious Liberty.

All the Powers exercising sovereign rights, or having influence in the said territories, undertake to watch over the preservation of the native races, and the amelioration of the moral and material

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

conditions of their existence, and to co-operate in the suppression of slavery, and above all of the slave trade; they will protect and encourage, without distinction of nationality or creed, all institutions and enterprises, religious, scientific, or charitable, established and organised for these objects or tending to educate the natives, and lead them to understand and appreciate the advantages of civilisation.

Christian missionaries, men of science, explorers, and their escorts and collections, to be equally the object of special protection.

Liberty of conscience and religious toleration are expressly guaranteed to the natives as well as to the inhabitants and foreigners. The free and public exercise of every creed, the right to erect religious buildings and to organise missions belonging to every creed, shall be subject to no restriction or impediment whatsoever.

ARTICLE VII.

Postal Arrangements.

The Convention of the Postal Union revised at Paris on the 1st of June, 1878, shall apply to the said basin of the Congo.

The Powers which there exercise or will exercise rights of sovereignty or protectorate, undertake, as soon as circumstances permit, to introduce the necessary measures to give effect to the above resolution.

ARTICLE VIII.

Right of Surveillance conferred on the International Commission for the Navigation of the Congo.

In all parts of the territory embraced in the present Declaration, where no Power shall exercise the rights of sovereignty or protectorate, the International Commission for the navigation of the Congo, constituted in accordance with Article XVII., shall be entrusted with the surveillance of the application of the principles declared and established in this Declaration.

In all cases of difficulties arising relative to the application of the principles established by the present Declaration, the Governments interested shall agree to appeal to the good offices of the International Commission, leaving to it the examination of the facts which have given rise to the difficulties.

CHAPTER II.

DECLARATION CONCERNING THE SLAVE TRADE.

1885.
Feb. 26
Berlin.

ARTICLE IX.

In conformity with the principles of the right of nations as recognised by the signatory Powers, the slave trade being forbidden, and operations which on land or sea supply slaves for the trade being equally held to be forbidden, the Powers which exercise or will exercise rights of sovereignty or influence in the territories forming the basin of the Congo declare that these territories shall serve neither for the place of sale nor the way of transit for the traffic in slaves of any race whatsoever. Each of the Powers undertakes to employ every means that it can to put an end to the trade and to punish those who engage in it.

CHAPTER III.

DECLARATION RELATIVE TO THE NEUTRALITY OF THE TERRITORIES
COMPRISED IN THE SAID BASIN OF THE CONGO.

ARTICLE X.

In order to give a new guarantee of security for commerce and industry, and to encourage by the maintenance of peace the development of civilisation in the countries mentioned in Article I. and placed under the system of free trade, the High Parties signatory to the present Act, and those who will accept the same, hereby undertake to respect the neutrality of the territories, or parts of the territories dependent on the said countries, comprising therein the territorial waters, for so long as the Powers which exercise, or will exercise, the rights of sovereignty or protectorate over the territories, avail themselves of the right to proclaim them neutral and fulfil the duties that neutrality implies.

ARTICLE XI.

In cases where a Power exercising rights of sovereignty or protectorate in the countries mentioned in Article I. and placed under the system of free trade shall be involved in war, the High Parties signatory to the present Act and those who will accept the same hereby engage to use their good offices so that the territories belonging to that Power, and comprised within the said boundaries where free trade exists, shall, by the mutual consent of that Power

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

and of the other or others of the belligerent parties, be held to be neutral for so long as the war lasts, and considered as belonging to a non-belligerent state; the belligerent parties will then abstain from extending hostilities into such neutralised territories as well as from using them as a base for operations of war.

ARTICLE XII.

In the event of a serious disagreement originating on the subject, or arising within the limits of the territories mentioned in Article I., and placed under the system of freedom of trade, between Powers signatory to the present Act or Powers accepting the same, these Powers undertake before appealing to arms to have recourse to the mediation of one or several of the friendly Powers.

Under the said circumstances the said Power reserve to themselves the option of proceeding to arbitration.

CHAPTER IV.

ACT OF THE NAVIGATION OF THE CONGO.

ARTICLE XIII.

The navigation of the Congo, without any exception of any branches or issues of the river, is to remain entirely free for merchant shipping of all nations in cargo or ballast, for the carriage of goods or the carriage of passengers. It shall be in accordance with the provisions of the present Act of navigation or of the regulations established in execution of the said Act.

In the exercise of that navigation the subjects and flags of all nations shall under all circumstances be treated on a footing of absolute equality as well as regards the direct navigation from the open sea towards the interior ports of the Congo, and *vice versâ*, as for grand and petty coasting and boat and river work all along the river.

Consequently, throughout the Congo's course and mouths, no distinction shall be made between the subjects of the river-side States and those not bordering on the river, and no exclusive privilege of navigation shall be granted either to societies or corporations or individuals.

These provisions are recognised by the signatory Powers as henceforth forming part of public international law.

ARTICLE XIV.

The navigation of the Congo shall not be subjected to any restraints or imposts which are not expressly stipulated for in the present Act. It shall not be burdened with any duties for harbourage, stoppages, depots, breaking bulk, or putting in through stress of weather.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

Throughout the length of the Congo ships and merchandise passing along the stream shall be subject to no transit dues, no matter what may be their origin or destination.

There shall not be established any tolls, marine or river, based on the fact of navigation alone, nor shall any duty be imposed on the merchandise on board the vessels. Such taxes and duties only shall be levied as are of the character of remuneration for services rendered to the said navigation. That is to say :

1. Taxes of the port for the actual use of certain local establishments, such as wharves, warehouses, &c.

The tariff of such taxes to be calculated on the expenses of construction and support of the said local establishments, and in its application to be independent of the origin of the vessels and their cargo.

2. Pilotage dues on sections of the river, or where it appears necessary to establish stations of certificated pilots.

The tariff of these dues to be fixed and proportionate to the services rendered.

3. Dues in respect of the technical and administrative expenses, imposed in the general interest of the navigation, and comprising lighthouse, beacon, and buoyage dues.

Dues of the last description to be based on the tonnage of the ships according to the papers on board, and to be conformable to the regulations in force on the Lower Danube.

The tariffs of the taxes and dues mentioned in the three preceding paragraphs are not to admit of any differential treatment, and are to be officially published in each port.

The Powers reserve to themselves the right at the end of five years, by mutual agreement, to inquire into the above-mentioned tariffs in case they require revision.

ARTICLE XV.

The affluents of the Congo shall under all circumstances be subject to the same regulations as the river of which they are the tributaries.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

The same regulations shall apply to the lakes and canals as to the rivers and streams in the territories defined in Article I., paragraphs 2 and 3.

Nevertheless the powers of the International Commission of the Congo shall not extend over the said rivers, lakes, and canals, unless with the assent of the States under whose sovereignty they are placed. It is also understood that for the territories mentioned in Article I., paragraph 3, the consent of the sovereign States on whom these territories are dependent remains reserved.

ARTICLE XVI.

The roads, railways, or lateral canals which shall be established for the special object of supplementing the innavigability or imperfections of the water-way in certain sections of the Congo, of its affluents and other watercourses held to be like unto them by Article XV., shall be considered in their capacity as means of communication as dependencies of the river, and shall be likewise open to the traffic of all nations.

And as on the river there shall be levied on these roads, railways, and canals, only tolls calculated on the expenses of construction, maintenance, and administration, and on the profits due to the promoters.

In the assessment of these tolls foreigners and the inhabitants of the respective territories shall be treated on a footing of perfect equality.

ARTICLE XVII.

An International Commission is instituted appointed to ensure the execution of the provisions of the present Act of Navigation.

The Powers signatory to this Act, as well as those who afterwards accept it, shall at all times be represented on the said Commission each by a delegate. No delegate shall have more than one vote even in the event of his representing several Governments.

This delegate shall be paid by his own Government direct.

The salaries and allowances of the agents and servants of the International Commission shall be charged on the proceeds of the dues levied conformably to Article XIV., paragraphs 2 and 3.

The amounts of the said salaries and allowances as well as the number, position, and duties of the agents and servants shall appear in the account rendered each year to the Governments represented on the International Commission.

ARTICLE XVIII.

The members of the International Commission, as well as the agents nominated by them, are invested with the privilege of inviolability in the exercise of their functions. The same guarantee shall extend to the offices, premises, and archives of the Commission.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

ARTICLE XIX.

The International Commission for the navigation of the Congo shall be constituted as soon as five of the signatory Powers of the present General Act shall have nominated their delegates. Pending the constitution of the Commission, the nomination of the delegates shall be notified to the Government of the German Empire, by whom the necessary steps will be taken to manage the meeting of the Commission.

The Commission will draw up without delay the arrangements for the navigation, river police, pilotage, and quarantine.

These regulations as well as the tariffs instituted by the Commission, before being put in force, shall be submitted to the approbation of the Powers represented on the Commission. The Powers interested shall declare their opinion therein with the least possible delay.

Offences against these regulations shall be dealt with by the agents of the International Commission, where it exercises its authority direct, and in other places by the riverside Power.

In case of abuse of power or injustice on the part of an agent or servant of the International Commission, the individual considering himself injured on his person or his rights, shall apply to the Consular agent of his nation. He will enquire into his complaint, if *primâ facie* he finds it reasonable, he shall be entitled to report it to the Commission. On his initiative, the Commission represented by three or fewer of its members shall join with him in an enquiry touching the conduct of its agent or servant. If the Consular agent considers the decision of the Commission as objectionable in law, he shall report to the Government, who shall refer to the Powers represented on the Commission, and invite them to agree as to the instructions to be given to the Commission.

ARTICLE XX.

The International Commission of the Congo entrusted under the terms of Article XVII., with ensuring the execution of the

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

present Act of Navigation shall specially devote its attention to—

1. The indication of such works as are necessary for ensuring the navigability of the Congo, in accordance with the requirements of international trade.

On sections of the river where no Power exercises rights of sovereignty, the International Commission shall itself take the measures necessary for ensuring the navigability of the stream.

On sections of the river occupied by a sovereign Power, the International Commission shall arrange with the riverside authority.

2. The fixing of the tariff for pilotage and of the general tariff of navigation dues, provided for in the second and third paragraphs of Article XIV.

The tariffs mentioned in the first paragraph of Article XIV. shall be settled by the territorial authority within the limits provided for in that Article.

The collection of these dues shall be under the care of the international or territorial authority, on whose account they have been established.

3. The administration of the revenues accruing from the application of the foregoing paragraph 2.

4. The surveillance of the quarantine establishment instituted in compliance with Article XXIV.

5. The nomination of agents for the general service of the navigation and its own particular servants.

The appointment of sub-inspectors shall belong to the territorial authority over sections occupied by a Power, and to the International Commission over the other sections of the river.

The riverside Power will notify to the International Commission the nomination of its sub-inspectors which it shall have appointed, and this Power shall pay their salaries.

In the exercise of its duties as defined and limited above, the International Commission shall not be subject to the territorial authority.

ARTICLE XXI.

In the execution of its task, the International Commission shall have recourse in case of need to the vessels of war belonging to the signatory Powers of this Act, and to those which in the future shall accept it, if not in contravention of the instructions which shall have been given to the commanders of those vessels by their respective Governments.

ARTICLE XXII.

The vessels of war of the Powers signatory to the present Act which enter the Congo are exempt from the payment of the navigation dues provided for in paragraph 3 of Article XIV.; but they shall pay the contingent pilotage dues as well as the harbour dues, unless their intervention has been demanded by the International Commission or its agents under the terms of the preceding Article.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

ARTICLE XXIII.

With the object of meeting the technical and administrative expenses which it may have to incur, the International Commission, instituted under Article XVII., may in its own name issue loans secured on the revenues assigned to the said Commission.

The resolutions of the Commission regarding the issue of a loan must be carried by a majority of two-thirds of its votes. It is understood that the Governments represented on the Commission shall not, in any case, be considered as assuming any guarantee nor contracting any engagement or joint responsibility with regard to the said loans, unless special treaties are concluded amongst them to that effect.

The proceeds of the dues specified in the third paragraph of Article XIV., shall be in the first place set aside for the payment of interest and the amortisation of the said loans, in accordance with the agreements entered into with the lenders.

ARTICLE XXIV.

At the mouths of the Congo there shall be founded, either at the initiation of the riverside Powers, or by the intervention of the International Commission, a quarantine establishment, which shall exercise control over the vessels entering and departing.

It shall be decided later on by the Powers, if any, and under what conditions sanitary control shall be exercised over vessels navigating the river.

ARTICLE XXV.

The provisions of the present Act of Navigation shall remain in force during times of war. Consequently, the navigation of all nations, neutral and belligerent, shall at all times be free for the purposes of trade on the Congo, its branches, its affluents, and its

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

mouths, as well as on the territorial waters fronting the mouths of the river.

The traffic shall likewise remain free, notwithstanding the state of war, on its roads, its railways, its lakes, and its canals as mentioned in Articles XV. and XVI.

The only exception to this principle shall be in cases in connection with the transport of articles intended for a belligerent, and held in accordance with the law of nations to be contraband of war.

All the works and establishments instituted in execution of the present Act, particularly the offices of collection and their funds the same as the staff permanently attached to the service of such establishments, shall be treated as neutral, and shall be respected and protected by the belligerents.

CHAPTER V.

THE ACT OF NAVIGATION OF THE NIGER.

ARTICLE XXVI.

The navigation of the Niger, without excepting any of the branches or issues, is and shall continue completely free for merchant vessels of all nations, in cargo or ballast, conveying goods or conveying passengers. It shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions of the present Act of Navigation, and with the regulations established in execution of the same Act.

In the exercise of that navigation, the subjects and flag of every nation shall be treated under all circumstances on a footing of perfect equality, as well as in the direct navigation from the open sea to the interior ports of the Niger, and *vice versâ*, as for grand and petty-coasting, and in boat and riverwork throughout its course.

Consequently throughout the length and mouths of the Niger there shall be no distinction between the subjects of the riverside states and those of states not bordering on the river, and there shall be conceded no exclusive privilege of navigation to any society or corporation or any individual.

These provisions are recognised by the signatory Powers as henceforth forming part of public international law.

ARTICLE XXVII.

The navigation of the Niger shall not be subjected to any obstacle, nor duty based only on the fact of the navigation.

It shall not be subject to any duties for harbourage, stoppages, depots, breaking bulk, or putting into port through stress of weather.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

Throughout the length of the Niger vessels and goods passing along the stream shall not be subject to any transit dues, whatsoever may be their origin or destination.

There shall be established no sea nor river toll based on the sole fact of navigation, nor any duty on the goods which happen to be on board the ships; only such taxes and dues shall be levied as are of the nature of a payment for services rendered to the said navigation. The tariffs of these taxes or dues shall admit of no differential treatment.

ARTICLE XXVIII.

The affluents of the Niger shall in every respect be subject to the same regulations as the river of which they are the tributaries.

ARTICLE XXIX.

Roads, railways, or lateral canals, which shall be established with the special object of supplementing the innavigability or other imperfections of the waterway, in certain sections of the course of the Niger, its affluents, its branches, and its issues, shall be considered in their capacity of means of communication as dependenciees of the river, and shall be similarly open to the traffic of all nations.

As on the river there shall be levied on the roads, railways, and canals, only such tolls as are calculated on the expenses of construction, maintenance, and administration, and on the profits due to the promoters.

In the assessment of these tolls, foreigners and the inhabitants of the respective territories shall be treated on a footing of perfect equality.

ARTICLE XXX.

Great Britain undertakes to apply the principles of freedom of navigation enunciated in Articles XXVI., XXVII., XXVIII., XXIX., to so much of the waters of the Niger and its affluents, branches, and issues, as are or shall be under her sovereignty or protectorate.

The regulations she will draw up for the safety and control of the navigation shall be designed to facilitate as much as possible the passage of merchant shipping.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

It is understood that nothing in the engagements thus accepted shall be interpreted as hindering likely or to hinder Great Britain from making any regulations whatever as to the navigation which shall not be contrary to the spirit of such engagements.

Great Britain undertakes to protect foreign traders of every nation engaged in commerce in those parts of the course of the Niger which are or shall be under her sovereignty or protectorate, as if they were her own subjects, provided that such traders conform to the regulations which are or shall be established in accordance with the foregoing.

ARTICLE XXXI.

France accepts under the same reservations and in identical terms the obligations set forth in the preceding Article, so far as they apply to the waters of the Niger, its affluents, branches, and issues, which are or shall be under her sovereignty or protectorate.

ARTICLE XXXII.

Each of the other signatory Powers similarly undertake that they will similarly act in such cases as they exercise or may hereafter exercise rights of sovereignty or protectorate in any part of the Niger, its affluents, branches, or issues.

ARTICLE XXXIII.

The provisions of the present Act of Navigation shall remain in force during times of war. Consequently the navigation of all nations, neutral or belligerent, shall at all times be free for the purposes of trade on the Niger, its branches and affluents, its mouths and issues, as well as on the territorial waters fronting the mouths and issues of the river

The traffic shall likewise remain free notwithstanding the state of war, on its roads, its railways, and canals mentioned in Article XXIX.

The only exception to this principle shall be in cases in connection with the transport of articles intended for a belligerent and held, in accordance with the law of nations, to be contraband of war.

CHAPTER VI.

DECLARATION RELATIVE TO THE ESSENTIAL CONDITIONS FOR NEW ANNEXATIONS ON THE AFRICAN CONTINENT TO BE CONSIDERED EFFECTIVE.

ARTICLE XXXIV.

The Power which in future takes possession of a territory on the coasts of the African continent situated outside its actual possession, or which, having none there, has first acquired them, and the Power which assumes a protectorate, shall accompany either act by a notification addressed to the other Powers signatory to the present Act, so as to enable them to protest against the same if there exist any grounds for their doing so.

1885.
Feb. 26.
Berlin.

ARTICLE XXXV.

The Powers signatory to the present Act recognise the obligation to ensure in the territories occupied by them on the coasts of the African continent, the existence of an adequate authority to enforce respect for acquired rights, and for freedom of trade and transit wherever stipulated.

CHAPTER VII.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

ARTICLE XXXVI.

The Powers signatory to the present general Act reserve to themselves the right of eventually, by mutual agreement, introducing therein modifications or improvements the utility of which has been shown by experience.

ARTICLE XXXVII.

The Powers who may not have signed the present Act shall accept its provisions by a separate Act.

The adhesion of each Power shall be notified in the usual diplomatic manner to the Government of the German Empire, and by it to those of all the signatory and adherent States.

The adhesion shall imply the full right of acceptance of all the obligations, and admission to all the advantages stipulated for in the present general Act.

ARTICLE XXXVIII.

1885. The present general Act shall be ratified with as short a delay
Feb. 26. as possible, and in no case shall that delay exceed a year.
Berlin.

It shall come into force for each Power on the date of its ratifi-
cation by that Power.

Meanwhile the Powers signatory to the present Act bind them-
selves to adopt no measure that shall be contrary to the provisions
of the said Act.

Each Power shall send its ratification to the Government of the
German Empire, which undertakes to ratify the same to all the
signatory Powers of the present general Act.

The ratifications of all the Powers shall remain deposited in the
archives of the Government of the German Empire. When all the
ratifications shall have been produced, a deed of deposit shall be
drawn up in a protocol which shall be signed by the Representa-
tives of all the Powers that have taken part in the Berlin Confer-
ence, and of it a certified copy shall be sent to each of all those
Powers.

In consideration of which, the respective Plenipotentiaries have
signed the present general Act and hereto affixed their seals.

Done at Berlin, the twenty-sixth day of the month of February,
one thousand eight hundred and eighty-five.

DISTANCE AND TIME-TABLE FROM BANANA POINT TO STANLEY FALLS.

—	Dis- tance in English Miles.	Up.		Down.	—	Dis- tance in English Miles.	Up.		Down.
		H. M.	H. M.				H. M.	H. M.	
From Banana Point at the sea to Ponta da Lenha. }	..	3 30	7 0		Brought forward . .	770	243 45	162 5	
Ponta da Lenha to Boma . .	..	3 30			Equator Station to Camp . .	..	10 0	..	
Boma to Mussuko . . . .	..	3 45			Urunga . . . . .	..	7 0	..	
Mussuko to Nokki . . . .	..	1 15			Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	22 0	
Nokki to Vivi	110	1 10			Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Vivi to Léopoldville, over- land	235	94 0	94 0		Bolombo . . . . .	..	7 30	..	
Léopoldville to Kimpoko . .	..	9 0	14 0		Bangala Station, Central Iboko	122	7 0	33 35	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0			Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0			Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0			Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Mswata Station	102	2 30	13 0		Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Mswata to Kwamouth Sta- tion . . . . .	..	4 50	..		Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..		Rubunga, or Upoto Station	208	4 20	14 5	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..		New Rubunga . . . . .	..	2 30	..	
Bolobo Station	88	1 30	15 35		Camp . . . . .	..	8 0	..	
Bolobo to Ungendé . . . .	..	8 0	..		Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..		Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..		Hunda . . . . .	..	6 25	..	
Lukolela Station . . . . .	..	7 0	18 30		Lower Yambunga . . . . .	..	3 50	..	
Lukolela Station to De- serted Village	114	5 0	..		Old Yalnlima	99	8 10	17 0	
Ngombé Station . . . . .	..	10 0	..		Yambungu . . . . .	..	8 15	..	
Usindi . . . . .	..	6 45	..		Basaka . . . . .	..	8 0	..	
Irebu . . . . .	..	1 15	..		Barnu . . . . .	..	8 0	..	
Camp	121	10 0	..		Basoko	72	7 15	15 30	
Equator Station . . . . .	..	10 45	..		Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
Carried forward	770	243 45	162 5		Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
					Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
					Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
					Camp . . . . .	..	10 0	..	
					Camp at mouth of Chofu . .	..	10 45	..	
					Stanley Falls Station . . .	142	5 15	..	
					Total	1413	486 0	264 15	

INDEX.

- Abed bin Salem, slave trader, ii. 144
 Aborigines, study of the, i. 313, 314; ideas of barter among, i. 463
 Accident to Lieut. Braconnier, i. 316
 Accidents few, i. 226
 Accusation, unjust, against the expedition at Malima, i. 299
Actes de Navigation, ii. 396, 397
 Adage, error of an old, i. 198
 Adamoli, Signor, i. 35
 Adansonia, i. 355; ii. 354
 Aden, i. 51
 Advice for the tropics, ii. 323; inattention to health, ii. 320, 321
 Africa, climate wrongly abused, i. 66; climate of, ii. 281; crossing, i. 59; Europeans in, ii. 238; past isolation of equatorial, ii. 372; reclaimable, ii. 373; stations on the east coast, i. 35, 36; unjust abuse of, ii. 252
 African and European life, ii. 238, 239
 — Association International, ii. 259; first expedition of, i. 39
 — chiefs, absurd grandeur of, i. 291, 305
 — climate, abuse of, ii. 284, 298
 — dialects not understood among the staff, i. 196
 — gardens, what may be grown in, ii. 258
 — hill scenes, loneliness of, i. 95
 — International Association, i. 38; ii. 363; its foundation, i. 33
 — life, delusions regarding, ii. 241, 242; life, conditions of enjoyment of, ii. 248-250
 — produce: table of value in Liverpool, ii. 368, 369
 — society, the German, ii. 387
 — sunshine, i. 94, 95
 — Trading Company: *see* Afrikaansche Handels-Vereeniging.
 Africans, incapable of acting in unison, ii. 87
 Afrikaansche Handels-Venootschap, i. 29, 38, 51, 72, 450
 Afrikaansche Handels-Vereeniging, i. 29; offers free conveyance and accommodation, i. 35; 38, 51, 72, 156
 Agricultural prospects, i. 158, 391, 393, 412, 414
 Ague, ii. 328
 "A. I. A." steam launch, i. 477, 484, 501; ii. 57, 59, 116
 Ajakkas invade Congo, i. 11, 12
 Albert Mount (Cameroons), ii. 231
Albion, the ss., i. 28, 38, 39, 49, 57, 63, 64, 67, 79, 83, 88, 91, 103-105, 107, 108
 Alfonso, King, i. 35
 Alima River, i. 233
 Allard, Dr., i. 202, 228; his services, ii. 270, 271
 Alliances, difficulty of forming, i. 388
 Aloes, ii. 354
 Amazon River, i. 86; comparison to the, i. 401; ii. 9
 Ambacca, i. 454.
 Ambassi capital of Congo-land, i. 11
 Ambezé, *see* Ambassi
 Ambrizette River, i. 17
 Ambush at Bolobo, ii. 58
 Amelot, Mons., ii. 51, 56
 America, i. 28
Amomum, ii. 358
 "Amour-propre" on the Congo, ii. 240, 276
 Anchorage at Banana Point, i. 64
 Anglo-Portuguese treaty, ii. 381-384
 Angola, i. 14; Governors-General of, i. 453; boundaries of, i. 455
 Animal life, i. 176
 Animals, domestic, i. 394
 Anderson, Captain, i. 239, 258, 264, 268, 284, 478, 481; ii. 52, 264; his services, 256, 257
 — Mr. (English Foreign Office), ii. 395
 Ankoli, a guide, i. 415, 421, 424, 425, 429, 433, 441
 Antelope, i. 176, 509; skins, ii. 354
 Anzichana, literally people of the interior, i. 3

- Anziehi, literally "Inland," i. 3
 Arabs.—camp of slaves, ii. 145; characteristics, i. 40; dhows, employment of, i. 48; incidents of slave-trading, ii. 169; slave-traders, ii. 121, 133; cunning of, ii. 154; on the Congo, ii. 139; overtaken, i. 142; stations to be avoided, i. 40; trading communities, ii. 360, 363
 Arabs taken down river, ii. 168
Arachis hypogea, ii. 353
 Area drained by rivers, ii. 348; by navigable water, ii. 366
Ariel, H.M.S. i. 86 (note)
 Armament of an expedition, i. 47
 Armed followers of Ngalyema, i. 362, 363, 365
 Armlets, i. 428
 Arutz, Professor, on treaties, ii. 380
 "Artful dodgers," ii. 246, 247
 Arthington mission, i. 496
 Articles for barter and trade, i. 156, 157
 — included in the stores, i. 285
 Aruwimi River, ii. 115
 Assistant chief, qualifications of an, i. 466
 Assistants, disappointing, ii. 244–246; successful, ii. 245
 "Association International du Congo," its objects, i. 51, 52; sovereignty ceded to the, ii. 225
 Austro-Hungarian committee, i. 36
 Avarice of aborigines, i. 46
 Axle tree, a rotten, i. 316
- Ba-bangi tribe, the, i. 295
 Babari tribe, i. 506
 Babwendé territory, i. 30
Bacillus Malariae, ii. 319
 "Bad spirits in the woods," i. 223, 224
 Bagamoyo, i. 40, 45, 48
 Bagenyu tribe, ii. 360
 Baggage of Europeans, i. 285
 Bahamba tribe, ii. 170; villages, ii. 113
 Bahunga tribe, ii. 122, 151, 170; marauders, ii. 133, 134, 137
 Bakanga tribe, ii. 38
 Baker, Sir Samuel, ii. 358
 Bakonde tribe, ii. 360
 Bakongo, i. 137, 118, 220; ii. 209; traders, jealousy of, i. 309; ivory traders, i. 321
 Baknos tribe, ii. 360
 Bakumira, ii. 345
 Bakumu tribe, ii. 360
 Balegga tribe, ii. 360
 Ballay, M., i. 231; ii. 185, 395
 Balni, ii. 43; pirates, ii. 68, 69, 70; river, ii. 70, 345
 Balunda tribe, ii. 360
 Bamarungu tribe, ii. 360
 Bambarre, i. 43
 Bamfumu or Wambundu, i. 323
 Bamu Island, i. 389, 395, 396, 505
 Banava, i. 75, 76, 79, 81, 83, 87, 92; ii. 310, 319, 320, 340
- Banana Creek, i. 77, 85, 109, 116; ii. 228, 282, 468
 — garden, a, i. 500
 — groves, i. 432, 518; ii. 99, 136, 193
 — Point, i. 29, 31, 59, 62–64, 71, 91, 105, 108, 149
 Bananas, ii. 246, 357
 Banfunu tribe, i. 406, 505
 Bangala, tribe, ii. 21, 24, 25, 44, 56, 76, 79, 80–83, 85, 172; justice, ii. 176
 Bangweolo, ii. 340; lake, ii. 358, 359; see also Lake Bemba
 Bankruptcy of Congo merchants, i. 50
 Bankwa of Kinshassa, i. 375
 Banning, Mons., ii. 394
 Banquet at Vivi, i. 153, 154
 Banunu tribe, i. 518
 Banyema tribe, ii. 360
 Banza, a village, i. 161; Chibweta, i. 165; Kimpunzu, i. 162, 163; Kulélé, i. 165; Kulu, i. 135, 161, 163, 165; ii. 215; Lungu, i. 161, 162, 165; Manteka, ii. 214, 299, 303; Mbuba, ii. 207; Mgangila, i. 165; Nkosi, ii. 215; Somba, i. 161, 163; Uvama, i. 161, 162, 165, 197, 198, 199; Vivi, i. 129, 133
 Baobabs, i. 355, 504; ii. 5
 Baptist missionaries, i. 225; missions, i. 496; at San Salvador, i. 13; Missionary Society, i. 13; school, native children at the, ii. 208
Barga, ss. i. 29, 67
 Bargaining in Congo-land, i. 137
 Barometer variations, ii. 331
 Barraek life and Congo life, ii. 265
 Barter among aborigines, i. 463; and trade, articles for African, i. 156, 157
 Bartering, i. 374, 383, 384, 444, 500; ii. 15, 16, 83
 Barth, Dr., the explorer, ii. 385
 — description of the Shari River, ii. 131
 Barua tribe, ii. 360; villages, ii. 113
 Barumba tribe, ii. 170
 Basaka fishing hamlets, ii. 113
 Basazza people, i. 429
 Basoko or Basongo, ii. 115, 119; spears, ii. 356
 Basokos, a fine people, ii. 123
 Basongo: see Basoko.
 Bastian, Dr., the German traveller, i. 13, 34; ii. 387
 Basundi, i. 73
 Baswa Falls, ii. 359; fishermen, ii. 134
 Bateké, i. 73, 137, 148, 513; ii. 28; tribe, i. 295, 407; ivory traders, i. 294; sign of "not guilty," i. 373; ivory trade of the, i. 384
 Baths, advice about, ii. 326, 329
 Batuki tribe, ii. 38, 43, 71
 Bavanga, ii. 345
 Bayneston, i. 253; ii. 298; hill, i. 254, 255
 Bays of Lake Léopold, i. 437

- Bazombo traders, jealousy of, i. 309; ivory traders, i. 321
- Beads as currency, ii. 101, 102
- Beaumont, M. Bonthézier de, i. 35
- Beans, ii. 243, 357
- Bed of the Congo, survey of the, i. 402
- "Beef and beer," Burton's advice, ii. 294, 296
- Beer, ii. 242, 282, 294, 295; of Mantu, i. 512
- Beeswax, ii. 354
- Behaim, Martin de, the explorer, i. 1
- Belgarde, the Abbé, i. 16
- Belgian officers, i. 239; military officers, ii. 259; colony, Congo-land not a, i. 54; enterprise, ii. 388
- Belgique, La*, ss., i. 68, 83, 91, 103, 104, 107, 121, 144, 145, 149, 152, 196, 208, 469
- Belgique Creek, i. 145
- Belgium, i. 26, 28; the first to establish a national committee, i. 33; formation of its International Committee, i. 34, 35
- Bemba, Lake, i. 8
- Benevolence, a valuable virtue, ii. 166
- Bengo River, i. 454
- Benguella, i. 456
- Benin, Bight of, ii. 231; river, ii. 234
- Bentley, Mr., i. 250
- Benzani Congo, a chief, i. 130, 161
- Béré, another name for Wellé River
- Beri Mount, ii. 211
- Berlin Congo Conference, ii. 391-403
- Beverage wanted, a, ii. 323
- Biangala, i. 518; ii. 57
- Bin Kassim, Sultan, i. 43
- Binnie, a Scotch engineer, ii. 165, 272, 427, 275, 276
- Birds, i. 207, 417, 419, 436; ii. 6, 8; immense flocks of, ii. 17; feathers, ii. 354
- Bisa plateau, ii. 361
- Bismarek, Prince, ii. 384, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 393, 396, 399, 402, 403, 407
- Biyerré River, i. 70, 514; ii. 129, 130-132, 170, 319; identical with the Wellé, ii. 130
- Black babies, our "fondness" for, i. 239
- "Blackman's pot," i. 101
- Black's, Mr. Wm., novels, i. 401
- Black Point, ii. 229
- rivers, ii. 77, 359
- Blandy, Mr., of Madeira, i. 153, 154
- Blankets, ii. 324
- Block house at Léopoldville, i. 375, 376
- Bloeme, Mr. de, i. 32, 73; ii. 395
- Blood-brotherhood, i. 30, 306, 385; ii. 23, 38, 48, 68, 79, 86, 89, 90, 104, 132, 171, 177
- Blood-money, i. 525, 527
- Bloodshed, reasons against, i. 523, 524
- Boleko of Bangala, ii. 80, 82, 83
- Bolobo, i. 102, 507, 515-519, 521; ii. 2, 4, 26, 50, 52, 288; serious disturbances at, i. 521; assembly of chiefs, i. 528; centre of ivory trade, ii. 2; frugal chiefs at, ii. 2; departure of a flotilla from, ii. 3; burning of, ii. 56; in arms, ii. 57, 58; second burning of, ii. 183
- Bolombo, ii. 79
- Boma, i. 30, 31, 74, 86-89, 91-93, 96, 102, 103, 105, 109, 113, 116, 132, 133, 143-145, 156, 168, 171, 513; ii. 287, 298, 310, 319, 341; a zareeba, i. 46; its history, i. 96-101; protectorate at, ii. 225; sanatorium at, ii. 228; hospital at, ii. 271
- Bombax, ii. 5, 30
- Bondoh village, ii. 126
- Bonny River, ii. 234
- Borneo, ii. 379
- Bossi missionary station, ii. 185
- Boundaries of Congo Free State, ii. 401; of territories, ii. 400, 401
- Braconnier, Lient., i. 243, 253, 258, 273, 276, 279, 286, 316
- Brandy, ii. 252, 254
- Brass collars, i. 297, 428
- rods as currency, i. 294, 374, 384, 488, 524; ii. 22, 28, 44, 52, 62, 64, 84, 102, 243
- Brazils, shipment of slaves to the, i. 14
- Brazza, Le Comte Savorgnan de, i. 292, 231-234; ii. 385
- Bread, native, i. 431
- Breadth of the Congo, i. 89
- Bridge making, i. 226
- Bridges,—across the Bundi, i. 186; Bula River, i. 187; Luendu, i. 187; Lulu, i. 187; across the Nkusu, i. 154, 186; destroyed, i. 448; Loa, i. 201; Nkusu, 223; Lukuluzi River, i. 312; Inkissi, i. 316; Utuvu, i. 318
- British Expedition of 1816: *see* Tuckey's Expedition.
- cruisers and the slave-trade, i. 451; officers, ii. 273
- Government, action of the, ii. 380
- exploration, ii. 385
- Bronchitis, ii. 327
- Brotherhood-blood; *see* Blood-brotherhood.
- Broyon, Mons., i. 39, 40
- Bruce, James, ii. 385; definitions of heat, ii. 313
- Brush circles, i. 356
- Brussels, i. 25; meeting at the palace, 26; Conference, i. 33, 36
- Buchner, ii. 387
- Buffalo, i. 395; river, i. 212; Soudi killed by a, i. 253; skins, ii. 354; and lion fright, ii. 51
- Buffaloes, i. 176, 177, 509; ii. 8, 241
- Buguku of Ubuma, i. 18; son of Gankabi, i. 422
- Buka Island, i. 110
- Buka'a, i. 315
- Bula River, i. 180, 223, 224, 229; bridge across the, i. 187

- "Bula Matari" (Breaker of Rocks), i. 148, 169, 231, 382, 383; and Makoko, i. 328-331; first use of the name, i. 237; reconciled to Ngalyema, i. 343; dealings with Ngalyema, i. 357; welcome from Gobilu, i. 507; acts as peacemaker, ii. 26, 27; and Stanley, difference between, ii. 28; and Mata Bwyki, ii. 89, 90
 Bula-mbamba Point, i. 65, 81
 Bulungungu, i. 477
 Bunba, ii. 104
 Bundi, the, i. 164, 179, 180; river, i. 172-175, 192, 207, 213, 220, 221, 322, 403; bridge across the, i. 186; valley, i. 186; forest, i. 192; camp, i. 227
 Bunga River, ii. 66; district, ii. 170; *see* also Isanga.
 Bungata, ii. 32, 37; district, ii. 176
 Bunsen, Dr. George Von, i. 34
 Burial, custom, ii. 184; place of Turkey's officers, i. 111
 Burns, Mr. Spencer, ii. 212, 225, 273, 274
 Burnt Rocks or Montes Quemadros, i. 17
 Burroughs and Welcome (London), ii. 325
 Burton, Captain R. F., i. 102; ii. 385
 Buruki River, another name for the Ikembamba, *q.v.*
 — a town, ii. 33
 Burying a war, ii. 45
 Busanga Island, ii. 153
 Busch, Dr., ii. 402, 407
 Bush Fences, around camps, i. 46
 Butter, ii. 324
 Butunu, ii. 19, 21, 23
 Bwa-bwa Njali, the Chief, 290, 291, 292, 303, 304, 377, 378; ii. 53
 By-yanzi, i. 137, 148; ii. 1, 11, 13; ivory sellers, i. 296; tribe, the, i. 295; love of grandeur, i. 527

 Cabbage, ii. 357
 Cabo Lombo boundary, ii. 401
 Cadiz, i. 468
 Café best for breakfast, ii. 324
 Caillie Rene, ii. 385
 Calamities at Léopoldville, i. 486, 487
Calamus Indicus, i. 516; ii. 5, 6, 92, 354
 Calavanga Islet, i. 115, 120, 126, 128
 Calcite, ii. 214
 Callewart, Mons., rumoured murder of, i. 488
 Cam, Diego, i. 1, 9, 14
 Cambier, Lieutenant, i. 39
 Cameron, ii. 385
 Cameroons Mountains, ii. 231
 Camoens' reference to the Zaire, i. 2, 103
 Camp, native, i. 174
 Camps, bush fences around, i. 46
 Camwood powder, i. 384; ii. 48, 356
 "Candle-berry" tree, ii. 358
 Cannibalism charged against the expedition, i. 375
 Canoe, price of a, i. 43; wreck of a, ii. 49
 Canoes, dragging overland, i. 190; towing native, i. 416; speed attained by native, ii. 13; kept submerged, ii. 85; at villages, number of, ii. 109; war, ii. 114, 115; an enormous flotilla of, ii. 136, 137; standing on end, ii. 139, 141
 Canoe-wrights of Wenya, ii. 160
 Cão, Diego, the explorer, *see* Cam
 Caoutchouc plant, ii. 92, 97
 Capes, Lopez, i. 73; Palmas, i. 78; S. Juan, ii. 231
 Capital subscribed for the expedition, i. 26, 27
 Captives taken by slavers, ii. 148
 Capuehin Expedition, the, i. 4; chronicle, i. 9; monks in Congo-land, i. 16
 Caravans at native markets, i. 282; between stations, i. 385
 Caravanserai at Pallaballa, ii. 218
 Cargoes of ocean steamers, i. 92
 Carter and Cadenhead, massacre of, i. 216
 Cashew, the, ii. 358
 Cassava, ii. 243, 357; bread, i. 374; plantations, i. 414; decomposing, ii. 84
 Castle Hill at Vivi, i. 115, 117-120, 123-127; ii. 257
 Castor oil, ii. 353
 Casualties during a year, i. 241; in the expedition, i. 283
 Catarrhs, ii. 327
 Catfish, ii. 160
 Cattle, ii. 361
 Cemetery at Banana, i. 75, 76
 Ceremony of Blood-brotherhood, ii. 24; *see* also Blood-brotherhood.
 Chambezi, ii. 340; described by Livingstone, ii. 362; river, identical with the Congo, i. 8, 358; region, extent of, ii. 361; its character, ii. 362
 Character of the natives, i. 29, 30
 Cheese, ii. 324
 Chibalé mountains, the, i. 8; ii. 340, 361, 362
 Chief, a jealous, i. 522, 533; a brutal, i. 218-220; a Herculean, ii. 85; of Stanley Falls Station, ii. 165
 Chiefs.—of Congo, i. 17; in an expedition, i. 48; on the east coast, the obstructive, i. 40, 41, 43; subsidised, i. 54; of Vivi, i. 129, 130, 142; of Nsanda, meeting of the, i. 164-170; jurisdiction of, i. 295; military strength of, i. 350; treaties with, i. 473-477; power of native, i. 508, 509; of Bolobo, assembly of, i. 528; wealth of native, ii. 2, 3; frugal, ii. 2; (native) farewell at Léopoldville, ii. 191; forms of treaties with native, ii. 195-197, 205, 206; (native) and districts, list of, ii. 198-204
 Chigoes, i. 214
 Chikombo, i. 46
 Chikwanga (Cassava-bread), ii. 10, 11
 Chili pepper and tears, ii. 40

- Chills, dangers of, ii. 286, 287, 296, 297, 309, 324, 327, 329
 Chilungu, i. 475
 China, the ss. i. 455, 456, 460
 Chinsalla, i. 139, 161; creek, i. 110; plateau, i. 127; village, i. 119, 123, 124
 Chionzo district, i. 115, 161, 163, 166; plateau, i. 120, 125, 126
 Chofu River, ii. 153
 Christianity, conversion of the Congo king to, i. 11
 Christmas Day at Iboko, ii. 173; presents, i. 374
 Christopherson, Albert, Danish sailor, i. 71, 107, 208, 224, 238, 239, 258, 264, 268, 275, 347, 414, 449; his services, ii. 255, 256
 Chronicle of the Capuehin expedition, i. 9
 Chroniclers, unreliability of the old, i. 5
 Chumbiri, i. 514, 515; ii. 5, 26
 Chunyu, i. 45
 Civilisation, absence of conveniences of, ii. 239
 Clapperton, ii. 385
 Clarence Cove, ii. 231
 Clifty Point, i. 487
 Climate, abuse of the African, i. 66; ii. 284, 298; and conduct, ii. 220, 221; of Africa, ii. 280; of Upper Congo regions, ii. 289
 Cloth markets, ii. 177
 — payments in, i. 193; station stores of, i. 284
 Cloths in Africa, European old, i. 130, 131
 Clothing in the tropics, i. 65; ii. 326
 Coal-trade, the, i. 74
 Coast, the, at the mouth of the Congo, i. 61, 62
 Cocoa as a beverage, ii. 322
 Coffee, ii. 375; as a beverage, ii. 322; shipped at Benguela, i. 456
 Cognac, ii. 242, 308; dangers of the *petit verre*, i. 66
 Cola nuts, i. 384
 Cold and heat, influence of, ii. 293, 294
 — in Congo-land, ii. 314, 315
 — camp, i. 212
 — water, dangers of drinking, ii. 315, 317
 — winds, i. 264; ii. 298; on the river, ii. 172
 Coldest spot in the country, i. 210
 "Colds," African, ii. 286
 Collars of brass wire, i. 297
 Coloured men and Europeans, relative numbers of, i. 285
 Comber, Mr. T. J. (Baptist Missionary), i. 17, 445, 496
 Comblaine rifles, i. 47
 Comité of the Association, i. 29, 37, 38, 114, 150, 195, 225, 226, 448; aims of the, i. 30, 31, 38; its resolutions and instructions, i. 26-28; meetings at Brussels, i. 26-28; its objects, i. 50; change of name, i. 51; indiscreet disclosures of the, i. 55, 56; d'Etudes du Haut Congo, its formation, i. 26; ii. 259; Internationale Association du Congo, ii. 259; report to, i. 462
 Commerce in the Congo basin, i. 30, 31; in ground nuts, ii. 215; free on the Congo, ii. 390, 393
 Commercial expeditions, character of, i. 24, 25; travellers, i. 210, 214
 Committees, national, i. 35, 36
 Commonwealth of stations, i. 54
 Commune, Mons del, ii. 225
 Communities, ancient, i. 316
 Communication between stations, i. 285
 Compeigne, M. de, i. 231; ii. 385
 Compensation for murder, i. 525, 527
 Complaints from the staff, i. 70, 71
 Conditions of enjoyment of African life, ii. 248-250
 Confederation at Léopoldville, i. 495; of natives, i. 53
 Conference at Berlin, ii. 391
 Conferees, native fondness for, i. 167
 Congo and Central African Company, i. 76, 92
 — Cañon, ii. 210; atmosphere of the, i. 241
 — Free State, not a Belgian Colony, i. 54; building the Free State, ii. 378; Free State territory, ii. 365; Free State boundaries, ii. 401
 Congo la Lemba, i. 179; ii. 217; hills, i. 162
 Congo-land, erroneous names in, i. 3; beginning of the history of, i. 9; subdivided into dominions, i. 10; mission in, i. 11, 13, 16; the slave-trade, i. 14; proper, extent and boundaries, i. 11; boundaries of, i. 17; essentiality of freemen for work in, i. 62; native customs not to be changed, i. 53, 54; business intercourse in, i. 53; subdivisions of power in, i. 17-19; the king of, breaks the allegiance to the Portuguese, i. 12; elders, i. 17; national flag of, i. 17; Totela, King of, i. 17
 Congo River, i. 20, 77; altitude at Stanley Falls, ii. 343; beginning the ascent, i. 79; barren of classic associations, i. 101; breadth of the, i. 89; force and soundings, i. 111; the Brussels proposals, i. 26, 27; Camoens' reference to the, i. 103; commerce on the, i. 58; currents, i. 114, 115, 117, 249; chiefs, i. 17; proposal for negotiations with chiefs, i. 52; Christian missions on the, i. 58; compared to other rivers, i. 401; course of the, ii. 343, 344; described by a Capuehin father, i. 4; discovery of the mouth, i. 1, 9; districts and their native chiefs, list of, ii. 198-204; divisions of the, ii. 344; expedition on, i. 24; exploration, how to utilise, i. 24; fac-

- tories, i. 63, 64; Father Merolla's description of the, i. 4; the highway of the, i. 24; historically without fame, i. 102; Islands, i. 110, 249, 515, 516; ii. 14, 30, 38, 65, 97; jottings for pilots on the, i. 403-405; large steamers on the, ii. 7-9; length, ii. 339; length of its tributaries, ii. 347; Lopez's extraordinary description of the Lower, i. 3; (Lower), description of, i. 80; (Lower), extent of, ii. 340; merchants, character of, i. 32; missionaries on the, i. 496; the mouth of the, i. 64-63, 80, 81; navigation, i. 85, 86, 113, 114, 116; ii. 339, 340, 346; no distinctive native name for the, i. 202; old names of the, i. 4, 2; Purchas's description of the, i. 4, 5; rise and fall, i. 87; ships for the, ii. 367; soundings at Vivi, i. 128, 129; soundings on the river, i. 402; steamers for the, ii. 367; tides on the, i. 87; tributaries, ii. 344, 352; Tuekey's description of the, i. 5, 6; valley of the Lower, i. 62; villages, ii. 45; volume of the river, i. 86, 87, 402, 403; ii. 132; work on the, ii. 252; (Upper) first steamer on, i. 375; formation of the expedition, i. 394; expedition (1883), i. 501; traders, ii. 21, 22, 23; extent of, ii. 340; basin, ii. 348; products of the region, ii. 352-358
- Congo life *v.* Barrack life, ii. 265
- basin, table of our actual knowledge of the, ii. 364; political divisions of the, ii. 365; development of the, ii. 374
- scenery, i. 92-94, 111, 112, 124-126, 171-173, 175, 176, 179-184, 243-247, 250, 255, 256, 258, 262, 264, 324, 325, 389-391, 3. 6, 397, 399-401, 504, 505, 511-513, 515, 516; ii. 8, 9, 11, 17, 45, 67, 77, 79, 94-93, 152
- Congoesse shrewdness in trade, i. 137
- Conical huts, ii. 126, 127
- Constantine, the Grand Duke, i. 35
- Contracts, character of, i. 31, 32
- Conveniences of civilisation absent, ii. 239
- Convention, delimitation, ii. 400
- Conveying stores, 155, 182, 210, 211, 214
- Copper, ii. 356, 357, 375
- Coquillat, Lieut., ii. 58, 71, 76, 80, 177, 178, 264, 267, 289
- Cordier, Capitaine, i. 475
- Cost of the flotilla of the Expedition, i. 68; of negotiations at Ntamo, i. 310
- Costume, natives in gorgeous, i. 364
- Cotton, growth of, ii. 358
- Cottonwood, i. 430
- Countries represented at Brussels in 1878, i. 26, 28
- Country, a rich, ii. 97
- Cowries, as currency, ii. 102
- Creek Town (Old Calabar), ii. 233
- Crocodile Creek, i. 101
- Crocodiles, i. 209, 398, 436; ii. 2, 6, 8, 18; chased by, i. 245; their numbers, i. 262; Isle of, i. 110
- Cross River (Calabar), ii. 232
- Crudgington, Mr., i. 250
- Cucumbers: *see* Vegetables.
- Cultivable soil, ii. 243
- Currency, articles of native, i. 193; brass rods as, i. 294, 374, 384, 488, 524; ii. 22, 28, 44, 52, 62, 64, 84, 102, 243; beads as, ii. 101, 102; change of, at Langa-Langa, ii. 101; cowries as, ii. 102
- Currents of the Congo, i. 114, 115, 117, 249
- Customs difficulty at Sierra Leone, i. 57
- Daily Telegraph* and *New York Herald* Expedition, i. 8, 58
- Daly, Judge, New York, i. 36
- Dance, a fierce, i. 265, 266; an eccentric, i. 296
- Danckelman, Dr., ii. 313; observations, ii. 310, 311, 330-334
- Danube, comparison to the, ii. 9
- Dapper, the Dutch Geographer, i. 12
- "Dark Continent," the, i. 20, 22, 189
- Dar Salaam port, i. 44
- Date palms, ii. 5
- Dauvas, Berand, & Co., i. 76
- Dead, saluting the, i. 75
- Dealing, prospective results of fair, i. 53
- Deanes, Mr., i. 152, 210
- Death, from sickness, ii. 290; native views of, i. 392; causes of, ii. 306-309; during a year, i. 241; occurring in the cold season, i. 283
- Deauville, i. 23
- De Barras, the explorer, i. 2
- Deauville railway, laying a, ii. 223
- De Conreel, Baron, ii. 388, 389, 390, 407
- Dé-dé-dé, chief of Nsanda, i. 116, 118, 133, 138, 164, 166-168, 172, 180
- Defence of river banks, a curious, ii. 135
- Defensive measures at a station, i. 376
- De Lannay, Count, ii. 394, 403
- Delbrück, Herr, i. 34
- Delimitation Convention, ii. 400
- Delusions as to African life, 241, 242
- Denham, ii. 385
- Depopulation through slavery, i. 96, 97
- Desolation, an effect of war, i. 173
- De Soto, the navigator, ii. 374
- Destrain, Lieut., ii. 225, 277
- Dews to be guarded against, ii. 324
- Diamond Rock, i. 112, 113
- Diary form of narrative, advantages of, i. 386
- Diegos Bay, i. 63
- Dieppe, i. 23
- Dinner, a factory, i. 72, 73; a first, ii. 283
- Disappearance of two men, mysterious, i. 370
- Disappointing assistants, ii. 244, 245

- Disasters at Kimpoko, ii. 56; at Kwamouth, ii. 55
 Discipline on Portuguese ships, laxity of, i. 458, 460
 Discovery, a shocking, ii. 142
 — of Lake Léopold, i. 434, 435, 436; of the mouth of the Congo, i. 1
 Discussion at the Berlin Conference, ii. 394
 Discussions among Europeans, danger of, i. 47
 Dishonesty of the natives, i. 304
 Distance accomplished in a year, i. 241
 — between Vivi and Isangila, i. 189; traversed to the Biyerré, ii. 134
 Districts and their native chiefs, list of, ii. 198-204
 Disturbances with natives, cause of, i. 156
 Divers (bird), i. 397, 436; ii. 6
 Division of Stanley Pool, ii. 263
 Diya village, ii. 98
 Doctors, insufficient knowledge of climate, ii. 318, 319, 321
 Dogs, ii. 2
 Dom Pedro, King of Congo, i. 17
 Donkeys, Teneriffe, i. 225
 Dover Cliffs, i. 324, 325, 396, 505
 Down the stream, going, ii. 168
 Dragon flies, i. 419
 Draper Islands, i. 82, 84
 Draughts, cold, ii. 305; dangers of, ii. 285, 286, 296, 327
 Drees, Frederic, ii. 276
 Drill, a life's, ii. 266
 Drink, ii. 282, 283, 291, 295, 322; in the tropics, i. 65-67; on the Lower Congo, i. 193, 194; temptations to, i. 84; effects of, ii. 251, 252-254
 Drowned, a native boy, i. 289
 Drowning cases, i. 486; ii. 55
 Drugs for the tropics, ii. 325, 327
 Drumbird, the, i. 207
 Drum signals, curious, ii. 158
 Dualla, i. 273, 274, 276, 306, 307; ii. 39-42, 55, 64
 Ducks, i. 417
 Dudoma, i. 46
 Duke Town (Old Calabar), ii. 232
 Dust film on Lake Léopold, i. 434
 Dutalis, Lieut., i. 41, 43-45
 Dutch conception of comfort, i. 76; factories, i. 64; hoes, i. 201
 "Dutch House," the, i. 72
 — houses, i. 75, 76; hospitality at, i. 84
 — merchants, bankruptcy of, i. 50
 — structures, superiority of, i. 83, 84
 Dutriens, M., i. 42, 43
 Duty, strict performance of, i. 152; the calls of, i. 22
 Duveyrier, the explorer, ii. 385
 Dysentery, i. 207; ii. 307, 328
 East India Company, ii. 379
 Edwin Arnold River, i. 287, 403
 Eela, wife of Kibibi, i. 370, 421, 422
 Egrets, i. 417
Elais Guineënsis, i. 74; ii. 5, 342, 352
 Elders of Congo, i. 17
 Elephants, i. 176, 177, 395, 509; ii. 8, 241, 355, 356; swimming, i. 213
 Elliott, Captain J. G., i. 470, 471, 476; ii. 225
 Elobey Island (Coriseo Bay), ii. 231
 Embo-Embo, i. 416
 Emigrant, questions by an, ii. 312, 313
En Avant, ss., i. 68-70; 88, 104, 133, 134, 144, 145, 154, 190, 196, 209, 211, 220, 226, 227, 230, 469; ii. 12, 19, 29, 33-35, 57, 58, 60, 87, 105, 116, 137, 142, 233; in rust, i. 483; on Stanley Pool, i. 398, *seq.*; on the Kwa River, i. 410; under repair, i. 261, 501
 England, i. 26, 28; and Portugal, treaty for suppression of the slave-trade, i. 15; cause of withdrawal from the Association, i. 36; difficulties which kept it aloof from the Association, i. 34; pedestrian exercise in, i. 23
 English factory at Boma, i. 92
 Enjéli, son of Ngalyema, i. 306, 382, 383; ii. 191
 Equatorial Africa, past isolation of, ii. 372; the heart of, i. 514
 Equator, missionaries at the, i. 496; station, ii. 38, 39, 76, 177, 180, 182, 267, 289, 320; comfort at, ii. 70, 71-73
 Equipment of a station, ii. 243; of the Expedition, i. 29, 41, 42
 Errors in names of Congo-land, i. 2, 3
 Escapes from drowning, i. 487
Esperance, ss., i. 68, 83, 104, 113, 114, 116, *Eucalyptus*, the, i. 103, 151
Euphorbia, i. 158; ii. 353
 Euphrates, comparison to the, i. 401
 Europe, arrival in (1878), i. 20
 European and African life, ii. 238, 239
 European assistants, i. 144
 Europeans and coloured men, relative numbers of, i. 285
 Europeans, arrival of, at Léopoldville, i. 445; arrival of young, 282; finding delight in African life, i. 248; frigid towards natives, i. 248, 517; health of, 152; in Africa, ii. 238; inconvenience of having too many, i. 225, 226; indolence of, ii. 219, 224; at the tropics, i. 85; lesson to, from nature, ii. 216; not to be encouraged in discussion, i. 47; required in Congo-land, class of, i. 25; to be isolated, i. 47; why they succumb, i. 224
 Exercise, best hours for, ii. 326
 Exhibition at Léopoldville, i. 379, 381
 Expedition, African Association's first, i. 33; French, i. 159; instructions for an Eastern, i. 39 *et seq.*; lost in the bush,

- an, i. 382; number of its officers, i. 67; *Daily Telegraph* and *New York Herald*, i. 8; stores, ii. 76; strength of the, i. 378; the, charged as being mysterious, i. 55; the present, i. 24; considering its character, i. 24; its funds, i. 26, 27; its origin, i. 21; the first meeting, i. 26, 27; the second International, i. 41; to Kwilu-Niadi, i. 470, 471, 474, 476; ii. 212; to the Congo, i. 1-7; to the Upper Congo, start of the, i. 394; (1883) to the Upper Congo, its strength, i. 503; to the Upper Congo, stores for the, i. 501, 502
- Expeditions, equipment for, i. 41, 42
- Exploration, a slow, i. 233; by Great Britain, ii. 385; in Africa, ii. 373; of the Kwa River, i. 409-416; on the Congo, class of men required for, i. 58
- Exports of Boma, i. 98
- Exposure to heat or cold, ii. 315; to night air, ii. 283-285, 308; to wet, ii. 285
- Face-scarring an ornament, ii. 100, 101
- Factories at Boma, i. 91; at Bamy, ii. 234; at Elobey Island, ii. 231; at Gaboon, ii. 231; at Kissanga, i. 81, 82; at Mussuko, i. 112; at Porto da Lenha, i. 82, 83; at Nokki, i. 113; barter at, i. 85; for the Upper Congo, ii. 369; native trade at, i. 55; on the Congo, i. 63, 64
- Factory, coloured help at a, i. 73; a dinner at a, i. 72, 73; managers, i. 73; stores, i. 74, 75; work at a, i. 74
- Fair dealing with the natives, i. 170
- Faithful officers, ii. 255-279
- Famine, a sham, ii. 16, 129; at Bolombo, ii. 79
- Fantail, ii. 6
- Fares from Loanda to Lisbon, i. 445
- Farquhar Islands, i. 82
- Fathomless Point, i. 81
- Feathers of tropic birds, ii. 354
- Fernandez, Senor, i. 153
- Fernando Po, ii. 231, 232
- Ferry at Nselo, ii. 193; Kondo, ii. 214; on Lumbamba River, i. 288; on the Gordon Bennett, i. 290; traffic at Nsango, i. 479
- Ferry, M., Jules, ii. 388
- Ferrying, dangerous, ii. 157
- Fertile land, i. 186
- Fetish, i. 200; customs, i. 385; rock, i. 89, 90
- Fetishism, i. 305; ii. 111
- Fever, i. 411, 445; at Manyanga, i. 271, 272
- Fevers, ii. 283, 284, 286-288, 296, 301, 310, 322, 328
- Fibres, ii. 351
- Ficus*, ii. 92
- Fiddler's Elbow, i. 112
- Fighting.—at Bolobo, effects of, 60; not to be rashly begun, i. 46; power of chiefs, i. 350
- Fire, a heavy, i. 472, 473
- Finery of chiefs, i. 202
- Fines for bloodshed, i. 524
- Fiote law, i. 220
- Firefly*, H M.S., i. 86 (note)
- Fires, annual, i. 316; destructive of vegetation, i. 94, 180, 197
- Fish, ii. 2, 243; presents of, ii. 160; smoke cured, ii. 159
- Fish-eagles, i. 397, 436; ii. 6
- Fishermen, i. 256; at Manyanga, i. 267; Baswa, ii. 154; Wenya, ii. 154; Yakui, ii. 125; on Lake Léopold, i. 438, 439, 440; on the Lukanga, ii. 46; Wane Rukura, ii. 154
- Fisher tribes, 154-159
- Fishing hamlets, ii. 113; minnow, i. 262; nets, natives making, ii. 159; Wenya method of, ii. 157, 158
- Flag, employment of the Association's, i. 495; importance of a recognised, i. 37, 38; national, of Congo, i. 17; of the Association, i. 35, ii. 42; the choice of a, i. 35
- Flamingoes, ii. 6
- Flamini, Francesco, mechanician, i. 68, 152, 238, 249, 244, 284, 381; his services, ii. 259
- Flamini Island, i. 253, 254
- Flannels, wet, ii. 284, 285, 310
- Flood, possible, at Banana, i. 78; precautions against, i. 83
- Flotilla of steamers, the expedition, i. 68; its cost, i. 68
- Fogs to be guarded against, ii. 324
- Food, abundant, i. 257; consumption of, i. 221; for a voyage, ii. 76; for the tropics, the best, ii. 294; influence of, on work, i. 154; in the tropics, i. 65, 199, ii. 321, 322, 323, 324, 329; on the Congo, i. 103; on the Upper Congo, ii. 10, 15; quantity consumed daily, ii. 13; scant at Mfwa, i. 295; scarcity of, i. 436, *sqg.*; scarcity at Léopoldville, i. 480; supply stopped, i. 302, 303; want of variety, i. 211
- Foraging, free, i. 222
- Forest, a dense, ii. 13; a submerged, i. 443; at Lukolela, ii. 66, 67; cutting through the, i. 221; Lama Lankori, i. 390; lost in an unexplored, i. 177, 192; ii. 30, 91, 92, 93, 97, 98, 114, 215, 311, 353, 374; scenery, ii. 5; of the Lower Congo, i. 88, 89; seen from the coast, i. 62
- Fortifying villages, i. 524
- Fowls, ii. 243; as food, ii. 10
- France, i. 26-28; action of, ii. 381-390; agreement of the Association with, ii. 388; territories of, ii. 400, 403, 404
- Frankincense, ii. 354, 374
- Franktown, i. 476
- Free commerce on the Congo, ii. 390-393

- Freemen, in Congo-land, essentiality of, i. 52
 Free State territory, ii. 365
 Free State not a Belgian colony, i. 54; Free State boundaries, ii. 401
 French.—Catholic Mission at Boma, i. 100; expedition, i. 159; flag, Malameen's, i. 292; Missions in Congo-land, i. 16; territory, ii. 365; compel the withdrawal of the Portuguese, i. 14; traders, i. 92; treaty with Makoko, i. 292
 Frere, Sir Bartle, i. 36
 Fruit eating, ii. 326, 327, 329
 Fruits, i. 103, 148, 151, 152, 381, 393; ii. 71, 258, 357
 Fuel, scarcity on the Kwa, i. 423, 428
 Fumu Ntaba, Chief of Bateké, i. 507, 508, 509, 510
 Furs, ii. 375
 Fyne, Loch, in Scotland, i. 400

 Gaboon, ii. 230; factories, ii. 231; missions, ii. 231
 Gad-flies, i. 214, 419
 Gamankono, Chief of Malima, i. 295-300, 380
 Gambié, Chief of Kimpoko, i. 298, 506; ii. 56
 Game, i. 205, 206, 213, 222
 Gampa, a rival of Bwa-bwa Njahi's, i. 308
 Ganchu, i. 304, 306, 381, 406, 497, 490; ii. 191
 Ganchu's Point, i. 408
 Gandelay, a Banfunu chief, i. 405, 406, 407, 510
 Ganges, comparison to the, i. 401
 Gankabi, Queen of Musyé, i. 415, 417, 418, 421, 422, 424-426, 433, 445; ii. 27
 Gantiéné, i. 507
 Ganto village, i. 430
 Gardening, season for, i. 381
 Gardens, making, i. 379, 409, 500
 Gardens, ii. 245; at Equator, ii. 71; at Léopoldville, ii. 52; at Vivi, laying out, i. 117, 148; what may be grown in Central African, ii. 258
 Garrison, importance of a, i. 121
 Garrisons of stations, i. 285
 Gastric fever, i. 213
 Gatula, a Bolobo chief, i. 516, 517, 521, 524, 525, 526, 527; ii. 3
 Geographical expeditions inadequate, i. 24
 Geology, ii. 209-211, 214; at Lake Mamtumba, ii. 47-48
 German Expedition, 1873-75, i. 418; exploration, ii. 386, 387
 Germany, i. 26; action of, ii. 381, 384; formation of a National Committee, i. 34; lectures in, ii. 399
 Giagas invasion: see Ajakkas.
 Gibraltar, i. 52, 58
 Gillis, Mr. Albert (Duke Town), ii. 233

 Gin, ii. 251, 252, 282, 307; used as currency, i. 193
 Gin-drinking natives, i. 202
 Ginger, wild, ii. 358
 Giraffe, ii. 241
 Giral, a French quartermaster, i. 408
 Glasgow Chamber of Commerce, ii. 383
 Glave, Mr., ii. 66, 183, 288
 Glover, Sir John, i. 57, 58
 Goats, ii. 243
 Goat-skins, ii. 354
 Gobila, Papa, Chief of Mswatu, i. 405, 408, 409, 414, 507, 510, 511; ii. 14
 Gold, ii. 357, 375
 Goldsmith, Sir Frederick, ii. 187
 Gong, the signal of the, i. 340
 Goods for inland trade, superior quality required, i. 311
 "Good View Station," i. 505
 Gordon Bennett River, i., 290, 293, 390, 403; ii. 53
 Gordon, General, letter from, ii. 226 (note); promised aid of, ii. 225, 226
 Goree, i. 57
 Government of the Free State, ii. 406, 407
 Gandy's, Lieut., Expedition, i. 13
 Grang, Lieut., i. 382, 478, 481, 483, 489; ii. 269
 Granville, Earl, ii. 381
 Grass burning, i. 118, 180, 197
 — density of, i. 163; height of the, i. 197; tropical, ii. 301, 302; used as am-bushments, i. 161
 Grave, the first at Léopoldville, ii. 270
 Gray, Mr., i. 73
 Green snakes, i. 205
 Grefulhe, Mons., i. 43, 45, 49
 "Grog," importance of, i. 193; native fondness for, i. 149
 Ground-hog, i. 205
 Ground nuts, i. 156, 414; ii. 353; in commerce, ii. 215, 342
 Groves or trees a sign of villages, i. 62, 315
 Guava, ii. 246
 Guineum, ii. 30, 67
Guibourtia, ii. 353
 Guides, i., 164, 171, 181, 182, 184, 410; ii. 3, 28, 69, 153
 Guiltlessness, curious way of showing, i. 373
 Guinea-fowl, ii. 8
 Gun-eopal, ii. 342, 353, 355; trees, ii. 97, 98; ii. 374
 Guns, i. 384; ii. 30
 Gunbearers, i. 47, 48
 Gunpowder, trade in, i. 75; used in rejoicing, i. 373
 Gurba River, ii. 131
 Guyot Abbé, a missionary, ii. 50, 268; drowned, ii. 55

 Habit and nature, i. 199
 Hair, fashion of wearing, i. 429

- Hamadi's slavery and escape, i. 260
 Hannsens, Capt., i. 382, 476, 477, 489, 518, 520; ii. 166, 188, 191, 225, 227, 264; his services, ii. 260, 261
 Harbour at Loanda, i. 451
Harkaway, the, 85, 468
 Harou, Lieutenant, i. 243, 253, 258, 279, 281, 408, 488
 Haute-beest, i. 205, 206
 Hathorne, Captain, i. 49
 Hawks, i. 419
 Head, protection for the, ii. 318, 325
 Headquarters at Vivi, i. 149, 151
 Health at Bolobo, ii. 184, 185; at Equator Station, ii. 74; in the tropics, Dr. Martin's advice, ii. 329
 Health-table of stations, ii. 306
 Heat and cold in Congo-land, ii. 314, 315; influence of, ii. 293, 294
 Heat, Bruce's definitions of, ii. 313; tropical, ii. 282
 Heliwa, a slave, ii. 73
 Henry VII. Renss, Prince, i. 34
 Herd tracks, i. 177, 183, 201
Heron, the ss., i. 474
 Herzog, Dr., i. 34
 Henvel, Dr. Van den, ii. 53, 191
 Hides, ii. 375
 Highland leve's inhabited, ii. 303
 Hills seen from the coast, i. 62; "solemn-looking," i. 95
 Hindi Saywa, i. 48
 Himpopotami, i. 395, 396, 398, 417, 424; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 241, 375; feeding ground, i. 90; shooting, i. 103; teeth, ii. 354
 Hiring men, i. 31
 Haldister, Mr., ii. 272
 Holidays, i. 153, 154
 Holland, i. 26, 28
 Holy Isle, a place of sepulchre, i. 419
 Homesickness, i. 225
 Homicidal officer, a, ii. 55
 Honey, ii. 364
 Honour of work, ii. 278, 279
 Hop Bitters, ii. 318
 Hopkins, Captain, H.M. Consul, i. 98
 Horses, the Isle of, i. 12
 Hospitable mission of a station, i. 37
 Hospital at Boma, ii. 271
 Hospitality dangers of coast, ii. 282, 283
 Hostages left at Ntamo, i. 309, 310
 Hostile natives, i. 432, 442, 514; ii. 4, 11, 36, 78, 111, 113
 Hostility, masked, i. 337; native, at Malima and Mfwa, i. 309
 House, advice for building a, ii. 323
 Houses at Vivi, mapping sites for, i. 147; means of defence for, i. 280
 Huard Point, i. 65, 77
 Hudson River, comparison to, i. 401
 Hutchinson, Mrs. Margaret, i. 9
 Huts, conical, ii. 126, 127; formation of native, ii. 103
 Hutzfeldt, Count, ii. 394
 Hydrobromic acid in cases of fever, i. 272, 273, 274
Hyphæne guineensis, i. 516
 Hypochondria, ii. 241
 Ibaka, Chief of Bolobo, i. 518; history of, i. 519, 520, 521; 522, 524, 525, 527; ii. 1, 15, 26, 29, 57, 60, 61, 64, 65
 Ibanza, ii. 105; a chief of Upoto, ii. 171; the dr. adel, ii. 62, 881
 Ibari River, another name for the Kwa, i. 412
 Ibingi, ii. 47
 Ibis, ii. 6, 8
 Iboko, ii. 24, 25, 43, 44, 69, 79, *et seq.*, 173-175, 178-180, 353, 354
 — danger at, ii. 87; swordsmiths, ii. 356
 Ibunda, ii. 103
 Ichimpi district, i. 115, 121, 161, 163
 Idleness of natives, i. 393
 Idols, native, i. 199
 Ifwe, Chief of Muleké, i. 429
 Ignorance of African climate, ii. 281, 284
 Iguana skin girdles, ii. 111
 Iguanas, ii. 2
 Ikassa, ii. 103, 170
 Ikelenba River, ii. 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37; ii. 77, 78, 344
 Ikengé, a chief, ii. 72
 Ikengo, ii. 29, 30
 Ikangi, ii. 98
 Ikirism, ii. 111
 Ikoko, ii. 47
 Ikubu River, ii. 65
 Ikulu village, ii. 12, 47
 Imeme, ii. 96
 Impali village, i. 428
 Impango, at Gaboon, ii. 230
 Impila, i. 292
 Imports of Boma, i. 98
 Indemnity for war, ii. 61
 Indian corn, i. 381
 India-rubber, ii. 355; plant, i. 192; ii. 5, 342, 353, 367, 375
 Indolence of the natives, i. 193
 Indus, comparison to the, i. 401
 Industry, the spirit of, i. 142
 Inebriety of natives, i. 315
 Inga, i. 173, 175, 176, 177, 179; cataracts, i. 160, 227; peak, i. 353, 396; plateau, i. 173, 221
 Inganda, ii. 30-33, 38-42
 Ingham, Mr. and Mrs., ii. 212, 213, 355
 Ingya, Chief of Mfwa, i. 295, 307
 Inkissi, ii. 192; Falls, ii. 211; river, i. 288, 316, 317, 403, 478; ii. 193
 Inkissism, ii. 111
 Instructions for eastern expeditions, i. 45
 Instructions framed at Brussels, i. 27, 28

- Intemperance, ii. 282, 283, 291, 305, 306, 307, 308, 311, 319, 322, 329
- International African Association, ii. 259
- International Association, i. 37, 38; its objects, i. 40; its treaties, i. 18; financial position, i. 35
- "International Association Africaine," its purpose, i. 50
- International Association's work at Boma, i. 101
- International cohesion, ii. 379; commission, ii. 406; Expedition, the second, i. 41
- Intoxicants, abuse of, ii. 251, 252, 253, 254
- Irebu, ii. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 38, 42, 43, 44, 45, 69, 354; swordsmiths, ii. 356; warriors, ii. 16
- Iringi, ii. 98, 171
- Iron, ii. 356; houses of native chiefs at Calabar, ii. 233; manufactures of Yalulima, i. 111; stores, i. 147; works of Uvira, ii. 364
- Ironstone, ii. 67; at Lake Mantumba, ii. 47, 48
- Irrawaddy, comparison to the, i. 461
- Irungu, ii. 127, 132
- Isanga River, ii. 315
- Isangi town, ii. 169
- Isangila, i. 155, 160, 165, 167, 171, 175, 181, 182, 184, 185, 186; ii. 214, 215, 298, 339, 369, 373, 382, 416, 471, 474, 476, 478, 489, 513; chiefs, i. 184, 185; natives, i. 237; camp at, i. 239; conveying wagons and stores to, i. 240; staff at, i. 242; stores at, i. 242; scenery at, i. 243, 244; clearing the camp, i. 248; founding a station at, i. 283; garrison at, i. 285; cataract, i. 181, 184; falls, i. 229
- Islands of the Congo, i. 110, 249, 389, 515, 516; ii. 14, 30, 38, 65, 97, 153
- Islands uninhabitable, i. 82
- Isombo, ii. 125
- Itaka, ii. 152
- Itawa, Eastern, ii. 362
- Itimba village, i. 516
- Itimbiri River, ii. 109, 110, 112, 131, 345, 352
- Itumba, i. 518
- Itumbi, i. 46; ii. 57, 60, 61
- Itse and Ngalyema, identity of, i. 304
- Itunzima rapids, i. 254, 257
- Iuka of Lukolela, ii. 14, 48, 68, 177
- Iunga, ii. 98
- Ivory, ii. 364, 375; purchase of, i. 380; sold by Watwa, ii. 48; trade, the centre of the, ii. 2; trade at Langa-Langa, ii. 102; trade, Congo, ii. 354, 355, 356; trade at Ngauza, ii. 99; traders, Bateké, i. 294; traders, character of, i. 387; traders, intrigues of, i. 319, 320, 321; trading chiefs, wealth of, i. 310, 311; trading in, i. 383, 384; trading, success of Ngalyema through, i. 305
- Iyenzi, ii. 209
- Iyumbi, ii. 11, 12; mountain, i. 321, 322, 323, 333, 390; ii. 192, 341
- Jaggas, the, invasion: *see* Ajakkas.
- Janssen, Lieut., i. 283, 407, 490, 507; ii. 27, 50; drowned, ii. 55; his services, ii. 268
- Jatropha purgans*, ii. 358
- Jays, i. 207, 436
- Jealousy of a chief, i. 522, 523
- Jetta Wali, i. 45
- Jeune Africaine*, the launch, i. 68, 141, 196
- Jiwè-la-Singa, i. 43, 46
- João II., King of Portugal, i. 1
- Johnston, Mr. H. H., i. 102
- Jolly Captain (ss. *Kinsenbo*), ii. 233, 236
- Journeys, time occupied in, i. 191
- Jub River, i. 58
- Jung, letter to Mr. Albert, i. 29
- Jungle, cutting through the, i. 221
- Kabinda i. 14, 31
— cask-makers, i. 74
- Kabindas, i. 146, 149, 153, 158, 159
- Kaika Sanda, i. 163
- Kaishandi, i. 163
- Kallina, Lieut., i. 485, 492; Point, i. 353, 395, 396, 487
- Kalubu, i. 261
- Kalulu Falls, lava at, ii. 211
- Kamolondo, a chief, i. 513
- Kapita, a Vivi chief, i. 129
- Karema, i. 42, 44; lake, i. 37; chief of slave-stealers, ii. 144
- Kasongo, ii. 360; falls, ii. 360
- Kaseon, Mr. John A., ii. 398, 400
- Kawendi, ii. 363
- Kemeh Island, 418, 419
- Kerdyk and Pincoff, Messrs., i. 31
- Khalfan, i. 251
- Khamis, Sergeant, i. 519, 523
- Khonzo, i. 238; Ikulu Hill, i. 354; Plain, i. 187
- Kibonda, i. 260
- Kiburuga, chief of slave-stealers, ii. 144
- Kiki stream, i. 322
- Ki-Kongo, i. 142
- Kilanga, i. 315
- "Killing the road," i. 314
- Kilolo Point, i. 248, 249
- Kimbangu, i. 393, 397, 405, 477; ii. 3, 302; chiefs, i. 388
- Kimbanza Is'and, i. 260, 261, 263
- Kimbenza village, ii. 207
- Kimpalampa, a chief, i. 323, 332, 490
- Kimpunzu, i. 172
- Kimpé, a chief, i. 490
- Kimpemba, ii. 207

- Kimpoko, i. 397, 477, 488; ii. 51, 302; station, i. 504, 505, 506; troubles at, ii. 56
 Kindolo, i. 393, 397
 King Léopold II.: *see* Léopold.
 Kinkanza, ii. 215
 Kinduta, i. 289; mountains, i. 390
 Kingani River, i. 46, 58
 "Kingdom of the Congo," Piqafetta's book, i. 9
 Kingfishers, i. 397; ii. 6
 Kinkela Ndunga, a chief, i. 165
 Kinkela-Nku, a chief, i. 165
Kinseumbo steamer, ii. 228
 Kinsendé, i. 318
 Kinshassa, i. 250, 375, 382, 393, 397, 477, 495, 501; ii. 51, 185, 289, 302, 305, 319, 357
 Kinshassa chiefs, i. 388
 Kinswangu, a chief, i. 490
 Kintamo, i. 318, 346, 352, 375, 377, 382, 391, 392, 393, 397, 479, 486, 495, 498; ii. 20, 25, 28, 29, 302; catanaet, i. 352, 389; chiefs, number of, i. 350; scotching the chiefs, i. 490
 Kintari forest mount, i. 352
 Kinzila, ii. 193
 Kinzore, i. 315
 Kionzo plateau, ii. 216
 Kirkbright, Mr. John, i. 145, 159, 196, 209
 Kirkhoven, Mons., ii. 225
 Kissanga, i. 81, 82, 85
 Kisungwa of Mkwambete, i. 165
 Kitabi, whites in distress at, i. 476
 Kitalalo, i. 46
 Kites, i. 207
 Kiubi, a chief of Zinga, i. 315
 Kiyanzi beer, i. 408
 Kizalu Hill, ii. 207
 Kokoro, son of Mata Bwyki, ii. 86, 173, 174; recognises his son a thief, ii. 171
 Kondo Ferry, ii. 214
 Konko, an ivory trading chief, i. 370, 371
 Kruboy, i. 31, 73
 Krummers, i. 31
 Krupp gun, astonishing the natives, ii. 63
 Knabaa, i. 48
 Kudu, i. 126, 206
 Kulu, Banza, i. 201
 Kulu natives, i. 210
 Kuma, i. 231; station, ii. 291
 Kunzu Island, i. 259, 260
 Kusscrow, Herr von, ii. 437
 Kutompuku, i. 519
 Kuvoko, i. 250; camp, i. 253
 Kwa, ii. 401; river, i. 409, 416, 511; ii. 30, 50, 344; description of the river, i. 431, 432, 433; different colours of the river, i. 419
 Kwamouth, ii. 185; station, ii. 55, 56
 Kwango River, another name for the Kwa, i. 412
 Kwanza River, i. 11, 12, 454
 Kwilu-Niadi, i. 489; ii. 277; expedition to the, i. 470, 471, 474, 476; ii. 212; river, i. 256, 257, 403; ii. 214, 225; Upper, i. 477
La Belgique, ss.: *see* Belgique.
 Labour, advantage of human, ii. 93, 94; heroes of, ii. 240
 Lacustrine Kamolondo River, ii. 360
 Lady Alice Rapids, i. 318
 Lagos, ii. 236
 Laird Macgregor, ii. 385
 Lake Bangweolo, ii. 358, 359
 Lake Léopold II., i. 70, 481, 501; ii. 27, 48; circumnavigated, i. 413; description of, i. 443, 444; discovery of, i. 434, 435, 436; fishermen, i. 438, 439, 440
 Lakes,—Mantumba, ii. 27, 46, 47, 314, 354; Muta-Nzigé, ii. 358; Tanganika, i. 7, 20, 35, 37, 40, 41, 43, 44, 46; ii. 359, 363
 Lakes, native definition of, ii. 27
 Lama-Lankori, forest ridge, i. 390; hill, i. 351
 Lamborel, Captain, i. 43
 Land cultivated, i. 162; fertility of the, i. 186; ii. 211; instructions regarding the purchase of, i. 27; high rent for, i. 138
 Landana, ii. 229
 Landers, ii. 385
Landolphia Florida, i. 192; ii. 5, 353
 Langa-Langa, i. 22, 69, 100, 353; women of, ii. 100
 Langenburg, Prince Hohenlohe, ii. 399
 La Plate, comparison to the, i. 401
 Latrobe, Mr., of Baltimore, i. 36
 Lava at Kalulu Falls, ii. 211
 Laws of the Bangola, ii. 179
 Lawson-Lufini River, i. 509, 512, 513; ii. 345
 Lectures on Africa, i. 25; in Germany, ii. 399
 Lechumwa, i. 46
 Lehrman, Mons., i. 471; ii. 212, 277
 Lema, i. 393, 397; chiefs, i. 388
 Leopard skins, ii. 354
 Léopold II., King of the Belgians, i. 21, 22, 28, 33, 38, 39, 43; ii. 237, 402, 407
 Léopold II. Lake: *see* Lake Léopold; hill, i. 354, 389, 391, 495, 496; ii. 189, 191
 Léopold River, ii. 359
 Léopoldville, i. 149, 408, 442, 445, 469, 477, 488, 513; ii. 20, 38, 50, 51, 52, 53, 55, 56, 57, 73, 288, 289, 290, 298, 304, 305, 319, 339, 343, 357; founding of, i. 357, 370; erecting a block house at, i. 375, 376; built, i. 379; trading at, i. 380, 383, 384; naming the station, i. 386; description of, i. 388, 389; the neighbouring natives, i. 391; no food at, i. 478, 479, 480; neglected state of, i. 481, 482, 483; resignation of its chief, i. 490; difficulty with natives at, i. 491,

- 492, 493, 494; treaty with natives at, i. 495; the *entrepôt* of the Upper Congo, i. 498, 500; market, i. 500; flourishing, ii. 186; a promising farewell at, ii. 189, 191; first grave at, ii. 270
- Lesseps, Count de, i. 35
- Le Stanley*, stern-wheeler, ii. 225, 227
- Letters,—from General Sanford, i. 36; to Lient Cambier from Stanley, i. 39; to Captain Popelin, i. 45; to Col. Stranch, i. 52, 151-153. 189-194; to the Comité, i. 283; to the President of the Comité, ii. 224
- Lettuces: *see* Vegetables.
- Levy Hills, the, ii. 11
- Liberia, ii. 379-382
- Liberty, the use of, i. 22, 23
- Licentiousness, ii. 253
- Liebrechts, Lieut., ii. 184, 277; ii. 288, 289
- Life, the proper use of, i. 84, 85; on the Congo, ii. 248; stupid indifference to, ii. 321
- Lightning stone, i. 90
- Lignum vitae*, ii. 374
- Likona River: *see* Isanga.
- Likuba River, another name for Ikuba, ii. 185, 345
- Limbu Li Nzambi, i. 90
- Limes, ii. 246
- Limit of navigation from the sea, i. 116
- Lindi branch of Chofu River, ii. 153
- Lindner, Mr., i. 277, 278, 283, 286, 311, 447
- Lingenji village, ii. 57, 59
- Lingenji, a boy trader, i. 137, 518, 520
- Lingster Nsakala, the, i. 116, 123
- "Lingster" traders, i. 387
- Lion and buffalo fight, i. 51
- Lions, i. 509; ii. 241
- Lion skins, ii. 354
- "Liquoring-up," ii. 253
- Lira River, ii. 358, 359
- Little Rapid Camp, i. 251
- Liverpool, Chamber of Commerce, ii. 383; value of African products, ii. 368, 369
- Live stock, i. 150
- Livini, i. 416
- Livingstone, Dr., last journey, i. 7; search for, i. 13, 58; is found, i. 41; his opinion of the Congo, i. 101; his head-man Susi (*see* Susi); description of Chambezi, ii. 361, 362; works, ii. 11, 381, 385
- Livingstone Cataracts, i. 160; Falls, i. 102; ii. 339
- Livingstone Inland Congo Mission, i. 496; ii. 185, 214, 299
- Loa River, i. 135, 161, 162, 209, 322, 403; bridge over the, i. 201; valley, i. 126, 127, 172, 186, 196, 197
- Loanga, Dr. Peschuel-Locche's expedition to, i. 376
- Loango, ii. 229
- Log Towers, i. 356
- Lokinga Mountains, ii. 361
- Lokulu River, ii. 361
- London correspondence, i. 25; Missionary Society, i. 40
- "Long" of cloth, a, i. 193
- Long Reach, i. 240, 245, 247
- Longevity, instances of, i. 316
- Lopez, Cape, i. 73
- Lopez, Duarte, the explorer, i. 1, 2, 18; extraordinary description by, i. 3
- Lesanswé Mountains, ii. 361
- Lost in the forest, i. 177
- Lounging, i. 22, 23
- Low-wa River, ii. 358, 359
- Luakaba, i. 233; river, indential with the Congo, i. 8
- Lualla River, i. 403
- Luama River, ii. 359
- Luamba, a headman of Manyanga, i. 268
- Luapula River, identical with the Congo, i. 8.
- Luazaza River, i. 182, 184
- Lubamba River, 288, 318, 403; ii. 225
- Lubansenzi River, ii. 361
- Lubilash River, ii. 169; ii. 348, 351
- Lubiranzi River, ii. 169, 344, 345, 318
- Lubunga, Chief of Upoto, ii. 171
- Lucagé River: *see* Kwilu.
- Luemba, Chief of Kinsembé, i. 318
- Lucmmé River, i. 488
- Luenda River, i. 180, 222, 226; bridge across the, i. 187
- Lufu River, i. 105, 106, 115, 116, 120, 126, 135, 145, 162, 166, 172, 403; ii. 215, 359; valley, i. 186
- Lufwenkenya, i. 206
- Lugumbila, Vizier of Ibaka, i. 522, 527; ii. 2, 64
- Luigi River, ii. 359
- Luima valley, ii. 214
- Luindi River, ii. 359
- Luizi River, i. 403; ii. 217
- Lukanga River, ii. 21, 27, 28, 45, 46, 344
- Lukunga, i. 260; ii. 299; valley, ii. 212, 213, 214
- Lukebu, branch of Chofu River, ii. 153
- Lukolela, ii. 13, 14, 15, 16, 21, 48, 49, 50, 65, 66, 67, 183, 288, 354
- Luksie, Monsieur, suicide of, i. 489
- Lukuga River: *see* Luindi.
- Lukuluzi River, i. 312
- Lulu River, i. 180, 222, 223, 227, 228, 322, 403; ii. 193; bridge across the, i. 187
- Lulungu River, ii. 32, 37, 76, 77, 78, 314, 351
- Lunami, Chief of Wané Sironga, ii. 157; river, ii. 169, 348, 359
- Lunionzo River, i. 403; ii. 214
- Lusalla of Mkimbwete, i. 165, 199
- Lusengo, ii. 173
- Lute c. Chief of Banza Lungu, i. 218, 219, 220, 382; ii. 207, 208

- Lnzalla Kindunga, a chief, i. 165
 Lynch law in Congo-land, ii. 194
 Mabengu mountain, i. 391
 Maboko village, ii. 46
 Mabruki, little, i. 178; 273, 274, 276, 277; 306
 Mabula, i. 416, 417
 Mabwa village, i. 416
 Mackenzie, Dr (Duke Town), ii. 233
 Madiera, i. 460, 461
 Madi Island, i. 44
 Magwala, a chief of Irebu, ii. 25, 26; ii. 43-45
 Magwalé, Mwaka of Mkimbwete, i. 165
 Mahogany, ii. 30, 67, 374
 Mahoney, Mr. Frank, i. 159
 Maize, ii. 357, 375
 Makabi, an ivory factor, i. 295; a chief of Ntamo, i. 306, 392, 490; ii. 191
 Makanga, a chief of Zinga, i. 315
 Makeya Manguba, i. 206, 208, 209, 213-215, 218, 221
 Makoko of Usansi, i. 18; Chief of Mbé cedes territory to France, i. 292, 293, 298, 323, 332, 343, 507, 508, 326-331; ii. 192
 Makoko's sword, i. 332
 Makukuru, a chief of Nganza, ii. 99
 Makula, i. 112
 Makuta, i. 225
 Makweta, a chief, i. 165
 Malafu, a fee for a judge, ii. 44; native name for palm wine, i. 295
 Malameen, a Senegal sergeant, i. 251, 292, 293, 297, 299, 375, 408
 Malaria, ii. 287; 304, 305, 317
 Malélé, a chief, i. 165
 Malet, Sir Edward, ii. 393, 396, 298, 399
 Malima, i. 295, 509; ii. 3, 302
 Malingering, ii. 246, 247; i. 379
 Mamballa, i. 82
 Mambwé country, i. 8; ii. 364; plateau, ii. 362
 Managers of factories, i. 73
 Manchester correspondence, i. 25; produce, i. 30; Chamber of Commerce, ii. 383
 Manga, i. 518, 519, 520, 525; ii. 57, 58, 60, 61
 Mangi, a chief of Itimbi, ii. 2
 Mangoes at Gaboon, ii. 231; Congo, ii. 246
 Mangombo, chief of Irebu, ii. 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 42-45
 Mangrove, i. 77
 Mangurn, of Belobo, ii. 2
 Mani village, ii. 207
 Manioc, ii. 357
 Manipambu of Loango, i. 18; chief of Chissanga, i. 474
 Manloads, weight of, i. 242, 346
 Manswala, a chief, i. 490; ii. 191
 Manteka, ii. 215
 Mantu beer, i. 512; village, 511, 512
 Mantumba Lake, ii. 27, 46, 47, 314, 354
 Manyanga, i. 70, 191, 192, 212, 216, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 375, 377, 381, 422, 445, 476, 477, 478, 489, 513; ii. 211, 287, 289, 292, 298, 304, 320, 333, 370; contract with the chief, i. 278, 279; market, incident at, i. 281; erecting the station at, i. 279; support of the station, i. 283; intended as a central depot, i. 284; garrison at, i. 285; troubles at, ii. 52; an expensive station, ii. 212
 Manyara, i. 43
 Manyema, i. 8
 March, Mons., i. 231
 Marches, hours for, ii. 314, 324
 Marenga Mkali, i. 46
 Mariatta, a chief, i. 165
 Marigny, Marquis de, i. 14
 Maringu, ii. 363
 Maritime and mountain region, area of, ii. 343; region of the Congo, description of, ii. 340, 341
 Market, incident at Manyanga, i. 281; at Léopoldville, i. 500; for animals, ii. 2
 Marketing, native, i. 221, 254
 Markets, ii. 245; fixed days for native, i. 203; native, i. 282; closing, i. 319; Uyanzi, i. 421; Stanley Pool, i. 421; cloth, ii. 177; at Ujiji, ii. 364
 Marking-ink plant, ii. 358
 Marriage celebration at Kintamo, i. 377
 Marsailles, i. 21
 Martinson, Martin, Danish sailor, i. 71, 107, 208, 212
 Ma-sikamba, i. 40-44, 46
 Masiku of Masanda, i. 165
 Massabé, i. 488; boundary, ii. 401
 Massacre, threatened with, i. 304; a horrible sacrificial, ii. 180-182
 Massala, the Lingster, i. 123, 132, 133, 135, 136, 161, shooting of, i. 471, 472
 Massari, Signor, ii. 225
 Massassa, i. 315
 Mata Bwyki of Bangala, ii. 80-82, 84, 85, 87, 89, 173, 178
 Ma-taddi Nzazzi, i. 90
 Mataddi Point, i. 115
 Matako (brass rods), ii. 22
 Matanga, a chief, i. 165
 Matoma's village, i. 488
 Mavangu, a chief, i. 165
 Mawembé, ii. 138
 Maxwell, Captain, i. 82, 86, 112
Mayflower (the) in 1620, ii. 379
 Mayomba: see Myumba
 Mayumba Bay, i. 114, 115, 120
 Mballa, a chief, i. 490
 Mbama Hill, i. 317
 Mbangi, i. 518
 Mbé district, i. 507, 509-513; ii. 192
 Mbelo, i. 315; ii. 210
 Mbembe-Kissa, i. 248

- Mbembé, son of Mata Bwyki, ii. 173
 Mbihé, i. 421-424; river, i. 410-411; ii. 344
 Mbika, River, i. 287, 403
 Mbimbi, ii. 193, 194, 207
 Mbonna: *see* Boma.
 Mbundi Afunda rapids, i. 253
 Mburra, native name for Congo, ii. 135
 Mbutchi, i. 422
 Meats, tinned, ii. 322
 Medical attendance, i. 152; luxuries, ii. 247
 Melicene men, i. 199, 200
 "Medicine to make wealth grow," ii. 28
 Medicines for the tropics, ii. 325, 327
 Mediterranean, i. 28
 Meeting at the Royal Palace, Brussels, i. 26
 Melons: *see* Fruit.
 Memorial stones of the Portuguese, i. 14
 Memory, a good, i. 297
 Men for the expedition, hiring, i. 31
 Men-at-arms at Vivi, i. 130
 Men-of-war at Ponta da Lenha, i. 85
 Merchants on the Congo, their character, i. 32
 Meri, another name for Wellé River,
 Merolla, Father, explorer, i. 2: his description of the great river, i. 4, 18
 Mété, a chief, i. 165
 Meteorological tables, ii. 330-338; observations, ii. 312
 Mfini River, i. 410, 411, 419, 421, 422, 424; ii. 27
 Mfwa, i. 251, 294, 295, 300, 478, 509; ii. 302
 Mgangaism, ii. 111
 Mgangila, i. 179, 201, 210; chiefs, i. 202; plateau, ii. 216
 Miani, another name for Wellé River.
 Miasma, ii. 287, 304, 310, 311, 317, 319
 Mickie, Mr., ii. 225
 "Middlemen" traders, i. 387
 Mikené River, i. 519; ii. 65
 Mikené-Alima River, ii. 345
 Mikunga, i. 393, 397; chiefs, i. 388
 Mileage of journeys, i. 190, 191
 Milk unobtainable, ii. 322
 Millet, ii. 357; bread, i. 431
 Minerals, ii. 356
 Minnow fishing, i. 262
 Mirambo, a faithful ass, i. 184
 Mirando, King of Urambo, i. 39, 40
 Missionaries misrepresenting the traders, i. 100; Baptist, 225; repulsed by natives, i. 251; Roman Catholic, repulsed by the natives, i. 308, 445; at Léopoldville, i. 496
 Mission, a pretty station, ii. 212, 213; children, ii. 213; at Banza Manteka, ii. 214; at Pallaballa, ii. 217; (French) at Landava, ii. 229; at Gaboon, ii. 231; at Creek Town (Calabar), ii. 233
 Missions in Congo-land, i. 11, 13, 16; French Catholic, at Boma, i. 100; contending, i. 496, 497; Roman Catholic, ii. 50; at Léopoldville, ii. 50
 Missionary efforts, ii. 185; stations, ii. 363; enterprise, ii. 377
 Missionary Society, London, i. 40
 Mississippi, comparison to, i. 401; ii. 78, 374, 375
 Missongo missionary station, ii. 185
 Miyongo of Usindi, ii. 49, 50, 58, 60, 61, 65, 67-69, 80, 182, 345
 Moderation in food and drink, ii. 295
 Moeni Kheii, i. 42
 Moenzi Nzaddi, native name for the river, i. 7
 Moffat, Dr., ii. 385
 Mohindu River, ii. 32, 344: *see* Ikelembo.
 Mokulu Town, ii. 115-119, 124, 133
 Mombas-a Creek, i. 58
 Mompama, i. 40, 42
 Mompurengi villages, i. 515
 Monanga, a chief of Znga, i. 315, 316
 Monet, Mons., ii. 224, 277
 Money carried by an expedition, i. 48
 — fines for bloodshed, i. 524
 Mongo, i. 518; ii. 57; a chief, i. 519
 Monkey skins, ii. 354
 — islands, i. 82
 Monkeys, ii. 6, 8
 Monotony of scenery, ii. 5
 Montes Quemados, i. 17
 Montiero, Joachim, i. 102
 Moore, Mr. A. H., i. 145, 159, 196, 209
 Morgan, U.S. Senator, i. 36
 Morton & Co., Francis, London, i. 145
 Mosquito nets, i. 422
 Mosquitoes, i. 422
 Mountain and maritime region, area of, ii. 343
 Mountainous region of the Congo, ii. 341
 Mountains, i. 390, 391
 Mowa, i. 287, 315, 469
 Mpa, ii. 98
 Mpagassa, 209, 210; River, i. 164, 201, 204
 Mpakambendi, i. 286, 287, 311, 312, 316, 445; ii. 207, 210
 Mpalanga, i. 321, 322, 403; a breakdown at, ii. 480
 Mpama, an erroneous name, i. 3
 Mpamba Ngulu, i. 175, 179, 181
 Mpangi, i. 163
 Mpangu, ii. 208, 209, 211
 Mpika, a chief of Irebu, ii. 25, 26, 42, 43, 44, 45; village, ii. 207
 Mpioga River, ii. 211
 Mpissa, ii. 171
 Mpokwa, i. 46
 Mpozo River, i. 403
 Mpumbu market, ii. 2
 Mpumu Ntaba, i. 407, 408; of Mbé, i. 18
 Mputu Creek, i. 64
 Mpwapwa, i. 49

- Mpwélélé, i. 165
 Msampala, i. 288; narrows, i. 318
 Mseme, the guide, ii. 11, 39, 40, 44
 Mswata, i. 398, 399, 405-409, 422, 436, 445, 481, 507, 509; ii. 26, 50, 51, 55, 302; growth of, i. 511
 Mtesa of Uganda, i. 291
 Mubangu, ii. 215
 Mubi, a chief of Ntamo, i. 306, 490; ii. 191
 Mud alive with crabs, i. 77
 Muibuba, a chief, i. 513
 Mukana, village, i. 432; Point, i. 251, 255
 Mukondokwa, i. 46
 Mukoss River, i. 288, 289
 Mukuku, chief of Yambinga, ii. 107-109
 Muleke district, i. 428, 429
 Muller, Mons., i. 73
 Muluangu, ii. 214
 Mulwassi River, ii. 207
 Mundelé, meaning a white, i. 132; Masuna plains, i. 390
 Mungala, i. 286
 Mungawa, a chief, ii. 14, 48
 Mungolo, i. 518; ii. 57, 59
 Munroc, Mr. J. (Duke Town), ii. 233
 Münster, Count, ii. 384
 Murchison, Sir Roderick, i. 7
 Murder, a rumour of, i. 489; of two men at Bolobo, i. 516, 517, 523; compensation for, i. 525, 527
 Muscovy ducks, ii. 13
 Mushirongos, i. 83
 Mussanga-land, ii. 109
 Mussuko, i. 74, 96, 105, 108, 112, 113, 133, 141, 144, 145, 419; ii. 302
 Musyé, i. 415, 419-422
 — Munono, i. 431, 432, 444
 Muta-Nzige Lake, ii. 358
 Mutembo, ii. 91, 94, 96, 111
 Mutumba village, i. 433
 Muvanga, i. 163
 Muzonzila, i. 162, 164, 166, 172, 186
 Mvula, a chief of Zinga, i. 315, 316
 Mvuzi streamlet, i. 173
 Mwana Mundélé, i. 380
 Mwekwanga, a chief, i. 519, 520, 525
 Mwembé, ii. 214
 Mweru Lake, i. 8; ii. 340, 360
 Mwitikira, i. 46
 Myombi, chief of Bumba, ii. 104
 Myrrh, ii. 354, 374
 Mystification, charge on the expedition, i. 55
 Myumba, ii. 229
 Nachtigal, Dr., i. 34, 36; ii. 385
 Nakussa, a headman of Manyanga, i. 268
 Name of Stanley picked up by natives, ii. 17
 National Committees, i. 35, 36
 Natives,—character, i. 29, 30, 313, 314; ii. 343; avarice, i. 46; confederation, i. 53; customs not to be changed, i. 53, 54; workmen, i. 146, 119; stories of the white man, i. 184; tracks, i. 192; indolence, i. 193; fondness of gin, i. 202; friendliness, i. 251; hostility aroused at Malima and Mfwa, i. 300; dishonesty, i. 304; inebriety, i. 315; idleness, i. 393; experience of Europeans, i. 517; chiefs, wealth of, ii. 2, 3; definition of rivers and lakes, ii. 27; superstitions, ii. 28, 29; surprise at steamers, ii. 12, 16, 29, 105; manufacture of pottery, ii. 48; wars, slight provocation of, ii. 62; visitors at Léopoldville, influence of, ii. 73; roads, ii. 104; drum signals, ii. 158; chiefs and districts, list of, ii. 198-204; workers, i. 203; chiefs, forms of treaties with, ii. 195, 196, 197, 205, 206; enlistment for transport, ii. 225; chiefs at Calabar, iron houses of, ii. 233; villages, healthy sites of, ii. 302, 303; eagerness for trade, ii. 367; chiefs, treaties with, ii. 379, 380; chiefs, soothing, i. 490, 491; roads, i. 189; welcome, a happy, ii. 19; how to trade with, i. 99, 100; surprise at paid work, i. 143, 144; liable to conceive suspicion, i. 169, 170; fair dealing with the, i. 170; visiting Vivi, i. 189; too rich to work, i. 193; European frigid towards, i. 248; doubtful at Manyanga, i. 269; dangers of rupture with the, i. 314; refusing to attack us, i. 369; Mfwa, i. 374; companionable, i. 392, 394; hostile, i. 432, 442, 514; ii. 4, 11, 36, 78, 111, 113; feasibility of trade with, i. 463; friendly welcome from, i. 481; treaties with, i. 495; ii. 48; at Léopoldville, difficulty with, i. 491-494; difficulties of quarrels with, i. 523, 524, 526; mercantile knowledge among, ii. 22, 23; war dance of, ii. 35; praising their villages, ii. 39; expressionless, ii. 68; timid, ii. 103, 127; skilful workmanship of, ii. 123; unfortunate, ii. 140; thieving, ii. 84, 173, 174; at war, ii. 23-25
 Nature and Habit, i. 199
 Navigation, *Actes de*, ii. 396, 397
 Navigation of the Congo, i. 85, 86, 113, 114, 116; ii. 339, 340, 346, 366; Lubilash, ii. 169; Luamani, ii. 169
 Nehnvila, chief of Kinshassa, i. 250, 293, 375
 Ndambi Mbongo, i. 165, 175, 180, 231, 234; natives, i. 237
 Ndinga, chief of Bolombo, ii. 84
 Ndobu village, ii. 103
 Ndu Kumbi, i. 430
 Ndua, i. 429, 430
 Ndinga, i. 265, 269; ii. 212; dancing, i. 265, 266; mountains, i. 261; rapids, i. 262, 264, 266
 Negotiations at Ntamo, coast of, i. 310;

- with Ngalyema, difficult, i. 308, 309; at Usansi, i. 327-331; tedious with Africans, i. 429; for peace, ii. 44, 45; for peace at Bolobo, ii. 60, 61
- Negro state, difficulty of forming a, i. 54
- Nekké River, ii. 131
- Nempambu, a chief, i. 165
- Nepoko River, ii. 131
- Nevangi, a chief, i. 165
- Neve, Mr. Paul, i. 226, 239, 283
- Newspapers, the threat of writing to the, i. 71
- New York Herald and Daily Telegraph* Expedition, i. 8, 58
- New York, branch society at, i. 36
- Nezan, a chief, i. 165
- Nfunu, the title of Congo chiefs, i. 17
- Nguna, i. 505, 506
- Ngako, chief of Kintamo, i. 304, 306, 380, 381, 392, 490, 507; ii. 191
- Ngaku River, ii. 212
- Ngalyema, Chief of Ntamo, i. 250, 300, 303, 304-307, 308, 309, 318-320, 337, 344, 348-350, 377, 372, 381-383, 387, 392, 490, 492, 493, 508; ii. 52, 189-191; in arms, i. 332-336; and Bula Matari, i. 357; his character, i. 358; wily stratagems of, i. 358, 359; a braggart, i. 360; threatening attitude of, i. 362, 369; peace with, i. 367, 373
- Ngamberengi the chief, i. 323, 332, 348, 493; ii. 192
- Ngana, i. 433; River, i. 444; ii. 344
- Ngandu, a chief, i. 165, 171-173
- Nganza, ii. 99
- Ngeté, i. 428
- Ngingiri River, another name for Itimbiri.
- Ngoma, i. 288, 234-236, 238; ii. 192; mountain, i. 179, 181-183, 229, 230; point, i. 187, 223, 229; rapids, i. 183; village, ii. 207
- Ngoma's village, i. 325, 332
- Ngombé, an erroneous name, i. 3; a Chief of Mgaugila, i. 165; ii. 17, 18, 21, 25, 49, 183, 207
- Ngombi, 194, 320
- Ngoyo, i. 73, 261-263
- Ngufu-Mpanda of Banza Sombo, i. 129
- Niadi, meaning a river, i. 2
- Nieman, Herr, i. 450
- Niger, comparison to the, i. 401
- Night air, exposure to, ii. 283-285, 308
- Nile, the, i. 8; comparison to the, i. 401; ii. 8
- Nilis, Lieutenant, i. 382, 409
- Njali, meaning a river, i. 2
- Njugu, nephew of Mata Bwyki, ii. 173-175
- Nkamampu, a chief, i. 165
- Nkengé i. 260; river, i. 182, 183; plain, the, i. 187
- Nkenké: *see* Lubamba
- Nkingi, a chief, i. 165
- Nkongolo, station at, 113, 114
- Nkuku district, ii. 18, 19, 21; river, ii. 346
- Nkusu, the, i. 153, 160; bridge over the, i. 186; bridge at, ii. 223; ravine, i. 120, 122; ii. 301; valley, i. 148
- Nkutu River, another name for the Kwa, i. 412
- Noble officers, ii. 255-279
- Nokki, i. 17, 96, 111, 113, 114, 162, 179; ii. 215, 401
- Nomaza cove, i. 115, 120, 121
- Nomenclature, erroneous, in Congo-land, i. 2, 3
- Nostalgia, i. 224; ii. 241
- Nozo, chief at Palaballa, ii. 217
- Nsaka, a chief of Zinga, i. 315
- Nsakala, the lingster, i. 116, 133
- Nsakala Mpwassa, a chief, i. 165
- Nsambara Island, ii. 38
- Nsanla, i. 116, 161, 163, 164, 179; payment for right of way at, i. 170; markets, i. 175; chiefs, meeting of, i. 164-169; natives, i. 209, 210
- Nsangu ferry, i. 325, 478; mountains, i. 390; ii. 193
- Nseké, meaning "inland," i. 3
- Ns' kélélo, i. 166, 172, 173, 222
- Nseléh River, i. 395, 403
- Nselo ferry, ii. 193
- Nsona Mamba ferry, i. 259
- Ntaba of Malima, i. 299
- Ntamo, i. 303, 307-311
- Ntolulu, a chief, i. 165
- Ntombi's dark ravine, i. 245; cove, i. 250
- Ntombo-a-Langa, i. 200, 201
- Lukuti grove, ii. 214
- Lukuti, ii. 215, 299
- Mtaka, i. 267, 269
- Nu-ampozo River, i. 120, 128
- Nutmeg, ii. 358
- Nyadi, meaning a river, i. 2
- Nyam-Nyam country, ii. 351
- Nyangwé, i. 8, 20, 40, 43, 216; ii. 340, 359, 360; Arabs, ii. 142; falls, ii. 360
- Nyassa Lake, i. 7
- Nyongena Mountain, i. 179, 187, 223, 227, 229, 234
- Nyungu, i. 40, 43
- Nzabi, i. 287
- Nzaddi, meaning a river, i. 2
- Nzali, meaning a river, i. 2
- Nzambi (God), ii. 44; rapids, i. 255-257
- Nzari, meaning a river, i. 2
- Nzungi, a village of carriers, ii. 207
- Objects of the Berlin Conference, ii. 393
- Ocean steamers, on the Congo, i. 85, 86
- Officer, a homicidal, ii. 55
- Officers at Vivi, i. 159; of the expedition, their number, i. 67; noble, ii. 255-279
- Ogowai River, i. 159, 231, 233, 234
- Oil-berry, ii. 353; palm, ii. 367

- Oil-river at Old Calabar, ii. 232
 Old Calabar River, ii. 232
 "Old Tom," ii. 319
 Oliviera, Dr., i. 450
 One Palm Point, i. 434
 Onion, ii. 357
 Opposition from Ngalyema, 332-342
 Orange, the Prince of, i. 35
 — trees, ii. 246
 Orban, Lieut., i. 487, 489, 519
 Orchilla weed, ii. 92, 97, 342, 353, 356, 367, 374
 Organisation of expeditions, i. 39-44;
 of eastern expeditions, i. 45
Orycterope, i. 205
 Oscar Père, i. 45
 Ostend, ii. 237
 Overland conveyance of steamers, i. 182,
 227, 228; ii. 264
 Oyster shell heaps, ii. 104
 Ozi River, i. 58
- Padrião, Rio de, former name of the Congo,
 i. 1
 Padron Point, i. 63
 Palaballa Mountain, i. 121, 162, 179, 205;
 ii. 215, 217
 Palavers,—at Vivi, i. 123, 129, 130, 132,
 133-137; at Ntamo, i. 309; at Nsunda,
 i. 164-170; at Kintamo, i. 372; at
 Mswata, i. 405, 407; at Stanley Falls,
 ii. 161, 162
 Palisades in leaf, i. 152
 Palm butter, ii. 342
 — juice, ii. 192
 — oil, ii. 355; oil shipments at Old
 Calabar, ii. 232
 — wine, i. 165, 180, 214, 307; ii. 322
 Palmas Cape, i. 78
 Palms, i. 513, 518; ii. 5, 92, 341, 352, 367
 Palmyra Reach, i. 106, 112
 Papaw trees, ii. 246
Papyrus, ii. 6; *pantiquorum*, ii. 354
 Parfourey, Lieut., i. 478; ii. 269
 Paris, a meeting in, i. 23, 24
 Park, Mungo, ii. 385
 Parmenter, Major, ii. 224, 271, 273
 Parroquets, ii. 8
 Parrots, i. 207, 419, 436; ii. 6, 8
 Patience, the virtue of, i. 46, 49
 Payment of native carriers, i. 346
 Peace, celebration of, ii. 63, 64; negotia-
 tions, ii. 26; at Irebu, ii. 42, 45; at
 Bolobo, ii. 60, 61
 Pelicans, i. 417
Personnel of a station, i. 37
 Peschuel Loesche, Dr., i. 376, 417, 448,
 449; ii. 387
 Pestilential vapour, ii. 300, 301
 Pettit Hubert, i. 208
 Philanthropic expeditions, character of, i.
 24; views, ii. 406
Phoenix Spinosa, ii. 354
- Phillippéville, i. 477; ii. 277; copper mines,
 ii. 356
 Piedmont, the Prince de, i. 35
 Pigeon, wild, i. 207
 Pigs, ii. 207
 Pike, ii. 160
 Pillar Point, i. 12; river, i. 1
 Pillars Portuguese Stone, i. 1; their pur-
 pose, i. 10, 11
 Pilot of Banana, i. 63
 Pilots, jottings for Congo, i. 403, 404, 405
 Pincoffs and Kerdyck, Messrs., i. 72
 Pine Apples: *see* Fruit.
 Pioneers, foreign, i. 195; native, i. 198
 Piqafetta's "Kingdom of the Congo," i. 9
 Pirate Creek, i. 64, 77
Pistia Stratiotes, i. 411; ii. 6
 Plane-trees, ii. 30, 66
 Plantains, ii. 357
 Plenipotentiaries at Berlin, ii. 391, 392,
 393
 Plumbago, ii. 357
 Plymouth, landed at, ii. 236
 Pocock Francis, i. 313; ii. 249
 — Basin, ii. 210
 Pogge, Dr., ii. 351, 387
 Point Padron, i. 63
 Ponta da Lenha, i. 74, 77, 82, 83, 85, 87,
 88, 96, 104
 Pope Innocent X., i. 16
 — Paul V., i. 4, 16
 Popelin, Captain, i. 43, 44
 Population, ii. 343; of Zinga, i. 315;
 of Bolobo, i. 518; of native villages, ii.
 45; tables of, ii. 349, 350; of Upper
 Congo region, ii. 349-351; of Webb-
 Lualaba region, ii. 360; of Tangunika
 territory, ii. 362; of Chambezi region,
 ii. 362; of the Congo basin, ii. 366, 367,
 375
 Portorage of goods, price now paid for, ii.
 372
 Portuguese Pillars, i. 1, 14; their purpose,
 i. 10, 11
 — missionary efforts, i. 11, 13
 Portuguese.—expel the Jaggas, i. 12; ces-
 sion of territory to the, i. 12; fort at
 Kabinda, i. 14; exercised no authority
 on the Congo bank, i. 14; expelled from
 Kabinda, i. 14; the slave-trade under
 the, i. 14, 15; mission at San Salvador,
 i. 16; traders, i. 92; at Vivi, i. 225;
 steamers, discomforts of, i. 458, 459, 460;
 territory, ii. 365, 380, 401, 494; action
 of the government, ii. 380
 Posse, Count, ii. 277
 Potatoes, ii. 357; sweet, ii. 243
 Pottery, native manufacture of, ii. 48
 Power of native chiefs, i. 17-19; i. 538,
 509
 Preparations for war, i. 333
 Presents, i. 406; ii. 23, 90; expect me-
 of i. 164; description of, i. 170; to

- chiefs, i. 185; exchanging, i. 288, 307;
claimants for, i. 331; a one-sided balance-
sheet for, i. 359
- President for the State, a, ii. 53
- Prince's Island, i. 57, 110, 111, 457
- Prison horrors at Loanda, i. 453
- Prisoners, two of my men, i. 371
— for theft, ii. 174, 178, 179
- Produce, native, i. 193
- Products, of mountain region, ii. 342; of
the Upper Congo regions, ii. 352-358;
of Africa, table of value in Liverpool, ii.
368, 369
- Progress, rate of, i. 215, 241, 269, 270
- Protectorate of districts, ii. 166; of Boma,
ii. 225
- Provisions for an Expedition, i. 48, 49
- Pumpkins, ii. 243
- Punishment, a terrible, i. 97, 98
- Purchas, the English compiler, i. 4
- Puritans and the *Mayflower*, ii. 379
- Pythons, i. 204
- Quarrel with Ngalyema, i. 332-342
- Quarrels with natives at Léopoldville,
i. 485; with natives, difficulties of, i.
523, 524, 526
- Quatrefoes, M. de, i. 36
- Questions put at the Brussels meeting, i.
26
- Quettah, ii. 236
- Quina as a tonic, ii. 325
- Quinine in cases of fever, i. 272-274
- Railway at Vivi, ii. 227; between Viva
and Isangila, proposed, i. 186, 187; ne-
cessity for a, i. 462, 464; for the Congo,
ii. 367, 368; probable cost of construc-
tion, ii. 370, 371; probable traffic on a,
ii. 370, 371; proposals, i. 25
- Rain, effect of heavy, i. 94
- Rainfall observations, ii. 333-338
- Rainstorms, ii. 210
- Rainy seasons, the, i. 258; health during,
ii. 299
- Rank, quarrels about, i. 71, 72
- Ransom offered for release of a thief, ii.
174
- Ransoms, i. 260
- Raphia vinifera*, ii. 352, 354
- Rapids, Ruka, ii. 129, 130
- Rapine, traces of, ii. 139
- Rate of progress, i. 215, 241, 269, 270,
480; ii. 9, 75
- Rations, a day's, i. 48
— purchase of, i. 481
- Reasons against bloodshed, i. 523, 524
- Recovery in a temperate climate neces-
sary, ii. 329
- Redwood, ii. 5, 30, 67, 374
— powder, ii. 2, 353, 354, 356, 367
- Reg's & Co., i. 72, 78
- Remington rifles, i. 47
- Report to King Léopold, ii. 237
- Repulse at Malina, i. 299, 300
- Resignations, ii. 247
- Resolutions passed at Brussels, i. 27
- Re-tractions on trade, dangers of, i. 464
- Retribution, thoughts on, ii. 143
- Revenue of proposed railway, ii. 371
- Rhine, comparison to, ii. 8
- Rice, growth of, ii. 357
- Richthofen Baron von, i. 34
- Rifles, class of rifles carried, i. 47
- Right of way, payment for, i. 170
- Rio de Congo, the name on old maps, i. 2
- Rio Poderoso, an old name of the Congo,
i. 1
- Rise and fall of the Congo, i. 87
- River bank defended by sharp pins, ii.
135
- River courses, old, i. 175
- Rivers (*see also under special names*), the
Aruwimi, ii. 115; Balui, ii. 79, 345;
Biyerré, i. 514; ii. 129-132, 170, 349;
Black River, ii. 359; Bundi, i. 403;
Bunga, ii. 66; Chambezi, ii. 358; Chofu,
ii. 153; Edwin Arnold, i. 403; Gordon
Bennett, i. 403; ii. 53; Gurba, ii. 131;
Ikelemba, ii. 31, 32, 77, 78, 344; Ikuba,
ii. 65; Inkissi, i. 403, 478; ii. 193;
Isanga, ii. 345; Itimbiri, ii. 109, 110,
112, 131, 345, 352; Kwa, ii. 344; Kwilu-
Niadi, i. 403; ii. 214, 225; Lacustrine
Kamolondo, ii. 360; Lawson-Lufini, i.
509, 512; ii. 345; Léopold, ii. 359;
Lhari, ii. 131; Likuba, ii. 185, 345;
Lira, ii. 358, 359; Loa, i. 403; Lokulu,
ii. 361; Low-wa, ii. 358, 359; Lualla, i.
403; Luama, ii. 359; Lubamba, i. 403;
ii. 225; Lubansenzi, ii. 361; Lubilash,
ii. 169, 348, 351; Lubiranzi, ii. 169,
344, 345, 348; Lucmmé, i. 488; Lufu, i.
403; ii. 215, 359; Luigi, ii. 359; Luindi,
ii. 359; Luizi, i. 403; ii. 217; Lukanga,
ii. 21, 27, 28, 45, 46, 344; Lulu, i. 403;
ii. 193; Lulungu, ii. 76-78, 344, 352;
Lumami, ii. 169, 348, 359; Lunionzo, i.
403; ii. 214; Mbika, i. 403; Mbihé,
ii. 344; Mfini, ii. 27; Mikené, i. 519;
ii. 65; Mikené-Alima, ii. 345; Mohindu,
ii. 344; Mpioga, ii. 211; Mpozo, i. 403;
Mpalanga, i. 403; Mulwasssi, ii. 207;
Nekké, ii. 131; Nepoko, ii. 131; Ngaku,
ii. 212; Ngana, i. 444; ii. 344; Nkuku,
ii. 346; Nselé, i. 395, 403; Ubangi, ii.
345; Ubika, ii. 171; Ulindi, ii. 358, 359;
Wampoko, ii. 51; Wellé, ii. 126, *sqq.*
Welle-Makua, ii. 110
- Road, "killing" the, i. 314
— in danger through rain, ii. 210
- Road-making, i. 141, 142, 145, 154, 155,
181, 187, 190, 191, 196-198, 201, 204-
207, 224, 235-237, 239, 279, 312, 325,
370, 463; ii. 223; negotiating for, i.
167-169

- Roads, injured by rains, i. 480; native, i. 104, 189; neglected, ii. 221
- Robson Islands, i. 82
- Rock formations, i. 246, 247
- Rocky Point, i. 115, 513-515
- Rohlf, the explorer, ii. 385
- Roman Catholic Mission, ii. 50
- Rome, missions from, i. 16
- Roth, Dr., i. 34
- "Rothschild," the, of Bolobo, ii. 3
- Rowe, Sir Samuel, i. 57, 59
- Royal*, steam launch, i. 68, 83, 104, 116, 154, 190, 196, 477, 478, 481, 501; ii. 57, 59, 116; at Ostend, i. 241; under repair, i. 261; wreck of the, ii. 170, 171
- Royal Geographical Society, i. 33
- Ruanda cattle, ii. 361
- Rubber, India, i. 384
- Rubunga, Chief of Nganza, ii. 99
- Rudolf, the Archduke, i. 35
- Rudolfstadt station, i. 474-476
- Rufiji, the, i. 44; river, i. 58
- Ruga-Ruga, visits, i. 40
- Ruka Rapids, ii. 129, 130
- Rules for organising an expedition, i. 47
- Rum, used as currency, i. 193; used in trading, i. 158
- Rupture with the natives, dangers of, i. 314
- Ruse, a, in camp, i. 334
- Russia, cause of its non-representation, i. 35
- Sa'adala, i. 251
- Sabuka, i. 477, 480, 481, 488, 489
- Sacred water, sprinkling of, ii. 106
- Sacrifice of life; a horrible custom, ii. 180-182
- Sadika Banza, i. 164, 179, 205
- Sadika Banzi, plateau, ii. 216
- Safeni, i. 260
- Saggitaire*, the, a French frigate, i. 86, (note), 475
- Sailing vessels ascending the Congo, i. 113
- St. Paul de Loanda, 14; document in the archives of, i. 12; description of, i. 450-455
- St. Thomas' Island, i. 57, 456
- Salt extracted from grass, i. 424
- Salutations on the march, ii. 192, 193
- Salting the dead, i. 75
- Samuna, a chief of Nsanda, i. 18, 164
- Sanatorium at Boma, ii. 228; Léopoldville, i. 391; on Leopold Hill, ii. 191
- Sand-flies, i. 214
- Sand-pipers, i. 436
- Sanda Congo, i. 112
- Sanford, General, H. S., of Florida, i. 36; ii. 381, 382
- San Jannario, the Duke de, i. 35
- San Salvador, capital of Congo, i. 11; destruction of, i. 12; rebuilding of, i. 12; bishopric transferred to St. Paul de Loanda, i. 13; in ruins, i. 13; attempt to re-open missions, i. 13; Baptist Mission at, i. 13; mission at, i. 16; ii. 342
- Sarawak, ii. 379
- Sardines, potted, ii. 322
- Sanlez, Capt. Seymour, ii. 191, 272
- Scenery of the Congo, i. 92, 93, 94, 111, 112, 124, 125, 126, 171, 172, 173, 175, 176, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 213, 244, 245, 246, 247, 250, 255, 256, 258, 262, 264, 324, 325, 390, 391, 396, 397, 399, 400, 401, 504, 505, 511, 512, 513; ii. 4-9, 11, 17, 77, 79, 91, 92, 93, 152; on the Ikembamba, ii. 34-36
- Sceptical people, ii. 377
- Sceptre of Ngalyema,
- School, native children of, ii. 208
- Schnoor the carpenter, ii. 191
- Schweinfürth, Dr., ii. 130, 351, 385
- Scientific mission of a station, i. 37
- Scotch scenery, comparison to, i. 400, 401
- Scotchman Head, i. 81
- Seaside resorts, i. 23
- Season for gardening, i. 381
- Sea near the land, appearance of the, i. 61
- Secrecy, reasons for, i. 56
- Seltzer, ii. 282
- Semicarbus anacardium*, ii. 358
- Sette Camma, ii. 229
- Settlement, an immense, ii. 81, 82
- Shale, ii. 214
- Shamba Gonera, i. 45, 48
- Shari River, ii. 131
- Shark's Point, i. 62, 63
- Shaw, Mr. E. Massey, ii. 224, 271, 273
- Sheds for workmen, a necessity, ii. 315
- Sheep, ii. 243
- Shipping at Banana Point, i. 64
- Ships for the Congo, ii. 367
- Shooting a hippopotamus, i. 106
- Sick list, i. 216; of stations, ii. 306; men, ii. 248; shamming at Vivi, ii. 222
- Sickness, i. 212; causes considered, ii. 286. *sqq.*; prevention of, ii. 311
- Siemens, Dr. W., i. 34
- Sierra Leone, i. 57, 59; ii. 236, 297, 320
- Signals of natives, ii. 158
- Silurus*, bearded, ii. 160
- Silver, ii. 375
- Sina, or measure for cloth, ii. 22
- Singa fish of Tanganika, ii. 160
- Sims, Dr., i. 496
- Sittings of the Berlin Conference, ii. 391-403
- Siwa-Siwa, chief of Bakum, ii. 162, 164
- Skins of animals, ii. 354
- Skipper, importance of an efficient, i. 70
- Slave raiding, effects of, ii. 360
- Slave-trade, i. 14, 15; suppression of the,

- 15; trade, the, i. 96, 97, 152; at Loanda, i. 451; effect on population, ii. 313
- Slave-traders on the Congo, i. 113; from the Soudan, ii. 122; news of, ii. 135; on the Congo, ii. 139, 140; terrible scenes, ii. 146-150; traders overtaken, ii. 142; raids of, ii. 144, 145; numbers in a gang, ii. 145; plunder taken by, ii. 147; captives of, ii. 148, 149; extent of country ravaged by, ii. 149; instigators of, ii. 150, 151
- Slavers at work, ii. 121, 121
- Slaves sacrificed, 180-182
- Slavery, at Boma, i. 96; an escape from, i. 260
- Smallpox, ii. 15
- Snails, ii. 2
- Snider rifles, i. 47
- Soil, richness of the, i. 393
- "Sojering," ii. 251
- Sonho, rebellion in, i. 12: 82, 83
- Soudanese slave-traders, ii. 122, 227
- Sondi of Turu, i. 251, 252, 253
- Soundings at Vivi, i. 128, 129; on the Congo, i. 402
- Soups, ii. 322
- Sovereignty ceded to the Association, ii. 225
- Snake skin girdles, ii. 111
- Snakes, i. 204
- Spaces, health of open, ii. 302
- Sparhawk, Mr. Augustus, i. 145, 154, 159, 196
- Spear-grass, i. 423
- Speke, ii. 385
- Sphinx Rock, ii. 211
- Spitting-snakes, i. 204
- Squabbles to be avoided, i. 46
- Stables, i. 153
- Staff, complaints from the, i. 70, 71
- at Vivi, i. 159; re-organisation at Vivi, ii. 223
- Stanley and Bula Matari, difference between, ii. 28
- Stanley Falls, i. 70, 148; ii. 56, 75, 154-156, 340, 343, 358; character of trade at, ii. 160; palaver at, ii. 161, 162; choosing a site, ii. 162; clearing the site, ii. 165; Falls Station, improvement at, ii. 275
- Pool, i. 31, 86, 96, 159, 191, 216, 225, 234, 268, 270, 387, 388, 389, 445, 477, 478, 481, 488, 507, 514; ii. 2, 3, 5, 22, 49, 61, 214, 289, 302, 342, 343, 345; distant view of, i. 290; description of, i. 396; Pool markets, i. 421; missionaries at, i. 496; division of, i. 263; monthly supply to, ii. 272
- Starvation, approaching, i. 302
- Stations, instructions regarding, i. 27
- on Lake Tanganika, i. 35; on the east of Africa, i. 36; hospitable missions of, i. 37; scientific missions of, i. 37
- influence of in suppressing the slave-trade, i. 37; commonwealth, i. 54; establishing, i. 190; defensive measures at a, i. 376; measures for supporting, i. 465; neglect by leaders, i. 469; destruction of two, ii. 56; a well-governed, ii. 72; founding, ii. 75; the last formed, ii. 166; a pretty, ii. 212, 213; equipment for, ii. 243; in neglect and prosperity, ii. 245; success of Stanley Falls, ii. 275; unhealthy, ii. 287, 288, 290-292, 299-301; sick list of, ii. 306; sites of, ii. 319, 320
- Steam communication, instructions regarding, i. 27
- Steamers, trading, i. 91, 92; the harbingers of trade, i. 254; transported overland, i. 182, 227, 228, ii. 264; first on the Upper Congo, i. 375; on the Congo, effect of large, ii. 7, 8, 9; surprise the natives, ii. 12, 16, 29, 105; for the Congo, ii. 367
- Cove, i. 379
- Steel lighters, i. 68
- Stephanieville, i. 476, 477
- Sterile scenes, i. 264, 265
- Still Haven, Stanley Falls, ii. 163
- Stimulants, craving for, ii. 241; absence of, ii. 242; abuse of, ii. 251, 252, 253, 254
- Stink-wood, ii. 5
- Stipa tenacissima*, ii. 354
- Stocking Island, i. 82, 89
- Stores, i. 153; conveyance of, i. 155, 182, 210, 211, 214; list of, i. 285; of the Expedition, i. 68; for the Upper Congo Expedition, list of, 501, 502; for an expedition, ii. 76; left at Stanley Falls, ii. 165; sent monthly to Stanley Pool, ii. 272
- Storms, i. 201, 227, 337, 418, 437, 438; ii. 95, 96, 98, 137
- Story of Ngalyema's life, i. 348, 349
- Story, a hypocritical, ii. 41
- Strauch, Colonel, i. 28, 39, 42, 43, 46, 52, 59, 189; ii. 378, 394
- Strength of the expedition, i. 378
- Strychnas*, ii. 358
- Subsidies to chiefs, i. 54
- Sugar, i. 414; ii. 357, 375
- Suicide of M. Luksic, 489
- Suki, i. 315
- Sun, avoiding exposure to the, ii. 323; observations of the, i. 205
- Sun-bird, ii. 6
- Sun-fever, ii. 322
- Sunday, a day of rest, i. 230
- Sundi, i. 176
- Sungu Maji of Bumba, ii. 107
- Sunshine, African, i. 94, 95
- Sunstroke, ii. 322; precautions against, ii. 315
- "Superstitions" of natives, 28, 29, 62

- "Susceptibilities" on the Congo, i. 72; ii. 240, 276
 Susi, Livingstone's head man, i. 310, 318, 335, 345, 379
 Suspicion and distrust among natives, danger of, i. 169, 170
 Suzerainty of chiefs, i. 18
 Swinburne, Mr. A. B., i. 57, 58, 145, 159, 196, 208, 213, 218, 219, 221, 239, 240, 496; ii. 289; his services, ii. 257, 558
 Switzerland, a holiday in, i. 23
 Sword, Makoko's, i. 332
 Swordsmiths, ii. 356

 Tabora, i. 40, 42
 Tactics against Ngalyema, i. 334
 Tamarinds, ii. 5
 "Tandelay," ii. 89
 Tanganika, Lake, i. 7, 20, 35, 37, 40, 41, 43, 44, 46; ii. 359, 363
 ——— territory, extent of, ii. 362
 Tariffs, danger of excessive, i. 464
 Tea as a beverage, ii. 322
 Teak, African, i. 192; ii. 30, 67
 Temperance, ii. 325, 329
 Temperature, ii. 282, 314, 316-318, 330, 331
 Tendelay, i. 206
 Teneriffé donkeys, i. 225
 Tents, making new, i. 279
 Territories of the Congo basin, ii. 365
 Territory ceded to the Portuguese, i. 12
Thé au lait, ii. 324
 Thefts at Iboko, and return of stolen goods, ii. 180
 Thermometer readings, i. 203, 213
 Thieving natives, ii. 84; at Iboko, ii. 173, 174
 Thompson, Captain, i. 57, 105-107
 Thys, Captain, ii. 378
 Tides on the Congo, i. 87
 Tiger skin, trick with a, ii. 107
 Time bill, from the sea to Vivi, i. 116; occupied in journeys, i. 191
Times, The, i. 58
 Timed meats, i. 281; ii. 322
 Tippling, ii. 319
 Tippu Tib, an Arab trader, ii. 154, 351
 Tisdell, Mr. W. H., ii. 396
 Tobacco, ii. 361, 375
 Tomatoes, ii. 243
 Tonics, ii. 325
 Tools and stores carried by our expedition, i. 503
 "Toppers," ii. 251, 252
 Topography, i. 172, 173, 175, 176, 179-184, 192, 258, 287, 290, 352-355, 395, 397, 412, 413, 513, 514; ii. 4, 17, 18, 46, 47, 78, 341, *sqq.*; of Vivi, i. 126, 136, 140
Torch, H.M.S., i. 86 (note)
 Tortoise shell, ii. 354
 Totela, king of Congo, i. 17
 "Tourist" engineers, i. 209
Trachylobum, ii. 353
 Tracks, herd, i. 201
 ——— native, i. 192
 Trade and barter, articles for African, i. 156, 157
 Trade, factory, i. 74, 75; at Vivi, i. 156; competition, i. 800; Congoese, shrewdness in, i. 137; demanded at Nganza, ii. 99; the coming of the whites means, i. 168; in gunpowder, i. 75; native eagerness for, i. 384; ii. 367; of West Africa, amount of, ii. 366; probabilities of increased, ii. 367; rousing the spirit of, ii. 376; routes, ii. 342; table of possible, at new factories, ii. 370; talk, i. 214; with natives, conduct of, i. 99, 100; feasibility of, i. 463; visions of future, i. 127
 Traders, ivory, character of, i. 387
 ———, jealousy of, 309; misrepresented by missionaries, i. 100; of the Upper Congo, the champion, ii. 21-23; on the Kwa, i. 415
 Trading at Boleko, ii. 83; at Léopoldville, i. 380, 383, 384
 ——— canoes, ii. 79
 ——— communities of Arabs, ii. 360, 363
 ——— companies, i. 29
 ——— in ivory, i. 383, 384
 ——— stations at Boma, i. 91
 ——— steamers, i. 91, 92
 Traditional origin of Byyanzi, ii. 1
 Traffic at Nsanga Ferry, i. 479
 Transport of steamers overland, ii. 264; enlistment of natives for, ii. 225
 Travelling, dangers of, ii. 317; rate of, i. 215, 241, 269, 270
 Treasury at Léopoldville, low state of the, i. 483
 Treaties with native chiefs, i. 473-477, 495; ii. 48, 379, 380; forms of, ii. 195-197, 205, 206
 Treaty with Vivi chiefs, i. 137, 138, 155, 156
 Trees, ancient, i. 316; or groves a sign of villages, i. 62; planting as a protection, ii. 311
 Tributaries of the Congo, length of, ii. 344-352; their length, ii. 347
 Tribute, i. 49
 Tropical heat, ii. 282
 ——— islands, character of, i. 457
 ——— scenes, ii. 91-93
 Tropics, bodily changes in the, i. 65; the best food for, ii. 294; conditions of life in the, i. 85; drugs for the, ii. 325, 327; food in the, ii. 321-324, 329; health in the, Dr. Martin's advice, ii. 329; mode of life in the, i. 65, 67; clothes for the, ii. 326
 Troup, Mr. John Rose, ii. 224, 272, 274
 Trouville, i. 23
 Trucks for machinery, i. 198
 Tsetse, i. 419

- Tuckey's, Captain, account of the slave-trade, i. 14; 173; expedition of, i. 5, 6, 102, 120, 121; ii. 317; its losses, i. 6, 7; its results, i. 7
 "Tuckey's furthest," i. 184
 Tugurambusa Hills, ii. 151, 152
 Tunduwa Point, i. 114, 120
 Turtle doves, i. 419
 Twiss, Sir Travers, on treaties, ii. 380
 Two Palm Point, i. 516
 Typhoid fever, i. 212
 Typlops, i. 205

 Uango-Ango, ii. 400
 Ubaigi, River, ii. 345; a populous place, ii. 1, 13, 21, 23, 354; swordsmiths, ii. 356
 Ubeugo, district ii. 176
 Ubika warriors, ii. 98
 — River, ii. 171
 Ufipa, ii. 363
 Ufivu River, i. 318, 321
 Ugangi, ii. 47
 Ugogo, i. 45, 49
 Uguhha, i. 43
 Ugunda, i. 46
 Uhha, ii. 362, 364
 Ujiji, i. 40-42, 216; cattle, ii. 361; 363, 364
 Ukatakura, ii. 97
 Ukawenda, ii. 364
 Ukele, ii. 171
 Ukumira district, ii. 176
 Uledi, i. 251
 Ulindi River, ii. 358, 359
 Ulungu Mountains, i. 175, 179, 180, 205
 Umaneh Town, ii. 124, 125
 Umangi, ii. 98, 171
 Umari, ii. 39, 42; a guide, ii. 44
 Ungende, ii. 11
 Unhealthy stations, ii. 287, 288, 290, 291, 299-301
 United States, co-operation of the, i. 36; ii. 380; action of the, ii. 381, 382
 Unkuri, i. 432
 Unyamwezi, i. 39, 40; ii. 363
 Unyanyembé, expedition to, i. 39, 40, 41, 46, 48
 Upiti, a chief, ii. 58, 61
 Upoto, ii. 22, 69
 — Hills, ii. 99, 103, 171
 Upper Congo discovered by Stanley, i. 37; 356; communication with the sea, i. 463, 464
 Urambo, Mirando, King of, i. 39, 43
 Uranga, ii. 76-78; effusive welcome at, ii. 176
 Urundi cattle, ii. 361, 362, 364
 Urungu, ii. 364
 Ururu, a chief, i. 518, 519; ii. 57
 Usansi, i. 326-331; Mountain, i. 390
 Usigè, ii. 362; cattle, ii. 311
 Usimbi District, ii. 176
 Usindi, ii. 19, 21, 23, 49, 68, 69, 182
 Uyana, Banza, i. 208
 Uvira iron-works, ii. 364
 Uyanzi, i. 511, 512, 513; markets, i. 421

 Valeké, Lient., i. 237-240, 283, 286, 311, 382, 449, 477, 480, 481, 488, 489, 509; ii. 51, 53, 223; his services, ii. 261-264
 Valley stations, unhealthy, ii. 299-301
 Value of ivory, i. 380, 384
 — of probable trade at new factories, ii. 370, 371
 Van Bogaarte, Major, i. 239
 Van de Velde, Lieut., i. 473-476; ii. 225
 Van den Heuvel, Dr., ii. 53, 191
 Vangele, Lieut., ii. 38, 71, 177, 181, 264, 267, 289
 Van Selunman Herr, i. 471
 Vapour, pestilential, ii. 300, 301
 Vegetables, i. 103, 148, 381, 393; ii. 71, 243, 246, 258, 357
 Vegetation, effects of fire upon, i. 94
 Venetian beads, i. 30
 Versteeg, M., i. 35
 Vetch, Major Francis, ii. 272, 273, 355
 Veterans on the coast, i. 73
 Vibondo, ii. 360
 Victoria Nyanza, i. 20
 Villages, native, i. 315; on the Upper Congo, ii. 11, 12, 15; warm invitation to, ii. 30; on the Ikelemba, ii. 36; on the Congo, ii. 45; deserted, ii. 138; devastated by Arabs, ii. 139-141, 148; in easily defended positions, ii. 172; healthy sites of native, ii. 302, 303
Ville d'Anvers steamer, ii. 225
 "Vinda by the river," i. 112
 Vinda-le-Nzaddi, i. 112
 Visions of future track, i. 127
 Vivi, i. 70, 113, 114-116, 127, 128, 144-147, 149, 152, 153, 159-162, 167, 181, 189, 197, 207, 208, 210-215, 220, 225, 234, 422, 513; ii. 56, 215, 218, 219, 289, 291, 298, 304; founding the station, i. 118-126, 197; topography, i. 126, 136, 140; chiefs, i. 123, 129, 130, 142; aborigines, i. 130; extent of territory of, i. 135, 136; its recommendations, i. 136, 138; treaty with chiefs, i. 155, 156; trade, i. 156; staff at, i. 159; and Isangila, proposed railway between, i. 186, 187; to Ndambi Mbongo, i. 192; Isangila to, i. 239; messengers sent to, i. 251; recruits at, i. 278; resignation of a chief, i. 376; no progress at, i. 447; departure from, i. 449; return to, i. 468; neglect of, i. 469, 470; quarrels at, i. 489; troubles at, ii. 52; more irregularities at, ii. 187; nothing accomplished, ii. 221, 224; shamming sick at, ii. 222; reorganisation of staff, ii. 223; removal of the station, ii. 223; progress of the new station, ii. 227; railway at, ii. 227; situation of

- old, ii. 287; distance from the sea, ii. 339
 Viva Hill, i. 139, 141, 145, 146, 150, 161, 162
 — Mavungu, i. 123, 129, 132, 138, 155, 163
 — Rapids, i. 128; ii. 218
 — Nku, a chief, i. 130
 Volga, comparison to, ii. 9
 Vombo, ii. 214
 Von Mechow, ii. 387
 Voonda, i. 250; ii. 209, 214, 225
- Wabangi, ii. 43
 Wabika tribe, ii. 172
 Wabuna people, i. 419
 Wadi Rehani, i. 238, 315, 379
 Wages, native surprise at, i. 143, 144
 Wagogo, i. 49
 Wagtails, i. 436; ii. 6
 Walina tribe, ii. 363
 Wajiji sailors, i. 43; tribe, ii. 363
 Wambundu, an inland people, i. 305, 319, 320, 323, 495
 Wami River, i. 44, 58
 Wampoko River, ii. 51
 Wane Kirundu, ii. 360
 — Mikungu, ii. 156
 — Rukura fishermen, ii. 154
 — Rusari, ii. 157
 — Sironga, ii. 157
 Wangata, ii. 37, 38, 39, 42
 Wangwana, i. 45-48
 Wanunu, ii. 4
 Wanya-Ruanda tribe, ii. 363
 Wanyamwezi people, i. 46-48; ii. 363
 War, daily expected, i. 361-366; prevention of, i. 380; natives preparing for, i. 524; ii. 113, 114; objections to, i. 526, 527; native, ii. 23-25; at Irebu, ii. 42-45; burying a, ii. 45; with Bolobo, ii. 57-61; indemnity, ii. 61; among natives, slight causes for, ii. 62; effects on population, ii. 343; dance of natives, ii. 35; internecine, desolating effect of, i. 173
 War-fetish, a curious, i. 340
 Warlike threats of Ngalyema, i. 332-334
 Ware, another name for Wellé River,
 Warundi tribe, ii. 363
 Watercourse, search for a, i. 178
 Water-drinking, excessive, ii. 315-317
 Watson, Sir Thomas, on tree-planting, ii. 311
 Watumba of Musangaland, ii. 109
 Watwa, dwarfs, the, ii. 47; ivory sold by, ii. 48
 Wax, ii. 364
 Wazige tribe, ii. 363
 Wealth of ivory trading chiefs, i. 310-314
 Weaver-birds, i. 436
 Webb-Lualaba region, extent of, ii. 310, 358
- Webb-Lualaba River, navigation of the, ii. 359
 Weissman, Lieut., ii. 351, 387
 Welcome at Ikengo, ii. 30
 Wellé River, ii. 126, *sqq.*; identical with the Biyerre, ii. 130
 Welle-Makna River, ii. 110
 Wellington, Duke of, on Indian life, ii. 295
 Wenya fishermen, ii. 154
 Werre, another name for Wellé River.
 West African Livingstone Search Expedition, i. 13
 Wet clothes, danger of, ii. 326; exposure to, ii. 285; flannels, ii. 283, 285, 369
 Wheat, ii. 375
 Whip-snakes, i. 204
 Whirlpools, i. 106
 Whisky, ii. 251, 252, 319
 "White Man's Grave," ii. 320
 Willing hands a necessity, ii. 240
 Wind observations, ii. 310, 331-333
 Winds, cold, i. 210, 211, 264; ii. 172, 298
 Wine, ii. 242; moderate use of, ii. 254, 282, 295
 Wing-clappers, i. 207
 Winton, Sir Francis de, ii. 227
 Witchcraft, punishment of, i. 380
 Woerman, Herr, ii. 394
 Woman, a notable, 425, 426
 Women, nude, ii. 100
 — of Africa, the, i. 425
 Wood Point, i. 83, 85
 — cutting, ii. 9
 Work, a year's, i. 240; neglected at Vivi, ii. 221, 222; shirking, ii. 240, 242; on the Congo, ii. 252; honour of, ii. 278, 279; hours for outdoor, ii. 314
 Workers, unintelligent, ii. 249, 250
 Working day, duration of our, i. 149
 — force, weakness of, i. 191; numbers of our, i. 196
 Workmanship, native, ii. 123
 Workmen, agreement about native, i. 169; shelter for outdoor, ii. 315
 Wreck of a canoe, ii. 49
 Wy-yanzi people, i. 428, 443; ii. 14, 23, 30, 60, 63, 64, 302; custom of succession, i. 520
- Yakkás, the, invasion: *see* Ajakkas.
 Yakongo village, ii. 103
 Yakui, ii. 125
 Yakusa spears, ii. 356
 Yalulima tribe, ii. 111, 354; swordsmiths, ii. 356
 Yambi village, ii. 126
 Yambinga, town, ii. 407-109
 Yambua, ii. 127
 Yambula, 518, 525; ii. 57-60
 Yambumba town, ii. 127
 Yambunga village, ii. 112
 Yambuya village, ii. 129

- Yamu-ningini village, ii. 110
 Yamvu, i. 432
 Yangambi, ii. 151
 Yangassa, a chief of Nzabi, i. 316
 Yankau on Itimbiri, ii. 100
 Yanzi, Chief of Wané Sironga, ii. 157
 Yaporo district, ii. 141
 Yaruche, ii. 152
 Yarukombe town, ii. 152
 Yaryembi, ii. 152
 Yavunga, a desolated village, ii. 141
 Yellala, i. 102, 113, 160, 165, 179; falls, i. 202, 203; ii. 218; mountain, i. 205; ii. 217
 Yellow wood, ii. 30
 Yomburri, a desolated town, ii. 139, 141
 Youngblood, Mr., i. 64, 73
 Youthful indulgence, ii. 282, 283
 Yumbila, a guide, ii. 82, 86, 88, 97, 98, 100, 112, 116, 117, 140, 182
 Zaire, the, Portuguese name of the Congo, i. 2, 202; described by a Capuchin father, i. 4; Tuekey's description of the, i. 5, 6
 Zanzibar, 28, 29, 35, 37, 39, 43-45, 47, 48; the Sultan of, i. 49; the Prince of, i. 58
 Zanzibaris, i. 49, 59, 67, 146, 150, 203, 212, 216, 277, 278, 311, 445, 462; ii. 97, 144; sent home, i. 449
 Zareeba or boma, i. 46
 Zari: *see* Zaire.
 Zebra, ii. 241
 Zinga, i. 287, 313-316
 Zingeh, i. 46
 Zombo, ii. 342
 Zunga-chya-Idi, i. 105

THE END.

VALUABLE WORKS

-OF-

EXPLORATION AND ADVENTURE.

Stanley's Congo, and the Founding of its Free State.

A Story of Work and Exploration. By H. M. STANLEY. Dedicated by Special Permission to H. M. the King of the Belgians. With over One Hundred full-page and smaller Illustrations, two large Maps, and several smaller ones. 2 vols., 8vo, Cloth. (*Just Ready.*)

Stanley's Through the Dark Continent.

Through the Dark Continent; or, The Sources of the Nile, Around the Great Lakes of Equatorial Africa, and Down the Livingstone River to the Atlantic Ocean. With 149 Illustrations and 10 Maps. By HENRY M. STANLEY. 2 vols., 8vo, Cloth, \$10 00; Sheep, \$12 00; Half Morocco, \$15 00.

Stanley's Coomassie and Magdala.

Coomassie and Magdala: a Story of Two British Campaigns in Africa. By HENRY M. STANLEY. With Maps and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Livingstone's Last Journals.

The Last Journals of David Livingstone, in Central Africa, from 1865 to his Death. Continued by a Narrative of his Last Moments and Sufferings, obtained from his Faithful Servants Chuma and Susi. By HORACE WALLER, F.R.G.S., Rector of Twywell, Northampton. With Maps and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00; Sheep, \$6 00. Cheap Popular Edition, 8vo, Cloth, with Map and Illustrations, \$2 50.

Livingstone's Expedition to the Zambesi.

Narrative of an Expedition to the Zambesi and its Tributaries; and of the Discovery of the Lakes Shirwa and Nyassa. 1858-1864. By DAVID and CHARLES LIVINGSTONE. With Map and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00; Sheep, \$5 50.

Long's Central Africa.

Central Africa: Naked Truths of Naked People. An Account of Expeditions to the Lake Victoria Nyanza and the Makraka Niam-Niam, West of the Bahr-El-Abiad (White Nile). By Col. C. CHAILLÉ LONG, of the Egyptian Staff. Illustrated from Col. Long's own Sketches. With Map. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Cameron's Across Africa.

Across Africa. By VERNEY LOVETT CAMERON, C.B., D.C.L., Commander Royal Navy, Gold Medalist Royal Geographical Society, etc. With a Map and numerous Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00.

Du Chaillu's Ashango-Land.

A Journey to Ashango-Land, and Further Penetration into Equatorial Africa. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00; Sheep, \$5 50; Half Calf, \$7 25.

Schweinfurth's Heart of Africa.

The Heart of Africa; or, Three Years' Travels and Adventures in the Unexplored Regions of the Centre of Africa. From 1868 to 1871. By DR. GEORG SCHWEINFURTH. Translated by ELLEN E. FREWER. With an Introduction by WINWOOD READE. Illustrated by about 130 Woodcuts from Drawings made by the Author, and with Two Maps. 2 vols., 8vo, Cloth, \$8 00.

Speke's Africa.

Journal of the Discovery of the Source of the Nile. By JOHN HANNING SPEKE, Captain H. M. Indian Army, Fellow and Gold Medalist of the Royal Geographical Society, Hon. Corresponding Member and Gold Medalist of the French Geographical Society, etc. With Maps and Portraits and numerous Illustrations, chiefly from Drawings by Captain GRANT. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00; Sheep, \$4 50.

Burton's Lake Regions of Central Africa.

The Lake Regions of Central Africa. A Picture of Exploration. By Captain RICHARD F. BURTON. Maps and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Baker's Ismailia.

Ismailia: a Narrative of the Expedition to Central Africa for the Suppression of the Slave-Trade, organized by ISMAIL, Khedive of Egypt. By Sir SAMUEL WHITE BAKER, Pasha, M.A., F.R.S., F.R.G.S., Major-General of the Ottoman Empire, late Governor-General of the Equatorial Nile Basin, etc., etc. With Maps, Portraits, and upwards of 50 full-page Illustrations by Zwecker and Durand. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00; Half Calf, \$7 25.

Lady Blunt's Bedouin Tribes of the Euphrates.

Bedouin Tribes of the Euphrates. By Lady ANNE BLUNT. Edited, with a Preface and some Account of the Arabs and their Horses, by W. S. B. Map and Sketches by the Author. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Reade's Savage Africa.

Savage Africa: being the Narrative of a Tour in Equatorial, South-western, and North-western Africa; with Notes on the Habits of the Gorilla; on the Existence of Unicorns and Tailed Men; on the Slave-Trade; on the Origin, Character, and Capabilities of the Negro, and on the Future Civilization of Western Africa. By W. WINWOOD READE. With Illustrations and a Map. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00; Sheep, \$4 50; Half Calf, \$6 25.

Prime's Boat-Life in Egypt and Nubia.

Boat-Life in Egypt and Nubia. By WILLIAM C. PRIME. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Curtis's Nile Notes of a Howadji.

Nile Notes of a Howadji. By GEORGE WILLIAM CURTIS. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

A Naturalist's Wanderings in the Eastern Archipelago.

A Narrative of Travel and Exploration from 1873 to 1883. By HENRY O. FORBES, F.R.G.S., etc. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00. (*Just Published.*)

Wallace's Malay Archipelago.

The Malay Archipelago: the Land of the Orang-Utan and the Bird of Paradise. A Narrative of Travel, 1854-62. With Studies of Man and Nature. By ALFRED RUSSEL WALLACE. With Maps and numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Wallace's Island Life.

Island Life; or, The Phenomena of Insular Faunas and Floras, with their Causes. Including an entire Revision of the Problem of Geological Climates. By ALFRED RUSSEL WALLACE. With Illustrations and Maps. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00.

Wallace's Geographical Distribution of Animals.

The Geographical Distribution of Animals. With a Study of the Relations of Living and Extinct Faunas, as elucidating the Past Changes of the Earth's Surface. By ALFRED RUSSEL WALLACE. With Colored Maps and numerous Illustrations by ZWECKER. 2 vols., 8vo, Cloth, \$10 00.

Vámbéry's Central Asia.

Travels in Central Asia: being the Account of the Journey from Teheran across the Turkoman Desert, on the Eastern Shore of the Caspian, to Khiva, Bokhara, and Samarcand, performed in the year 1863. By ARMINIUS VÁMBÉRY, Member of the Hungarian Academy of Pesth, by whom he was sent on this Scientific Mission. With Maps and Woodcuts. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 50; Half Calf, \$6 75.

Thomson's Malacca, Indo-China, and China.

The Straits of Malacca, Indo-China, and China; or, Ten Years' Travels, Adventures, and Residence Abroad. By J. THOMSON. With over 60 Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00.

MacGahan's Campaigning on the Oxns.

Campaigning on the Oxns and the Fall of Khiva. By J. A. MACGAHAN. With Map and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Burnaby's Ride to Khiva.

A Ride to Khiva: Travels and Adventures in Central Asia. By FRED BURNABY (Captain Royal Horse Guards). With Maps and an Appendix, containing, among other Information, a Series of March-routes, compiled from a Russian Work. 12mo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Curzon's Armenia and Erzeroom.

Armenia: a Year at Erzeroom, and on the Frontiers of Russia, Turkey, and Persia. By the Hon. ROBERT CURZON. Map and Illustrations. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 25.

Vincent's Land of the White Elephant.

The Land of the White Elephant: Sights and Scenes in South-eastern Asia. A Personal Narrative of Travel and Adventure in Farther India, embracing the Countries of Burma, Siam, Cambodia, and Cochin-China (1871-2). By FRANK VINCENT, JR. Magnificently Illustrated with Maps, Plans, and numerous Woodcuts. 8vo, Cloth, Gilt Tops, \$2 50.

Vincent's Through and Through the Tropics.

Through and Through the Tropics: Thirty Thousand Miles of Travel in Oceanica, Australasia, and India. By FRANK VINCENT, JR. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Thomson's Southern Palestine and Jerusalem.

The Land and the Book: Southern Palestine and Jerusalem. By WILLIAM M. THOMSON, D.D., Forty-five Years a Missionary in Syria and Palestine. 140 Illustrations and Maps. Square 8vo, Cloth, \$6 00; Sheep, \$7 00; Half Morocco, \$8 50; Full Morocco, Gilt Edges, \$10 00.

Thomson's Central Palestine and Phœnicia.

The Land and the Book: Central Palestine and Phœnicia. By WILLIAM M. THOMSON, D.D. 130 Illustrations and Maps. Square 8vo, Cloth, \$6 00; Sheep, \$7 00; Half Morocco, \$8 50; Full Morocco, Gilt Edges, \$10 00.

Thomson's East of the Jordan.

The Land and the Book: East of the Jordan. By WILLIAM M. THOMSON, D.D. Illustrations and Maps. Square 8vo. (*Nearly Ready*).

Prime's Tent-Life in the Holy Land.

Tent-Life in the Holy Land. By WILLIAM C. PRIME. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Pike's Sub-Tropical Rambles.

Sub-Tropical Rambles in the Land of the Aphanapteryx: Personal Experiences, Adventures, and Wanderings in and about the Island of Mauritius. By NICHOLAS PIKE. Handsomely Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Van-Lennep's Bible Lands.

Bible Lands: their Modern Customs and Manners Illustrative of Scripture. By the Rev. HENRY J. VAN-LENNEP, D.D. Illustrated with upwards of 350 Wood Engravings and two Colored Maps. 838 pp., 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00; Sheep, \$6 00; Half Calf, \$8 00.

Macgregor's Rob Roy on the Jordan.

The Rob Roy on the Jordan, Nile, Red Sea, and Gennesareth, etc. A Canoe Cruise in Palestine and Egypt, and the Waters of Damascus. By J. MACGREGOR, M.A. With Maps and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Bartlett's From Egypt to Palestine.

From Egypt to Palestine, through Sinai, the Wilderness, and the South Country. Observations of a Journey made with Special Reference to the History of the Israelites. By S. C. BARTLETT, D.D., LL.D., President of Dartmouth College, and lately Professor in the Chicago Theological Seminary. With Maps and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Schliemann's Ilios.

Ilios, the City and Country of the Trojans. The Results of Researches and Discoveries on the Site of Troy and throughout the Troad in the years 1871-72-73-78-79; including an Autobiography of the Author. By Dr. HENRY SCHLIEMANN, F.S.A., F.R.I. British Architects; Author of "Troy and its Remains," "Mycenæ," etc. With a Preface, Appendices, and Notes by Professors Rudolf Virchow, Max Müller, A. H. Sayce, J. P. Mahaffy, H. Brugsch-Bey, P. Ascherson, M. A. Postolaccas, M. E. Burnouf, Mr. F. Calvert, and Mr. A. J. Duffield. With Maps, Plans, and about 1800 Illustrations. Imperial 8vo, Cloth, \$12 00; Half Morocco, \$15 00.

Schliemann's Troja.

Troja. Results of the Latest Researches and Discoveries on the Site of Homer's Troy, and in the Heroic Tumuli and other Sites, made in the year 1882, and a Narrative of a Journey in the Troad in 1881. By Dr. HENRY SCHLIEMANN, Author of "Ilios," etc. Preface by Professor A. H. Sayce. With 150 Woodcuts and 4 Maps and Plans. pp. xl., 434. 8vo, Cloth, \$7 50; Half Morocco, \$10 00.

Myers's Remains of Lost Empires.

Remains of Lost Empires: Sketches of the Ruins of Palmyra, Nineveh, Babylon, and Persepolis, with some Notes on India and the Cashmerian Himalayas. By P. V. N. MYERS, A.M. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Tristram's Land of Moab:

The Land of Moab: Travels and Discoveries on the East Side of the Dead Sea and the Jordan. By H. B. TRISTRAM, M.A., L.L.D., F.R.S., Honorary Canon of Durham. With a Chapter on the Persian Palace of Mashita, by JAMES FERGUSON, F.R.S. With Map and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Cesnola's Cyprus.

Cyprus: its Ancient Cities, Tombs, and Temples. A Narrative of Researches and Excavations during Ten Years' Residence in that Island. By General LOUIS PALMA DI CESNOLA, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences, Turin; Hon. Member of the Royal Society of Literature, London, etc. With Portrait, Maps, and 400 Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, Extra, Gilt Tops and Unent Edges, \$7 50; Half Calf, \$10 00.

Layard's Discoveries at Nineveh.

Discoveries among the Ruins of Nineveh and Babylon; with Travels in Armenia, Kurdistan, and the Desert: being the result of a Second Expedition, undertaken for the Trustees of the British Museum. By AUSTEN HENRY LAYARD, M.P. With Maps, Plans, and Illustration. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00.

Davis's Carthage.

Carthage and her Remains: being an Account of the Excavations and Researches on the Site of the Phœnician Metropolis, in Africa and other Adjacent Places. Conducted under the Auspices of Her Majesty's Government. By Dr. N. DAVIS, F.R.G.S. Profusely Illustrated with Maps, Woodcuts, Chromo-Lithographs, etc., etc. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00; Half Calf, \$6 25.

Thomson's Voyage of the "Challenger."

The Voyage of the "Challenger." *The Atlantic*: An Account of the General Results of the Voyage during the Year 1873 and the Early Part of the Year 1876. By Sir C. WYVILLE THOMSON, F.R.S. With a Portrait of the Author, many Colored Maps, Temperature Charts, and Illustrations. 2 vols., 8vo, Cloth, \$12 00.

Spry's Cruise of the "Challenger."

The Cruise of Her Majesty's Ship "Challenger." Voyages over many Seas, Scenes in many Lands. By W. J. J. SPRY, R.N. With Maps and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$2 00.

**The Boy Travellers. By THOS. W. KNOX. Six Parts.
Copiously Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00 each.**

Part I. Adventures of Two Youths in a Journey to Japan and China.

Part II. Adventures of Two Youths in a Journey to Siam and Java. With Descriptions of Cochin-China, Cambodia, Sumatra, and the Malay Archipelago. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Part III. Adventures of Two Youths in a Journey to Ceylon and India. With Descriptions of Borneo, the Philippine Islands, and Burmah.

Part IV. Adventures of Two Youths in a Journey to Egypt and the Holy Land.

Part V. Adventures of Two Youths in a Journey through Central Africa.

Part VI. Adventures of Two Youths in a Journey through South America. (*Nearly Ready.*)

Hunting Adventures on Land and Sea. By THOS. W. KNOX. Two Parts. Copiously Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50 each.

Part I. The Young Nimrods in North America.

Part II. The Young Nimrods Around the World.

Knox's Voyage of the "Vivian."

The Voyage of the "Vivian" to the North Pole and Beyond. Being the Adventures of Two Youths in the Open Polar Sea. By THOMAS W. KNOX. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Du Chaillu's Land of the Midnight Sun.

The Land of the Midnight Sun. Summer and Winter Journeys through Sweden, Norway, Lapland, and Northern Finland. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. With Map and 235 Illustrations. In Two Volumes. 8vo, Cloth, \$7 50; Half Calf, \$12 00.

Lamont's Seasons with the Sea-Horses.

Seasons with the Sea-Horses; or, Sporting Adventures in the Northern Seas. By JAMES LAMONT, F.G.S. With Map and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Tyson's Arctic Experiences.

Arctic Experiences: containing Captain George E. Tyson's Wonderful Drift on the Ice-Floe, a History of the Polaris Expedition, the Cruise of the Tigress, and Rescue of the Polaris Survivors. To which is added a General Arctic Chronology. Edited by E. VALE. With Map and numerous Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00.

Hayes's Land of Desolation.

The Land of Desolation : being a Personal Narrative of Observation and Adventure in Greenland. By ISAAC I. HAYES, M.D., Author of "The Open Polar Sea," etc. With Illustrations. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 75.

Davis's Nimrod of the Sea.

Nimrod of the Sea ; or, the American Whaleman. By WILLIAM M. DAVIS. With many Illustrations. 12mo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Bush's Reindeer, Dogs, and Snow-shoes.

Reindeer, Dogs, and Snow-shoes : a Journal of Siberian Travel and Explorations made in the Years 1865-'67. By RICHARD J. BUSH, late of the Russo-American Telegraph Expedition. Illustrated. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Bishop Haven's Mexico.

Our Next-Door Neighbor. Recent Sketches of Mexico. By the Rev. GILBERT HAVEN, D.D., Bishop in the M. E. Church. With Maps and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Bishop's Old Mexico and her Lost Provinces.

A Journey in Mexico, Southern California, and Arizona, by Way of Cuba. By WILLIAM HENRY BISHOP, Author of "Detmold," "The House of a Merchant Prince," etc. With numerous Illustrations, chiefly from Sketches by the Author. 12mo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Squier's Nicaragua.

Nicaragua: its People, Scenery, Monuments, Resources, Condition, and Proposed Canal. With One Hundred Maps and Illustrations. By E. G. SQUIER. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00.

Squier's Peru.

Peru : Incidents of Travel and Exploration in the Land of the Incas. By E. G. SQUIER, M.A., F.S.A., late U. S. Commissioner to Peru. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$5 00.

Orton's Andes and the Amazon.

The Andes and the Amazon ; or, Across the Continent of South America. By JAMES ORTON, Ph.D., late Professor of Natural History in Vassar College, Poughkeepsie, N. Y. ; Corresponding Member of the Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, and of the Lyceum of Natural History, N. Y. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged, containing Notes of a Second Journey Across the Continent from Pará to Lima and Lake Titicaca. With two Maps and numerous Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Whymper's Alaska.

Travel and Adventure in the Territory of Alaska, formerly Russian America—now ceded to the United States—and in various Other Parts of the North Pacific. By FREDERICK WHYMPER. With Map and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Ingersoll's Knocking Round the Rockies.

Knocking Round the Rockies. By ERNEST INGERSOLL. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Burton's City of the Saints.

The City of the Saints; and Across the Rocky Mountains to California. By Captain RICHARD F. BURTON, Fellow and Gold Medalist of the Royal Geographical Societies of France and England; H. M. Consul in West Africa. Maps and numerous Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Nordhoff's California.

California: a Book for Travellers and Settlers. By CHARLES NORDHOFF. A New Edition. With Maps and Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 00.

Hayes's New Colorado.

New Colorado and the Santa Fe Trail. By A. A. HAYES, Jr. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$2 50.

Short's North Americans of Antiquity.

The North Americans of Antiquity. Their Origin, Migrations, and Type of Civilization Considered. By JOHN T. SHORT. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Murphy's Sporting Adventures in the Far West.

Sporting Adventures in the Far West. By J. M. MURPHY. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Gillmore's Prairie and Forest.

Prairie and Forest: a Description of the Game of North America, with Personal Adventures in their Pursuit. By PARKER GILLMORE. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Hazard's Santo Domingo.

Santo Domingo, Past and Present; with a Glance at Hayti. By SAMUEL HAZARD. Maps and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Griffis's The Mikado's Empire.

The Mikado's Empire. History of Japan, from 660 B.C. to 1872 A.D., and Personal Experiences, Observations, and Studies in Japan, 1870-1874. New Edition, with a Supplementary Chapter on Japan in 1893. By WILLIAM E. GRIFFIS, A.M., late of the Imperial University of Tōkiō, Japan. Copiously Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$4 00; Half Calf, \$6 25.

Arnold's Through Persia by Caravan.

Through Persia by Caravan. By ARTHUR ARNOLD. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 75.

Darwin's Voyage of a Naturalist.

Journal of Researches into the Natural History and Geology of the Countries Visited during the Voyage of H.M.S. "Beagle" Round the World, under the Command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. By CHARLES DARWIN, M.A., F.R.S. New Edition. 2 vols., 12mo, Cloth, \$2 00.

What Mr. Darwin Saw.

What Mr. Darwin Saw in his Voyage round the World in the Ship "Beagle." With Illustrations. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Benjamin's Atlantic Islands.

The Atlantic Islands as Resorts for Health and Pleasure. By S. G. W. BENJAMIN. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Biart's Involuntary Voyage.

An Involuntary Voyage. By LUCIEN BIART. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 25.

Biart's Adventures of a Young Naturalist.

The Adventures of a Young Naturalist. By LUCIEN BIART. Edited and Adapted by PARKER GILLMORE. With 117 Illustrations. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 75.

Smiles's Round the World.

Round the World: including a Residence in Victoria, and a Journey by Rail across North America. By a Boy. Edited by SAMUEL SMILES. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Symonds's Sketches and Studies in Southern Europe.

Sketches and Studies in Southern Europe. By JOHN ADDINGTON SYMONDS. In Two Volumes. Square 16mo, Cloth, \$4 00.

Lathrop's Spanish Vistas.

Spanish Vistas. By GEORGE PARSONS LATHROP. Illustrated by CHARLES S. REINHART. 8vo, Ornamental Cover, Gilt Edges, \$3 00.

Boughton's Sketching Rambles in Holland.

Sketching Rambles in Holland. By GEORGE H. BOUGHTON, A.R.A. Beautifully and Profusely Illustrated with Wood-engravings from Drawings by the Author and EDWIN A. ABBEY. With Two Artists' Full-page Proofs, Japanese Paper, without Letters. Pages xvi., 342. Square, 8vo, Illuminated Cloth, Uncut Edges, and Gilt Top, \$5 00; Brown Cloth, Uncut Edges and Gilt Top, \$5 00; Full Gilt Edges, \$5 25.

Curtis's The Howadji in Syria.

The Howadji in Syria. By GEORGE WILLIAM CURTIS. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Oliphant's China and Japan.

Narrative of the Earl of Elgin's Mission to China and Japan, in the Years 1857, '58, '59. By LAURENCE OLIPHANT, Private Secretary to Lord Elgin. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50.

Newman's "From Dan to Beersheba."

"From Dan to Beersheba;" or, The Land of Promise as it now Appears. Including a Description of the Boundaries, Topography, Agriculture, Antiquities, Cities, and Present Inhabitants of that Wonderful Land. With Illustrations of the Remarkable Accuracy of the Sacred Writers in their Allusions to their Native Country. By the Rev. J. P. NEWMAN, D.D. Maps and Engravings. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 75.

Gironière's Philippine Islands.

Twenty Years in the Philippines. By PAUL DE LA GIRONIÈRE. Revised and Extended by the Author expressly for this Translation. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Drake's New England Coast.

Nooks and Corners of the New England Coast. By SAMUEL ADAMS DRAKE. With numerous Illustrations. Square 8vo, Cloth, \$3 50; Half Calf, \$5 75.

Drake's Heart of the White Mountains.

The Heart of the White Mountains. By SAMUEL ADAMS DRAKE, Author of "Nooks and Corners of the New England Coast." Illustrated by W. HAMILTON GIBSON, Author of "Pastoral Days." 4to, Illuminated Cloth, Gilt Edges, \$7 50. *Tourist's Edition*, \$3 00.

Dilke's Greater Britain.

Greater Britain: a Record of Travel in English-speaking Countries during 1863 and 1867. By CHARLES WENTWORTH DILKE. Maps and Illustrations. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 00.

Lady Belcher's Mutiny of the Bonnty.

Some Account of the Mutineers of the Bonnty and their Descendants in Pitcairn and Norfolk Islands. By LADY BELCHER. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Waring's Tyrol, and the Skirt of the Alps.

Tyrol, and the Skirt of the Alps. By GEORGE E. WARING, Jr. Illustrated. 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Dixon's Free Russia.

Free Russia. By W. HEPWORTH DIXON, Author of "Her Majesty's Tower," etc. With Two Illustrations. Crown 8vo, \$2 00.

Prime's Round the World.

Around the World. By EDWARD D. G. PRIME, D.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth, \$3 00.

Hepworth's Starboard and Port.

Starboard and Port: the "Nettie" Along Shore. A Summer's Yacht Cruise along the Coasts of Maine and Labrador. By GEORGE H. HEPWORTH. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 75.

Kingsley's West Indies.

At Last: a Christmas in the West Indies. By CHARLES KINGSLEY. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Du Chaillu's Country of the Dwarfs.

The Country of the Dwarfs. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Du Chaillu's Gorilla Country.

Stories of the Gorilla Country. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Du Chaillu's My Apingi Kingdom.

My Apingi Kingdom: with Life in the Great Sahara, and Sketches of the Chase of the Ostrich, Hyena, etc. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Du Chaillu's Wild Life.

Wild Life under the Equator. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

Du Chaillu's Lost in the Jungle.

Lost in the Jungle. By PAUL B. DU CHAILLU. Illustrated. 12mo, Cloth, \$1 50.

PUBLISHED BY HARPER & BROTHERS, NEW YORK.

☞ HARPER & BROTHERS will send any of the above works by mail, postage prepaid, to any part of the United States or Canada, on receipt of the price.



